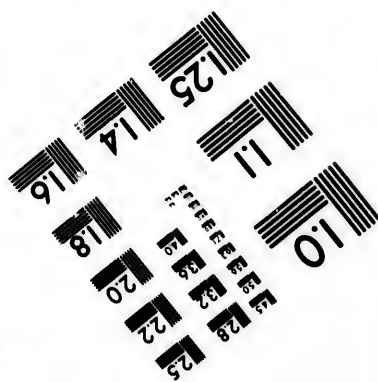
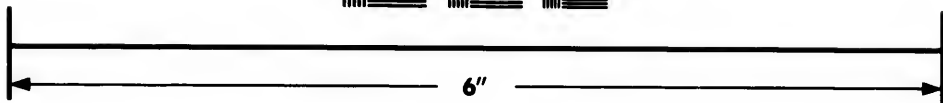
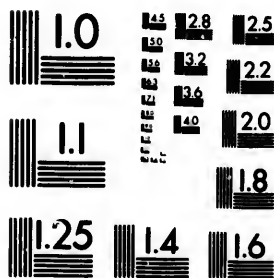


**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

0  
16  
18  
20  
22  
25  
28  
32  
36

**CIHM/ICMH  
Microfiche  
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH  
Collection de  
microfiches.**



**Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques**

10  
11  
12  
15  
16  
20

**© 1983**

Technical and Bibliographic Notes/Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- Coloured covers/  
Couverture de couleur
- Covers damaged/  
Couverture endommagée
- Covers restored and/or laminated/  
Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée
- Cover title missing/  
Le titre de couverture manque
- Coloured maps/  
Cartes géographiques en couleur
- Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/  
Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)
- Coloured plates and/or illustrations/  
Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur
- Bound with other material/  
Relié avec d'autres documents
- Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion along interior margin/  
La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la distorsion le long de la marge intérieure
- Blank leaves added during restoration may appear within the text. Whenever possible, these have been omitted from filming/  
Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte, mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont pas été filmées.
- Additional comments:/  
Commentaires supplémentaires:

- Coloured pages/  
Pages de couleur
- Pages damaged/  
Pages endommagées
- Pages restored and/or laminated/  
Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées
- Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/  
Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées
- Pages detached/  
Pages détachées
- Showthrough/  
Transparence
- Quality of print varies/  
Qualité inégale de l'impression
- Includes supplementary material/  
Comprend du matériel supplémentaire
- Only edition available/  
Seule édition disponible
- Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to ensure the best possible image/  
Les pages totalement ou partiellement obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure, etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à obtenir la meilleure image possible.

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/  
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	12X	14X	16X	18X	20X	22X	24X	26X	28X	30X	32X
				✓							

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

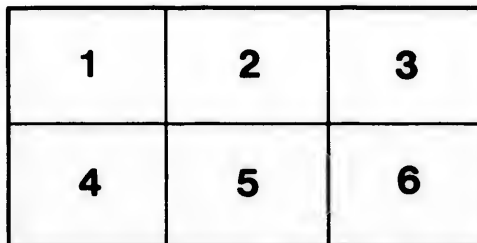
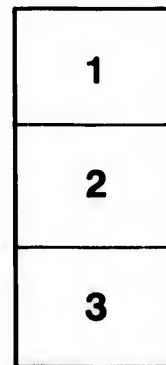
La Bibliothèque de la Ville de Montréal

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol  $\rightarrow$  (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol  $\nabla$  (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

La Bibliothèque de la Ville de Montréal

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole  $\rightarrow$  signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole  $\nabla$  signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.

aire  
détails  
ues du  
modifier  
ger une  
filmage

ées

re

y errata  
ad to

nt  
ne pelure,  
çon à

1

1

4

The of  
warke



NOVA FRANCIA:  
*Or the*  
 DESCRIPTION  
 OF THAT PART OF  
 NEW FRANCE,

*which is one continent with*

VIRGINIA.

*W. Blacford*

Described in the three late Voyages and Plantation made by  
*Monsieur de Monts, Monsieur du Pont-Gravé, and*  
*Monsieur de Poutrincourt, into the countries*  
 called by the French men *La Cadie,*  
 lying to the Southwest of  
*Cape Breton.*

Together with an excellent severall Treatie of all the commodities  
 of the said countries, and maners of the naturall  
 inhabitants of the same.

*Translated out of French into English by*

P. E.

*The Author was*  
*Marke L'Scarbot, as Purchas says in his Pilgrimage p. 826.*



LONDINI,  
 Impensis GEORGII BISHOP.  
 1609.

474088

T



enc  
tin  
the  
kno  
Ass  
din  
can  
gua  
an a  
dar  
of.  
Nau  
per  
stie.  
gini



T O T H E B R I G H T  
S T A R R E O F T H E N O R T H,  
H E N R Y Prince of Great  
B R I T A I N E.



*Most excellent Prince : my Author (knowing that there are some works so naturally great of themselves, that they challenge the gracious protection of Princes) hath offered this his Historie to the Royall patronage of the most Christian King, two Queenes, and the Dauphin, to the end it might stirre them the more to prosecute the populating of the lands heerein described, to bring the Naturals thereof (Sauage and miserable people) to ciuilitie and right knowledge of God, and so to the saluation of their soules. Assuming the like presumption, I haue hoped (notwithstanding the defects which necessarily attend a stranger, who can neuer attaine the naturall Idiome of this eloquent language) that it might not be an iniury to your Highnesse; but an addition of Honor, and safetie of this worke, if I should dare to inscribe your Princely name on the forehead thereof. Which boldnesse, the noble vndertaking of the English Nation hath nourished, who haue so lately begun (by the permission, and vnder the protection of his excellent Maiestie, your most Royall Father) to plant Christianitie in Virginia, being one continent, & next adioining land to these.*



THE EPISTLE DEDICATORIE.

For who may better support, and manage magnanimous actions, such as be the peopling of lands, planting of Colonies, erecting of ciuill Governementes, and propagating of the Gospell of Christ, (which are Royall and Princely foundations) then those whom the King of Kings, hath established as Atlases of kingdoms & Christian common weales? God hath necessitated in his Prophecie, Kings and Queens to be nursing Fathers and nursing Mothers of his Church: so that he hath not onely committed the gouernment of a ripe and strong body, able to subsist, but hath imposed the care of the tenderesse and infancie thereof upon them. Alexander being yet young, would haue runne in the Olympian games if kings had runne there; now Kings doe run; now Princes doe worke in the Lords haruest, to spread that name which must gather the cleēt from the utmost endes of the world, if not in their persons, yet with their auctoritie and meanes. I know your Highnesse would not be inferiour, but rather excell in so noble an action: such an emulation is pleasing to God; your birth leadeth vnto it; Christian charitie inuiterh you to be chiefe worker in the sauing of millions of soules: The necessitie of your Countrie of Great BRITAINE, (ouer populow) doth require it: And lastly your poore Virginians doe seeme to implore your Princely aide, to helpe them to shake off the yoke of the diuel, who hath hitherto made them liue worse then beasts; hat henceforth they may be brought into the fould of Christ, and (in time) to liue vnder your Christian gouernmēt: So then hauing thus runne, you shall obtaine an euerlasting Crowne of glory, being as well planter, as defender of the Faith.

Your Highnesse humblest seruant,

P. ERONDELLE.

Libri Gulielmi Hamelii  
To the Reader.



Entle Reader : The whole volume of the Navigations of the French-nation into the West Indies ( comprised in three bookes) was brought to mee, to be translated, by M. Richard Hackluyt , a man, who for his worthy, and profitable labours, is well known to most men of worth , not onely of this kingdome, but also of forrain parts:and by him this part was selected ; and chosen from the whole worke, for the particular vse of this Nation, to the end, that comparing the goodnesse of the lands of the Northerly parts heerein mentioned with that of *Virginia*, which (though in one, and the selfe same continent and both lands adioyning) must be far better, by reason it stands more Southerly, neerer to the Sunne , greater encouragement may be giuen to profecute that generous and godly action, in planting and peopling that Country, to the better propagation of the Gospel of Christ, the saluation of innumerable soules , and generall benefit of this land, too much pestred with ouer many people. Which translation (as I haue said) is but a part of a greater volume. If therefore you finde that some references of things mentioned in the former part of the said volume are not to be found in this translation, do not thinke it strange, in asmuch as they could not wel be brought in, except the whole volume should be translated , which of purpose was left vndone, as well to auoid your farther charges, as because it was thought needlesse to translate more then concerneth that which adioyneth to *Virginia*.

What good the English Nation may reape of this worke, by the onely description that is found therein of Nations, Ilands, Harbours, Bayes, Coasts, Riuers, Rockes, Shoulds, Sands, Bankes, and other dangers, which the Saylers into those parts may now the more easily finde, and auoid, by the knowledge that this translation giueth them of it, let the Nauigators iudge therof, who (for want of such knowledge) haue found themselues in euident perill of death, and many altogether cast away. If a man that sheweth forth effectually the zealous care he hath to the well-fare, and common good of his country, deserueth praises of the same, I refer to the iudgement of them that abhor the vice of ingratitude (hatefull aboute all to God, & goodmen) whether the said M. Hackluyt (as well for the first procuring of this translation, as for many workes of his, set out by him for the good, and euerlasting fame of the English Nation) deserueth not to reape thanks.

As for this my labour, if it be censured fauorably, and my good affection (in vndertaking the translating of this worke, for the benefit of this land) taken in good part, it will encourage me to endeauour my selfe to doe better heereafter.

\* \* \*

# The Table of the contents of the Chapters.

## The first Booke.

**W**Herein are described the three late Voiages, Navigations, and Plantation of New France (otherwise called La Cadia) by Monsieur de Monts, Monsieur du Pont-grauè, and Monsieur de Pourtincourt.

### CHAP. I.

*The Patent, and Commission of the French king to Monsieur de Monts for the inhabiting of the Countries of La Cadia, Canada, and other places in New France, from the 40. degree to the 46.*

### CHAP. II.

*The voiage of Monsieur de Monts into New France: accidents hapned in the said voiage: the causes of the Isle banks in new foundlands: the imposing of names to certaine Ports: the perplexitie wherein they were by reason of the staie of their other shippe.*

### CHAP. III.

*The leauing of Port du Mouton: the accidents of a man lost in the woods the space of 16. daies: Baie Françoisè, or the French Baie: Port Royall: the Riuer of l'Equille: a Copper Myne: the mischiefe of golden Mines: of Diamonds: Turkie stones.*

### CHAP. IIII.

*The description of the riuer Saint Iohn: and of the Isle Saint Croix: the man lost in the woods found out 16. daies after: examples of some strange abstinencies: the discords of the Sauvages deferred to the iudgement of Monsieur de Monts: the fatherly authoritie among the said Sauvages: what husbands they chuse to their daughters.*

### CHAP. V.

*A farther description of the Iland Saint Croix: the enterprise of Monsieur de Monts difficult and generous, yet prosecuted*

## The Contents.

ented through enuio: the returne of Monsieur de Poutrincourt into France: the perils of the voiage.

### CHAP. VI.

The buildings of the Ile Saint Croix: the Frenchmens discommodities in the said place: vnknown sicknesses: of their causes: of the people that be subiect to it: of Diets, badde Waters, Aires, Windes, Lakes, corruption of Woods, seasons, disposition of bodie, of young, of old: the Authors aduise touching the government of health, and cure of the said diseases.

### CHAP. VII.

The discovery of new lands by Monsieur de Monts: fabulous tales and reports of the riuer and fained towne of Norombega: the refusing of the Authors that haue written thereof: fish bankes in New found land: Kinibeki: Chouäcoet: Malebarre: Armouchiquois: the death of a French man killed: mortalitie of Englishmen in Virginia.

### CHAP. VIII.

The arriuall of Monsieur du Pont to Saint Croix: the habitation transferred into Port Royall: returne of Monsieur de Monts into France: the difficultie of hand Milles, the furniture of the said Monsieur du Pont, for the discovery of new lands beyond Malebarre: Shipwracke: Forecast for the returne into France: Comparison of these voiages with them of Florida: the blame of those that dispraise the tillage of the land.

### CHAP. IX.

The first motine and acceptation of the voiage by Monsieur de Poutrincourt, together with the Author into New France: their departure from Paris to goe into Rochell.

### CHAP. X.

The name of our shippe called the Ionas: the shallow water of Rochell is the cause of the hard going out: Rochell a reformed towne: the common people is insolent: Croquans: the accident of the shipwracke of the Ionas new preparation: weak Souldiers are not to be placed upon frontiers: the Ministers of Rochell doe pray for the conersion of the Sauages: the smal

zeale

## The Contents.

zeale of ours : the Eucharist carried in voiages by the anciens  
Christians : the diligence of Monsieur de Poutrin-court at  
the very point of shipping.

### CHAP. XI.

Their departure from Rochel : Sundry meetings of ships and  
Pirates : stormy sea about the Açores, and whence it proceedes :  
Why the West-windes are frequent in the West-sea : From  
whence the windes doe come : Porpeses doe prognosticate  
stormes : Meanes to take them : The describing of them : Of  
stormes : Their effects : Of calmes : What is a Gust of winde :  
How it is made : The effects thereof : The bouldnesse of Ma-  
riners : how reverence is giuen to the Kings ship : The suppu-  
tation of the voyage : Hot sea, then cold : The reason of it :  
And of the Banckes of Ice in New-found-land.

### CHAP. XII.

Of the great Bancke of Morues or Coddes : Of the sound :  
Our comming to the said Bancke : The description thereof :  
The fishing of New-land-fish : And of birdes : The greedinesse  
of the birdes called by French-men : Happe-foyes : Diuers  
perils : Gods favours : The causes of frequent and long mistes  
in the Westerne-sea : Landmarkes : The sight of it : Maruel-  
lous odours : The boording of two Shaloupes : The landing at  
the Port Du Mouton : The comming to Port Royall : Of two  
French-men remaining there alone among the Saouages.

### CHAP. XIII.

The happy meeting of Monsieur du Pont : His returne to  
Port Royall : Reioycing : Description of the confines of the said  
Port : Coniectures touching the head and spring of the great  
riuer of Canada : Sowing of corne : Monsieur du Ponts re-  
turn into France : Monsieur de Poutrin-courts voyage vnto  
the country of the Armouchiquois : Faire Riesprung foorth  
without tillage : The exercises and maner of living in Port  
Royall : The Medomes of the riuer de l'Equille.

### CHAP. XIII.

Their departing from the Ile Saint Croix : The bay of  
Marchin : Choüakoet : vines and grapes : The liberality of  
the

## The Contents.

*the Sauvages : The land and people of the Armouchiquois : The cure of an Armouchiquois wounded : The simplicity and ignorance of that people : Vices of the Armouchiquois : Suspicion : People not caring for clothes : Corne sowed, and Vines planted in the Armouchiquois countrie : Quantity of grapes : Abundance of people : dangerous sea.*

### CHAP. XV.

*Dangers : unknown language : The making of a forge and of an oven : Crosses set up : Plenty : A conspiracy : Disobedience : Murther : The flight of three hundred against ten : The agility of the Armouchiquois : Bad company dangerous : The accident of a musket that did burst : The Sauvages insolency : Their timorosity, impiety, and flight : The fortunate Port : A bad sea : reuenge : The counsell and resolution for the returne : New perils : Gods fauours : Monsieur de Poutrincourts arrivall at Port Royall : How he was received.*

### CHAP. XVI.

*The Condition of the corne which they sowed : The institution of the order of bon-temps : The Sauvages behauiour among the French-men : The state of Winter : Why raines and fogges be rare in this season : Why raine is frequent betweene the Tropiques : Snow profitable to the ground : the state of Ianuarie : Conformity of weather in the ancient and New France : Why the spring is slow : The tilling of gardens : Their crop : A water mill : A Manna of Herrings : Preparation for the returne : Monsieur de Poutrincourts invention : The Sauvages admiration : Newes from France.*

### CHAP. XVII.

*The arrivall of the French : Monsieur de Monts his society is broken, and why : The Couetousnesse of them that rob the dead : Bonfires for the Nativity of the Duke of Orleans : The departing of the Sauvages to goe to wars : Sagamos Memberton : Voyages upon the Coast of the French Bay : Base trafficke : The towne of Ouigoudi : How the Sauvages doe make great voyages : Their bad intention : A Steele Mine : Sea wolues (or seales) voyces : The state of the Ile Saint Croix :*

*The*

## The Contents.

*The Sauages loue towards their children : the returne into Port Royall.*

### CHAP. XVIII.

*The Port de Campseau: our departure from Port Royall: Fogges of eight daies continuance : A Raine-bow appearing in the water : The Port of Sanalet : Tillage an honorable exercise : The grieffe of the Sauages at Monsieur De Pourtincourt his going away : Returne into France : Voyage into Mount S. Michell : The fruites of New France presented to the King : A voyage into New France after the returne of the said Monsieur De Pourtincourt into France.*

## The second Booke.

**C**ontaining the customes and maners of life of the West Indians of New France, compared to them of the ancient people of these parts ; and specially to them that bee in one and the selfe same parallele and degree.

### CHAP. I.

*Of the Natiuitie : custome of the Hebrewes, Cimbres, Frenchmen and Sauages.*

### CHAP. II.

*Of the imposing of names : the abuses of them that giue the names of Christians to Infidels : Names haue not beene giuen without occasion.*

### CHAP. III.

*Of the bringing up of children : of the Women of our time : of the ancient Germain Women.*

### CHAP. IIII.

*Of the loue towards Children : the Sauage Women loue their children more then the Women of these parts vse to do : and the cause why : wherein New France is profitable to the ancient France : Possession of the land.*

### CHAP. V.

*Of Religion : the origine of Idolatrie : he which worshipeth nothing is more capable of Christian Religion than an idolater:*

III the



*the Canadians Religion: People easie to be converted: the Astorgie and impietie of the Christians of this day: the giving of foode and teaching of Arts is the meanes to convert Savage people: of the name of God: of certaine Sauvages already Christians in minde: the Religion of the Sauvages in Virginia: fabulous tales concerning the Resurrection: the Simulachers of gods: the Floridians religion: the error of Belle-forest the Cosmographer: the worshipping of the Sunne: the kissing of hands: the Brasilians vexed by the diuell: they haue some obscure knowledge of the generall flood: and of some Christian which anciently hath beene among them.*

## CHAP. VI.

*Of the Soothsaiers, and Aoutmoins: of Priesthood: the Idols of the Mexicans: the Indian Priests are Phisicians withall: pretence of Religion: the Aoutmoins subtilties: how they call upon duels: songs to the praises of the diuell: the Sabbath of the Sauvages: Bonifiers upon Saint Johns daies: Vrim and Thummim: the office of Priesthood successiue: of the Caraiibes, deceiuers like to the sacrificers of the Idoll Bell.*

## CHAP. VII.

*Of the Language: the Indians be all divided in languages: time bringeth an alteration in the tounges: the conformity of them the causes of the change of tongues: since when the trade of Beuers hath beene: the Sauvages pronounciation: of the ancient Hebreues, Greeks, Latines, and of the Parisians: the Sauvages haue particular tongues, not understood by New found landmen: the Sauvages maner of reckoning.*

## CHAP. VIII.

*Of learning: the inuention of letters is admirable: the ancient Germains were without letters: the letters and Sciences were among the Gaullois, before that either the Greeks or Latins had them: the Sarronides were in the old times Diuines and Philosophers among the Gaullois: the Bardes were Poets: the reuerence that was used towards them: the reuerence of Mars towards the Muses: the king his eldest daughter: the Basilicke fastned in the temple of Apollo.*

CHAP.

# The Contents.

## CHAP. IX.

*Of Clothes and of Haires: to what end Garments were made: the nakednesse of the ancient Picts: of the moderne Ethiopians: of the Brasilians: the Sauvages of New France more honest: their Cloakes of skins: the ancient Hercules his garment, of the ancient Germans, of the Gothes: the Shooing and Hoseing of the Sauvages: the covering of the head: the Haires of the Hebrewes, Gaullois, Gothes: the Ordinance for the Priests to weare Hats: Shauen men.*

## CHAP. X.

*Of the shape and dexterity of the Sauvages: Mans forme is the most perfect: the violence done to Nature; the Brasilians be short nosed: The rest of the Sauvages be handsome men: halfe dwarfes: the Patagons be Gyants: The fauour of the Sauvages: the description of the Westerly flies: Why the Americans are not blacke: From whence procedes the heat of Affrica: And the coolnesse of America being in the selfesame degree: Of the colour of the haires and of the beard: When the Romans began to weare beards: the Sauvages are not hairy: Hairy women: The ancient Gaullois and Germans had their haires yellow like gold: Their lookes, voices, eies: The women sbrew: The eses of the men of Taprobane, of the Sauvages, and Scythians: Of the lips: Monstruous bodies: The agility of the body: What the Naires of Malebaris doe for to be nimble: What people haue agility: The Indians skilfulnesse in swimming: A sharpe sight: The Sauvages sense of smelling: Their hatred against the Spaniards.*

## CHAP. XI.

*Of the ornaments of the body: Of the painting of the Hebrewes, Romans, Affricans &c. ancient English men, Picts, Gothes &c. West-Indians: Of the markes, razings, and incisions on their flesh: Of the markes of the ancient Hebrewes, Tyrans and Christians: The reproofing of the painting of the face, and other paintings of the body.*

## CHAP. XII.

*Of the outward ornaments: The two Tyrants of our life:*

## The Contents.

*The superfluity of the ancient Rome : The excesse of Ladies, of their wiers and periwiggcs : Colouring of haire : Eare-rings : Bracelets , garters , buskins and shooes : What pearles are, Matachiaz, Vignols, Esurgni: Carkanets of iron, and of gold.*

### CHAP. XIII.

*Of marriage : The Iewes custome : The widdowes do blacken their faces : the prostituting of Maidens : the continency of the Souriquois women: the maner to make sute to a maid for marriage: the prostituting of maidens in Brasill: of the Pox: the cure thereof: the chastitie of the ancient German woman: reason for the Sauages continency: the Floridians doe loue women : Ithyphalles : Degrees of consanguinity : The Gaulloise women fruitfull : Poligamy without Iealousie : Diuorce: What a man ought to doe hauing a bad wife : Abstineny of the widdowes : The Infidels haue whoredome in abomination.*

### CHAP. XIII.

*Of the Sauages Tabagic, or banquet : The manner of liuing of the Sauages of the hether lands : How the Armouchiquois use and serue themselues with their Corne : the ancient Italians did the like : the assembly of the Sauages , making their Tabagy : the women eat by themselues : the honour giuen to women amongst the ancient Gaullois and Germans : the bad condition of them among the Romans : What they haue beene that haue established the Roman Empire : the manner of liuing of the ancient Romans, Tartarians, Moschouites, Getulians, Germans, Ethiopians, of Saint Iohn Baptist, of Emilian, Traian, Adrian: and of the Sauages: Salt not altogether necessary : the Sauages doe sometimes suffer want : their superstition : Of their gluttony and of Hercules : the Brasilians food : Anthropophagy : Strange prostituting of maidens: communalty of life : the Sauages Hospitality, of the Gaullois and Germans : Of drinking, the first Romans had no vines : the Beere of the ancient Gaullois , and Egyptians : the ancient Germans did hate wine: How wine is necessary : Tabacco : the drinking one to another : the drinke of the Floridians and Brasilians : Hidromel.*

### CHAP.

## The Contents.

### CHAP. XV.

*Of dances and songes: The origine of dances in the honour of God: dances and songes in the honour of Apollo, Neptune, Mars, of the Sonne, of the Salians: Præful: Socrates dance: The dances turned into bad use: How much dangerous: All Sauages doe use dancing: To what end: Orpheus his foolish song: Why we sing to God: The songes of the Souriquois: Of holy people: Of the Gaullois Bardes: Sonnets made by the commandement of Charolus Magnus: The song of the Lacedemonians: The dances and songes of the Sauages: The orations of their Captaines.*

### CHAP. XVI.

*Of the disposition of the body: Phthisic: The sweatinges of the Sauages: the Phisitions and Chirurgions of the Floridians, Brasilians and Souriquois: Cures made by Charmes: A maruellous report of the despising of grieffe: Triall of constancy: Suffering of torments for the honour of Diana and of the Sun: the long lines of the Sauages: the causes thereof, and of the shortning of our daies.*

### CHAP. XVII.

*The mens exercices: of Bowes and arrowes, Maces, Bucklers, fishing lines, Rackets: the Sauages Canowes, or boates, and their fashion: Canowes made of willowes, of paper, of leather, of hollowed trees: the originall of the fables of the Syrens, or Mermaidens; long trauels through the woods; pottery of Earth; the tillage of the ground; the ancient Germans had no lands proper or peculiar to them; the Sauages are not laborious; how they manure the land; double sowing, and double Haruest; How they liue in Winter; the Sauages townes; of the originall of townes; the first builders in the Gaules; of the word Magus; Philosophy hath beene first found out by the Barbarians; the plaies and games of the Sauages.*

### CHAP. XVIII.

*The womens exercices; the woman is called pierced or hollowed; the women are saued in bringing forth of Children; of purification; the hard condition of the women among the Sauages;*

## The Contents.

ges, of mattes, currying and dressing of leather; their making of Baskets, Purfes, Dies, Dishes, Matachiaz, Canowes; the loue of the Saunage women towards their husbands; their chastity; A faire obseruation upon the Hebrew names of the man, and of the woman.

### CHAP. XIX.

Of Ciuilitie; the first Ciuilitie, is the obedience to God and to the parents; the Saunages be Slouely at their Banquets, for want of linnen; the repast of the ancient Gaullois and Germains; of the arriuing of the Saunages into any place; their Greetings; likewise of the Greekes, Romans, and Hebrewes; of the saluting in Sneezing; Item in the beginning of Letters; of the Farewell; the Saunages reuerence to their Fathers and Mothers; Curse to him which honoreth not his Father and his mother.

### CHAP. XX.

Of the Vertues and Vices of the Saunages; the Principles of Vertue are in vs, euen from our birth; of force, and greatnesse of courage; the ancient Gaullois were without feare; the Saunages are reuengefull; wherein temperance consisteth; whether the Saunages are indued therewith; wherein Liberalitie consisteth; the Saunages Liberality; they disdain the couetous pelting Merchants; their Magnificence, Hospitality, Piety towards their Fathers and Mothers; of their Iustice; the execution of Iustice; the incredible euasion of two Saunages, prisoners; wherein the Saunages be diligent and slot hfull.

### CHAP. XXI.

Of Hunting; the originall thereof; to whom it belongeth; to what end Kings are chosen; hunting the image of War; the first end thereof; the interpretation of one verse of the 32: Psalme; all Saunages doe hunt; when and how; the discription of the hunting of the Ellan or Stagge; the Saunages hounds; the Saunages haue Rackets at their feet when they hunt; their continuance in hunting; faire inuention of them for the Kitching; their womens duty after the hunting; the fishing or hunting of the Beuer; the discription of the same; her admirable building;

## The Contents.

*building ; how she is taken ; from whence anciently the Beavers did come ; Of Beares ; Leopards ; the description of the beast called Nibachés ; Wolves ; Conies &c. the Cattell of France do profit well in New France ; Marvellous multiplication of Beasts ; of the beasts of Florida, and of Brasill ; the Sauvages are truly noble.*

### CHAP. XXII.

*Of Hawking ; the Muses doe delight in hunting ; hawking is a noble exercise ; How the Sauvages take their fowle ; Islands swarming with birds ; the fowles of Port Royall ; Of a bird called Niridau : of glistening flies ; Turky or Indian Cocks ; the fowles of Florida, and of Brasill.*

### CHAP. XXIII.

*Of Fishing ; a comparison betweene Hunting, Hawking and Fishing ; an Emperour delighting himselfe in Fishing ; Plato his absurdity ; Fishing permitted to Churchmen ; the feeding upon fish is the best and wholesomest food : every Fish dreads the Winter, and withdraweth himselfe, they returne in the Spring time ; a manna of Smelts, Heerings, Pilchers, Sturgeons and Salmons ; the maner of taking of them by the Sauvages ; the abuse & superstition of Pythagoras ; the Sacerdorum of New found land fishermen ; of the shell Fish of Port Royall ; the fishing of the Codde ; whether Cods doe sleepe ; the cause why fishes sleepe not ; fishes having stones in their heads (as the Codde) doe feare Winter ; Oile (or traine) of fish ; the fishing of the Whale ; wherein the hardinesse and bouldnesse of the Sauvages is to be admired ; Hippopotames : the infinite multitude of Mackerels ; the Idlennesse of the people of this day.*

### CHAP. XXIII.

*Of the Land: which is the good ground : Terra Sigillata, is in New France: the fructifying of Monsieur de Poutrincourts Sowings: which is the good Dung: of Turkie (or Indian) Wheat, called Mahis: how the Sauvages doe mend their grounds: how they Sowe; the temperature of the Aire doth serue to production; Barnes under ground: the cause of the sloth-*

## The Contents.

Notfulness of the Sauages of the hither lands neere unto vs ;  
Hempe ; of Vines ; when they were first planted in Galia ; of  
Trees, Tabacco, and the maner and use of it ; the foolish gree-  
dinesse after Tabacco ; the Vertues thereof ; the error of Bel-  
le-forest : of the rootes called Afrodiles, or ground Nuts ; a  
consideration upon the miserie of many people : the tilling of the  
ground is a most innocent exercise ; Gloria adorea : of the  
Fruit trees , and others of Port Royall, of Florida, and of Bra-  
sill ; the despising of Mines ; Fruits to be hoped in new France.

### CHAP. XXV.

Of the war : to what end the Sauages doe make war : The  
Orations of the Sauages Captaines : their surprises : the ma-  
ner to foretell the euent of the war ; the succession of Captaines ;  
the Sauages armes ; of excellent Archers ; from whence comes  
the word Milicia : the cause of the Sauages feare : their ma-  
ner of marching in War : a warlike dance ; how the Sauages  
doe use the victory ; of the Victime, sacrifice ; Punishment ;  
the Sauages will not fall into their enemies hands : the trophies  
of their enemies heads : of the ancient Gaullois ; of the moderne  
Hungarians.

### CHAP. XXVI.

Of Funerals ; the lamenting for the dead ; the burying of  
them is a worke of humanity ; the custome of the Sauages in  
this respect ; of the preseruing of the dead bodies ; of the mour-  
ning of the Persians, Egyptians, Romans, Gascons, Brasili-  
ans, Floridians, Souriquois, Hebrewes, Queenes of France,  
Thracians, Locrians, ancient Christians ; the burning of the  
moueable goods of the deceased, a faire lesson to the Couetous ;  
the customes of the Phrigians, Latins, Hebrewes, Gaullois,  
Germans, and Sauages for this respect ; the burying of the  
dead ; What people doe bury them : who burne them, and who  
preserue them ; Of the funerall gifts shut up in the sepulchers  
of the dead ; the same reprooued ; the couetousnesse of the In-  
fringers of Sepulchers.

*Nonna*

untous;  
Italia; of  
ish gree-  
c of Bel-  
Nuts; a  
ag of the  
: of the  
of Bra-  
France.

ar: The  
the ma-  
ptaines;  
ce comes  
beir ma-  
Sauages  
shment;  
trophies  
moderne

urying of  
uages in  
e mour-  
Brasili-  
France,  
ag of the  
puetous;  
Gaullois,  
g of the  
and who  
oulchers.  
f the In-

*Nona*



54

53

52

51

50

49

48

47

46

45

**T**  
tath  
Du  
into  
it

*The*



digr  
amp



*Noua Francia.*

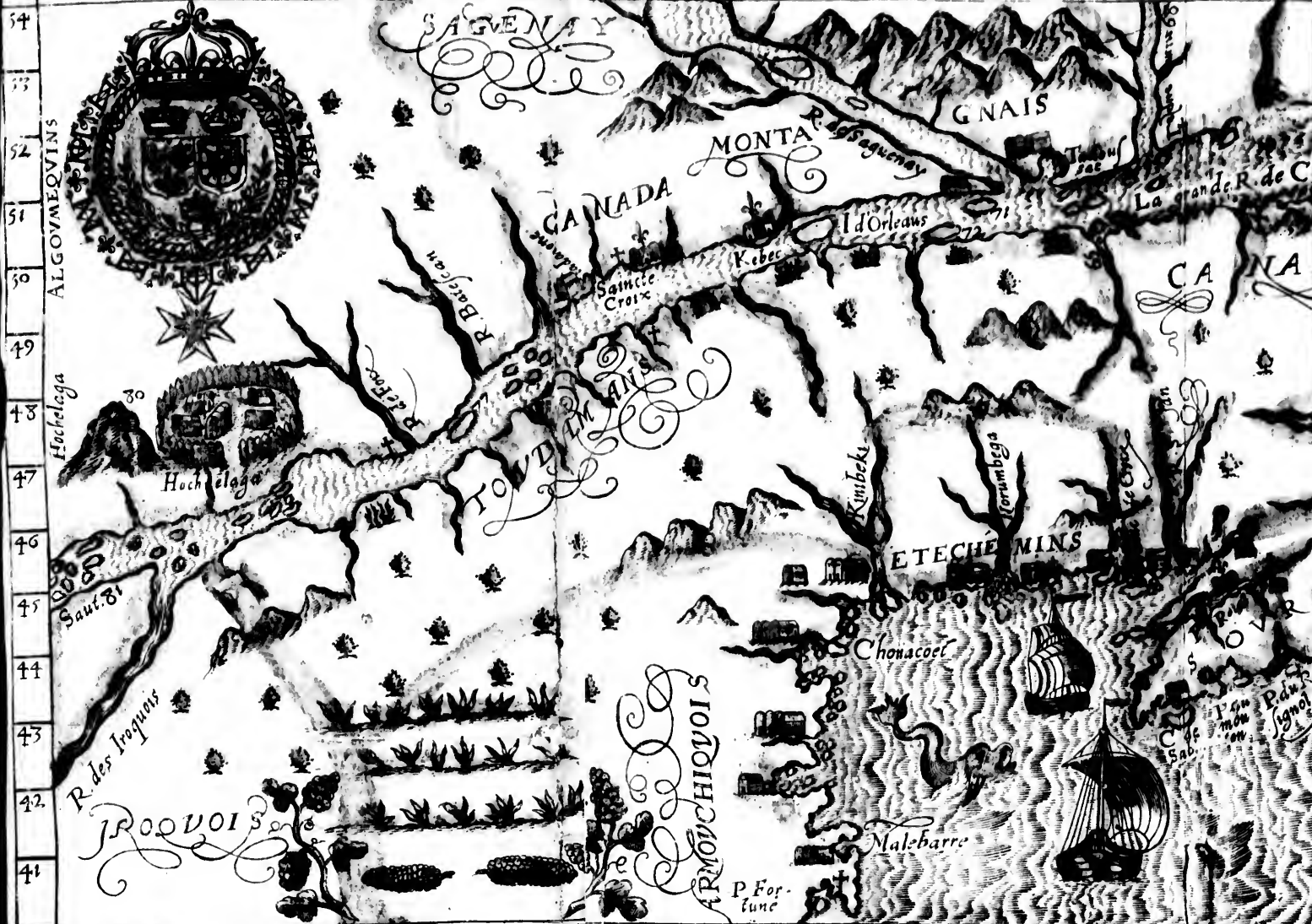
The three late voyages and plantation of Monsieur De MONTS, of Monsieur Du Pont grauè, and of Monsieur De Poutrincourt, into the Countries called by the Frenchmen *La Cadia*, lying to the Southwest of *Cap Breton*; together with an excellent seuerall Treatie of all the commodities of the said Countries: and manners of the naturall inhabitants of the same.

CHAP. I.

*The Patent of the French King to Monsieur DE MONTS, for the inhabiting of the Countries of La Cadia, Canada, and other places in new France.*

**H**ENRY by the grace of God King of France and Nauarre. To our deare and welbeloued the Lord of Monts, one of the ordinarie Gentlemen of our Chamber, greeting. As our greatest care and labour is, and hath alwaies beene, since our comming to this crowne, to maintaine and conserue it in the ancient dignitie, greatnesse and splendor thereof, to extend and amplifie, as much as lawfully may be done, the bounds  
A and

FIGURE DE LA TERRE NEUVE, GRANDE RIVIERE DE CANADA, ET CÔTES



Ian Swelinck fecit

I. Millot. excudit

MARCVS. I



and limits of the same. We being, of a long time, informed of the situation and condition of the lands and territories of *La Cadia*, mooued about all things, with a singular zeale, and deuout and constant resolution, which we haue taken, with the helpe and assistance of God, author, distributor, and protector of all kingdomes and estates, to cause the people, which doe inhabit the Countrie, men (at this present time) barbarous, Atheists, without faith or religion, to be conuerted to Christianitie, and to the beleefe and profession of our faith and religion: and to draw them from the ignorance and vnbeleefe wherein they are. Hauing also of a long time knowen by the relation of the sea Captaines, Pilots, Marchants and others, who of long time haue haunted, frequented and trafficked with the people that are found in the said places, how fruitfull, commodious and profitable may bee vnto vs, to our estates and subiects, the dwelling, possession, and habitation of those countries, for the great and apparent profit which may be drawn by the greater frequentation & habitude which may be had with the people that are found there, & the trafficke and commerce which may be, by that means safely treated and negotiated. Wee then for these causes fully trusting on your great wisdom, and in the knowledge and experience that you haue of the qualitie, condition and situation of the said countrie of *La Cadia*: for the diuers and sundry navigations, voiages and frequentations that you haue made into those parts, and others neere and bordering vpon it: Assuring our selues that this our resolution and intention, being committed vnto you, you will attentiuely, diligently, and no lesse courageously and valourously execute and bring to such perfection as we desire: Haue expressly appointed and established you, and by these Presents, signed with our owne hands, doe commit, ordaine, make, constitute and establish you, our Lieutenant generall, for to represent our person, in the countries, territories, coasts and confines of *La Cadia*. To  
begin

beg  
dist  
exte  
tho  
to d  
dere  
wai  
the  
Chr  
cise  
said  
and  
well  
exec  
to b  
plac  
waic  
haue  
blis  
warr  
then  
be d  
uifor  
renc  
capa  
lawe  
may  
that  
the  
tie,  
ple  
ouer  
the  
ther  
fam  
war

begin from the 40 degree vnto the 46. And in the same distance, or part of it, as farre as may be done, to establish, extend and make to be knowne our name, might and authoritie. And vnder the same to subiect, submit and bring to obedience all the people of the said land and the borders thereof: And by the meanes thereof, and all lawfull waies, to call, make, instruct, prouoke and incite them to the knowledge of God, and to the light of the faith and Christian Religion, to establish it there: And in the exercise and profession of the same, keepe and conserue the said people, and all other inhabitants in the said places, and there to command in peace, rest and tranquillitie, as well by sea as by land: to ordaine, decide, and cause to be executed all that which you shall iudge fit and necessarie to be done, for to maintaine, keepe and conserue the said places vnder our power and authoritie, by the formes, waies and meanes prescribed by our lawes. And for to haue there a care of the same with you, to appoint establish, and constitute all officers, as well in the affaires of warre, as for Iustice and policie, for the first time, and from thence forward to name and present them vnto vs: for to be disposed by vs, and to giue letters, titles, and such prouisoes as shall be necessarie. And according to the occurrences of affaires, your selfe with the aduice of wise and capable men, to prescribe vnder our good pleasure, lawes, statutes and ordinances conformable, as much as may be possible, vnto ours, specially in things and matters that are not provided by them: To treat and contract to the same effect, peace, alliance and confederacy, good amitie, correspondencie and communication with the said people & their Princes, or others, hauing power or command ouer them: To entertaine, keepe, and carefully to obserue, the treatises and alliances wherein you shall couenant with them: vpon condition that they themselues performe the same of their part. And for want thereof to make open warres against them, to constraîne and bring them to such

reason, as you shall thinke needfull, for the honour, obedience and seruice of God, and the establishment, maintenance and conseruation of our said authoritie amongst them: at least to haunt and frequent by you, and all our subiects with them, in all assurance, libertie, frequentation and communication, there to negociate and trafficke louingly and peaceably. To giue and grant vnto them fauors and priuiledges, charges and honors. Which intire power abouesaid, we will likewise and ordaine, that you haue ouerall our said subiects that will goe in that voiage with you and inhabit there, trafficke, negociate and remaine in the said places, to retaine, take, reserue and appropriate vnto you, what you will and shall see to be most commodious for you, and proper to your charge, qualitie and vse of the said lands, to distribute such parts and portions thereof, to giue and attribute vnto them such titles, honors, rights, powers and faculties as you shall see necessarie, according to the qualities, conditions and merits of the persons of the same countrie or others. Chiefely to populate, to manure, and to make the said lands to be inhabited, as speedily, carefully & skilfully, as time, places & commodities may permit. To make thereof, or cause to be made to that end, discouerie and view along the maritime coastes and other countries of the maine land, which you shall order & prescribe in the foresaid space of the 40 degree, to the 46 degree, or otherwise as much and as farre as may be, along the said coast, and in the firme land. To make carefully to be sought and marked all sorts of mines of gold and of siluer, copper, and other mettals and minerals, to make them to be digged, drawne from the earth, purified and refined, for to be conuerted into vse, to dispose according as we haue prescribed by Edicts and orders, which we haue made in this realme of the profit and benefit of them, by you or them whom you shall establish to that effect, reseruing vnto vs onely the tenth penie, of that which shall issue from them of gold, siluer, and copper,

per, leauing vnto you that which we might take of the other said mettals and minerals, for to aide and ease you in the great expenses that the foresaid charge may bring vnto you. Willing in the meane while, that as well for your securitie and commoditie, as for the securitie and commoditie of all our subiects, who will goe, inhabite, and trafficke in the said lands: as generally of all others that will accommodate themselues there vnder our power and authoritie; you may cause to bee built and frame one or many forts, places, Townes, and all other houses, dwellings and habitations, Ports, Hauens, retiring places and lodgings, as you shall know to be fit, profitable and necessarie for the performing of the said enterprise. To establish garrisons and souldiers for the keeping of them. To aide and serue you for the effects aboue said with the vagrant, idle persons and masterlesse, as well out of townes as of the countrie: and with them that be condemned to perpetuall banishment, or for three yeeres at the least out of our Realme: Prouided alwaies that it be done by the aduice, consent, and authoritie of our officers.ouer and besides that which is aboue mentioned ( and that which is moreouer prescribed, commanded and ordained vnto you by the commissions and powers, which our most deare cosen the Lord of Ampuille Admirall of France hath giuen vnto you, for that which concerneth the affaires and the charge of the Admiraltie, in the exploit, expedition, and executing of the things aboue said ) to doe generally whatsoeuer may make for the conquest, peopling, inhabiting and preseruacion of the said land of *La Cadia*, and of the coastes, territories adjoining, and of their appurtenances and dependencies, vnder our name and authoritie, whatsoeuer our selues would & might doe, if we were there present in person, although that the case should require a more speciall order, then we prescribe vnto you by these Presents: To the contents whereof wee command, ordaine, and most ex-

Idle and banished men  
imploied in  
this businesse.



prellie doe enioine all our Iusticers, officers and subiects,  
 to conforme themselues: And to obey and giue attention  
 vnto you, in all and euery the things abouesaid, their cir-  
 cumstances and dependencies. Also to giue vnto you in  
 the executing of them all such aid and comfort, helpe and  
 assistance, as you shall haue need of, and whereof they  
 shall be by you required; and this vpon paine of disobe-  
 dience and rebellion. And to the end no body may pre-  
 tend cause of ignorance of this our intention, and to busie  
 himselfe in all, or in part of the charge, dignitie and au-  
 thoritie which we giue vnto you by these presents: Wee  
 haue of our certaine knowledge, full power and regall au-  
 thoritie, reuoked, suppressed and declared voide, and of  
 none effect heereafter, and from this present time, al other  
 powers and commissions, letters and expeditions giuen  
 and deliuered to any person soeuer, for to discover, peo-  
 ple and inhabite in the foresaid extention of the said lands,  
 situated from the said 40 degree, to the 46, whatsoeuer  
 they be. And furthermore we command and ordaine all  
 our said officers, of what qualitie & condition soeuer they  
 be, that after these Presents, or the duplicate of them shall  
 be duely examined by one of our beloued and trusty  
 Counsellers, Notaries and Secretaries, or other Notarie  
 Royall, they doe vpon your request, demand and sute, or  
 vpon the sute of any our Attorneis, cause the same to be  
 read, published, and recorded in the records of their Iuris-  
 dictions, powers and precincts, seeking, as much as shall  
 appertaine vnto them, to quiet and appease all troubles  
 and hinderances which may contradict the same. For  
 such is our pleasure. Giuen at Fountain-Bleau the 8 day  
 of Nouember: in the yeere of our Lord 1603: And  
 of our reigne the 15. Signed HENRY: and  
 vnderneath, by the King, Potier;  
 And sealed vpon single la-  
 bell with yellow  
 waxe.

The  
 a  
 M  
 thore  
 two  
 cond  
 capta  
 selfe,  
 tleme  
 trinco  
 thofe  
 chufe  
 lie, v  
 shoul  
 garte  
 ped h  
 wich  
 warr  
 uent  
 what  
 zen v  
 they  
 God  
 thefe  
 O  
 the fa

C H A P. II.

*The voyage of Monsieur De Monts into New France: what accidents hapned in the said voyage: The causes of the Icie banks in New found land: The imposing of names to certaine Ports: The perplexitie wherein they were by reason of the stay of the other ship.*

**M**onsieur *De Monts* having made the Commissions and Prohibitions before said, to be proclaimed thorow the Realme of France, and especially thorow the Ports and maritime townes thereof, caused two ships to be rigged and furnished, the one vnder the conduct of captaine *Timothy* of New-hauen, the other of captaine *Morell* of Honfleur. In the first, he shipped himselfe, with good number of men of account, as well Gentlemen as others. And forasmuch as Monsieur *De Poutrincourt* was, and had beene of a long time, desirous to see those countries of New France, and there to finde out and chuse some fit place to retire himselfe into, with his familie, wife and children, not meaning to be the last that should follow and participate in the glory of so faire and generous an enterprize, would needs goe thither, and shipped himselfe with the said Monsieur *De Monts*, carrying with him some quantitie of armours and munitions of warre; and so weighed anckers from New-hauen the seuenth day of March, 1604. But being departed somewhat too soone, before the Winter had yet left off her frozen weed, they found store of Icie banks, against the which they were in danger to strike, and so to be cast away: But God, which hitherto hath prospered the navigation of these voiajes, preferued them.

The setting forth out of New-hauen.

Danger.

One might wonder, and not without cause, why, in the same parallel, there is more Ice in this sea than in that of.

of France. Whereunto I answer, that the Ices that be found in those seas are not originary frō the same climate, but rather come from the Northerly parts, driuen without any let thorow the vast of this great sea by the waues, stormes, and boisterous flouds, which the Easterly and Northerly windes doe cause in Winter and Spring time, and driue them towards the South and West: But the French seas are sheltered by Scotland, England and Ireland: which is the cause that the Ices cannot fall into it. An other reason also might be alleaged, and that is the motion of the sea, which beareth more towards those parts, because of the larger course that it maketh towards America than towards the lands of these our parts. The perill of this voyage was, not onely in the meeting of the said bankes of Ice, but also in the stormes that vexed them: One of them they had that brake the galleries of the ship: And in these turmoiles, a Ioyner was caried away by a sea or flash of water to the next doore of death, ouerboard, but he held himselfe fast at a tackling, which by chance hung out of the said shippe.

A perillous  
storme.

Winde commonly good  
in March for  
the New  
found lands.  
The Ile of  
Sablon or  
Sand.

The voyage was long by reason of contrarie windes, which seldome hapneth to them that set out in March for the New found lands, which are ordinarilie caried with an East or Northren winde, fit to goe to those lands. And hauing taken their courte to the South of the Ile of ~~\_\_\_\_\_~~ *Sablon*, or Sand, for to shunne the said Ices, they almost fell from *Caribdis* into *Scylla*, going to strike towards the said Ile, during the thicke mists that are frequent in that sea.

In the end, the sixt of May they came to a certain Port, where they found captaine *Rossignol* of New-hauen, who did trucke for skins with the Sauages, contrarie to the Kings inhibitions, which was the cause that his ship was confiscated. This Port was called *Le Port du Rossignol*, hauing (in this his hard fortune) this onely good, that a good and fit Harborough or Port, in those coasts beareth his name.

Port du Ros-  
signol.

From

From thence coasting and discovering the lands, they arrived at another Porte, very faire, which they named *Le Port du Montton*, by reason that a Mutron or Wether hauing leaped ouerboord and drowned himselfe came aboard againe, and was taken and eaten as good prize. By such accidents many names haue anciently beene giuen on the sudden, and without any great deliberation. So the Capitoll of Rome had his name, because that in digging there, a dead mans head was found. So the citie of Milan hath beene called *Mediolanum*, that is to say, halfe wooll, for that the *Gaules*, casting the foundation thereof, found a Sowe halfe couered with wooll: and so of sundry others.

*Le Port du Montton.*

Capitol.

Milan.

Being at the Port *du Montton*, they cabaned and lodged themselves after the sauage fashion, expecting newes of the other ship, wherein was the victuals and other necessarie prouision for the foode and entertainment of them that were to Winter there, being about an hundred men in number. In this Port they tarried a moneth in great perplexitie, for feare they had that some sinister accident had hapned to the said other shippe, who set out the tenth of March, wherein was *Monsieur Du Pont* of *Honfleur*, and the said Captaine *Morel*. And this was so much the more important, for that of the coming of the said ship depended the whole successe of the businesse. For euen vpon this long tarying, it was in question whether they should returne into France or no. *Monsieur De Pontreincourt* was of aduice that it were better to die there; whereto the said *Monsieur De Monts* conformed himselfe. In the meane while many went a hunting, others to fishing, for to store the kitchin. Neere the said *Montton* Porte there is a place so replenished with Rabbets and Conies, that they almost did eat nothing else. During that time *Monsieur Champlain* was sent with a shalloup to seeke farther off a fitter place to retire themselves, at which exploit he tarried so long, that deliberating vpon the returne, they thought to leaue him behind: for there was no more victuals: and

About 100. Planters.

Deliberation vpon the returne into France.

Store of Conies.

B

they

t be  
nate,  
with-  
ues,  
and  
ime,  
the  
Ire-  
o it.  
mo-  
parts,  
Ame-  
perill  
said  
nem:  
ship:  
a sea  
oord,  
hance  
ndes,  
ch for  
ith an  
d ha-  
ft fell  
e said  
sea.  
Port,  
who  
to the  
o was  
ignal,  
that a  
eareth  
From

they serued themselues with that, that was found in the said *Rosignols* shippe, without which they had been forced to returne into France, and so to breake a faire enterprize at the very birth and beginning thereof; or to starue, hauing ended the hunting of Conies, which could not still continue. Now the causes of the staie of the said *Monsieur Du Pont*, and *Captaine Morel*, were two; the one, that wanting a Cocke-boate, they imploied their time in the building of one, in the land where they arriued first, which was the English Port: The other, that being come at *Campseau Port*, they found there foure ships of *Baskes*, or men of *Saint Iohn de Luz*, that did trucke with the Sauages, contrarie to the said Inhibitions, from whom they tooke their goods, and brought the Masters to the said *Monsieur De Monts*, who vsed them very gently.

The English  
Porte.  
*Campseau*  
Port.

Note heere  
the good na-  
ture and dili-  
gence of the  
Sauages.

*La Baye des*  
*Iles.*

The Ice cō-  
meth farther  
to the South  
than *Camp-*  
*seau.*

Three weekes being expired, and the said *Monsieur De Monts* hauing no newes of the shippe he looked for, he deliberated to send along the coast to seeke for them, and for that purpose dispatched some Sauages, to whom hee gaue a French man for companie with letters. The said Sauages promised to returne at the time prefixed, being eight daies, whereof they failed not. But as the societie of man and wife, agreeing well together, is a powerful thing; so these Sauages before their departure, had a care of their wiues and children, and required victuals for them; which was granted. And hauing hoised vp sailes, within few daies after they found those that they sought for, at a place called *La Baye des Iles*, who were themselues in no lesse feare or grieffe for the said *Monsieur De Monts*, than he of them, because they found not, during their voiage, those markes and signes that were agreed vpon betweene them, which is, that *Monsieur De Monts* should haue left at *Campseau*, some crosse on a tree, or letter there fixed, which he did not, hauing farre ouer-shot the said *Campseau*, by reason that for the said Iced bankes, he tooke his way somewhat farre on the South, as we haue said. So

hauing

having read the letters, the said *Monsieur Du Pont*, and *Captaine Morel* gave up the victuals and provision that they had brought for them that should Winter there, and so returned backe towards the great riuer of *Canada*, for the trade of skinnes or furies.

*Monsieur Du Pont* goeth to *Canada*, to trade for Furies.

CHAP. III.

*The leaving of Port du Montton: the accident of a man lost in the woods the space of sixteen daies: Baye Françoisse, or French Baye: Port Royal: The riuer of L'Equille, a Copper mine: The mischiefe of golden mines: of Diamonds: Turky stones.*

**A**L New France in the end being contained in two ships, they waighed ankers from *Porte Du Montton*, for to imploy their time, and to discover lands as much as might before Winter. We came to *Cape de Sable*, or the Sandie Cape; and from thence we sailed to the *Baie of Saint Marie*, where our men lay at anker fiteene daies, whilest the lands and passages as well by sea as by riuer might be descried and knowen. This Baye is a very faire place to inhabite, because that one is readily carried thither without doubling. There are mines of Iron & Silver; but in no great abundance, according to the triall made thereof in France. Having sojourned there some 12 or 13 daies, a strange accident hapned, such as I will tell you. There was a certaine Churchman of a good familie in Paris, that had a desire to performe the voyage with *Monsieur De Monts*, and that against the liking of his friends, who sent expressly to *Honfleur* to diuert him therof, and to bring him backe to Paris. The ships lying at anker in the said Baye of *Saint Marie*, he put himselfe in companie with some that went to sport themselues in the woods. It came to passe, that having staid to drinke at a brooke, hee forgot there his sword, and followed on his way with his companie: which when he perceiued hee

*Cap De Sable*, or the Sandie Cape. *Saint Maries Baye*. Faire place to inhabite. Mines of Iron and Silver.

An accident of a man lost in the woods the space of 16. daies.

returned backe to seeke it : but hauing found it, forgetfull from what part he came, and not considering whether he should goe East or West, or otherwise ( for there was no path ) he tooke his way quite contrarie, turning his backe from his companie, and so long travelled that hee found himselfe at the sea shoare, where no ships were to be seen, (for they were at the other side of a nooke of land farre reaching into the sea ) he imagined that he was forsaken, and began to bewaile his fortune vpon a rocke. The night being come, euery one being retired, he is found wanting: hee was asked for of those that had beene in the woods, they report in what maner he departed from them, and that since they had no newes of him. Whereupon a Protestant was charged to haue killed him, because they quarrelled sometimes for matters of Religion. Finally, they sounded a trumpet thorow the forest, they shot off the Canon diuers times, but in vaine: for the roaring of the Sea, stronger than all that, did expell backe the sound of the said Canons and trumpets. Two, three and foure daies passe, he appeareth not. In the meane while the time hastens to depart, so hauing taried so long that hee was then held for dead, they weighed ankers to goe further, and to see the depth of a Baye that hath some 40 leagues length, and 14 ( yea 18 ) of bredth, which was named *La Baye Francoise*, or the French Baye.

*La Baye Fran-  
coise.*

In this Bay is the passage to come into a Port, wherein to our men entred, & made some abode, during the which they had the pleasure to hunt an Ellan, or Stagge, that crossed a great lake of the Sea, which maketh this Port, and did swimme but easily. This Port is enuironed with mountaines on the North side : Towards the South be small hills, which (with the said mountaines) doe powre out a thousand brookes, which make that place pleasanter than any other place in the world: there are very faire falls of waters, fit to make Mills of all sorts. At the East is a riuer betweene the said mountaines and hills, in the which

Ships

Ships may saile fifteene Leagues and more, and in all this distance is nothing of both sides the Riuer but faire meadowes, which riuer was named *L' Equille*, because that the first fish taken therein was an *Equille*. But the said Port, for the beauty thereof was called *Port Royall*. *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* having found this place to be to his liking demanded it, with the Lands thereunto adioyning, of *Monsieur De Monts*, to whom the King had by commission, before inserted, granted the distribution of the lands of New France from the 40. degree to the 46. Which place was granted to the said *Monsieur De Poutrincourt*, who since hath had letters of confirmation for the same of his Maiestie, intending to retire himselfe thither with his familie, and there to establish the Christian and French name, as much as his power shall stretch, and God grant him the meanes to accomplish it. The said Porte containeth eight leagues of circuit, besides the riuer of *L' Equille*. There is within it two Iles very faire and pleasant: the one at the mouth of the said riuer, which I deeme to be of the greatnesse of the Citie of *Beauvais*: The other at the side of the mouth of an other riuer, as broad as the riuer of *Oise*, or *Marne*, entring within the said Porte: The said Ile being almost of the greatnesse of the other: and they both are wooddy. In this Porte, and right ouer against the former Ile, we dwelt three yeares after this voyage. We will speake thereof more at large heereafter.

From Port Royall they sailed to the Copper mine, whereof we haue spoken before else where. It is a high rocke betweene two Bayes of the Sea, wherein the Copper is conioyned with the stone, very faire and very pure, such as is that which is called *Rozette Copper*. Many Goldsmithes haue seene of it in France, which doe say that vnder the Copper Mine there might be a golden Mine: which is very probable. For if those excrements that nature expelleth foorth be so pure, namely, small peeces that are found vpon the grauell at the foote of the Rocke, when

The riuer of  
*L' Equille*.

*Port Royall*.

A Copper  
Mine.

In the 28. and  
29. chap. of  
the second  
booke of the  
whole vo-  
lume vntrans-  
lated.



Things first  
to be prouid-  
ed in new  
plantation.

it is low water, there is no doubt that the mettall which is in the bowels of the earth is much more perfect, but this is a worke that requireth time. The first mining and working is to haue bread, wine and cattell, as we haue said else where. Our felicitie consisteth not in Mines, specially of gold & siluer, the which serue for nothing in the tillage of the ground, nor to handicrafts vse. Contrariwise, the abundance of them is but a charge and burthen, that keepeth man in perpetuall vnquiet, and the more he hath thereof, the lesse rest enioyeth he, and his life lesser assured vnto him.

Non.

Before the voyages of *Perou* great riches might haue beene set vp in a smal place, in stead that in this our age by the abundance of gold and siluer the same is come at no value nor esteem: One hath need of huge chests and cofers to put in that, which a small budget might haue cōtained. One might haue trauelled with a purse in ones sleue, & now a Cloake-bag and a horse must expressly be had for that purpose. We may iustly curse the houre that greedie auarice did carry the Spaniard into the West, for the wo- full euents that haue ensued thereof. For when I consider that by his greedinesse he hath kindled & maintained the warre thorow all Christendome, and his onely studie hath beene how to destroy his neighbors (and not the Turke) I cannot thinke that any other but the diuell hath beene the author of their voyages. And let not the pretence of religion be alleaged vnto mee: for (as we haue said else- where) they haue killed all the ofspring of the Countrie with the most inhumaine torments that the diuell hath beene able to excogitate. And by their cruelties haue rendred the name of God odious, & a name of offence to those poore people, and haue continually and daily blas- phemed him in the midst of the Gentils, as the Prophet reprocheth to the people of Israel. Witnesse him that had rather be damned, then to goe to the Paradise of the Spaniards.

Esaiah 52.  
vers. 5.

The

The Romaines (whose couetoufnesse hath beene vnfa-  
 tiable) haue made cruell wars to the nations of the Earth,  
 but the Spanish cruelties are not to be found out in their  
 histories. They haue contented themselues to ransacke  
 the nations which they haue ouercommed, and not to de-  
 priue them of their liues. An ancient heathenish author,  
 making triall of his poetical humor, findeth no greater  
 crime in them, but that if they found out or discovered  
 some people that had gold, they tooke them for their ene-  
 mies. The verses of this Authour haue so good a grace  
 that I must needs insert them heere, though I intend not to  
 alledge much Latine.

Patronius  
 Arbitr.

*Orbem iam totum Romanus victor habebat,  
 Quà mare, quà terra, quà sidus currit utrumque,  
 Nec satiatu erat. grauidis freta pulsa carinis  
 Iam peragrabantur: si quis fixus abditus ultra,  
 Si qua foret tellus qua fulvum mitteret aurum,  
 Hostis erat: fatisque in tristia bella paratis  
 Querebantur opes.*

But the doctrine of the wise Sonne of Sirach teacheth  
 vs a contrary thing. For knowing that the riches which  
 are digged vp, euen from as deepe as Plutoes dennes, are  
 that which some one hath said, *irritamenta malorum*, hee  
 declared *That man to be happy that hath not runne after  
 gold, and hath not put his hope in siluer and treasures; adding,  
 that he ought to be esteemed to haue done wonderfull things  
 among all his people, and to be the example of glory, which hath  
 beene tempted by gold, and remained perfect.* And so by a con-  
 trary sense the same to be vnhappy that doth otherwise.

Ecclesiast. 31.  
 ver. 8. 9. 10.

Now to returne to our Mines. Among these Copper  
 rockes there is found sometimes small rockes couered with  
 Diamons fixed to them. I will not assure them for fine, but  
 that is very pleasing to the sight. There are also certaine  
 shining blew stones, which are of no lesse value or woorth  
 than Turkie stones. *Monsieur De Champdorè* our guide  
 for the nauigations in those countries, hauing cut within a  
 rocke

Diamonds,

Turky stones.

The

rocke one of those stones, at his returne from New France he brake it in two, and gaue one part of it to *Monsieur De Monts*, the other to *Monsieur De Poutrincourt*, which they made to be put in gold, and were found woorthy to be presented the one to the King by the said *Poutrincourt*, the other to the Queene by the said *De Monts*, and were very well accepted. I remember that a Gold-smith did offer fiftene crownes to *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* for that he presented to his Maiestie. There be many other secrets, rare and faire things within the ground of those Countreies, which are yet vnknown vnto vs, and will come to the knowledge and euidence by inhabiting the prouince.

### CHAP. IIII.

*The description of the riuer Saint Iohn: and of the Ile Saint Croix: The man lost in the woods found out 16. daies after: Examples of some strange abstinences: The discord of the Saunages deferred to the iudgement of Monsieur De Monts:*

*The fatherly authoritie amongst the said Saunages: What husbands they chuse to their Daughters.*

Saint Iohns  
Riuer.

Dangerous  
comming in.

The fall of a  
Riuer.

**H**Auing viewed the said Mine, the companie passed to the other side of the French Baye, and went towards the bottome of the same: Then turning backe came to the riuer of Saint Iohn, so called (as I thinke) because they arriued thither the foure & twentieth of Iune, which is *S. Iohn Baptists* day. There is a faire Port, but the entrie or mouth is dangerous to them that know not the best waies, because that before the comming in there is a long banke of rockes, which are not seene nor discouered, but onely at low water, which doe serue as for defence to this Port, within which, when one hath gone about a league, there is found a violent fall of the said riuer, which falleth downe from the rockes, when that the sea doth ebbe, with a maruellous noise: for being sometimes at an  
anker

ker at sea, we haue heard it from about twelue leagues off. But at full sea one may passe it with great ships. This riuer is one of the fairest that may be seene, hauing store of Islands, and swarming with fishes. This last yeere 1608. the said *Monsieur de Champdorè*, with one of the said *Monsieur De Monts* his men, hath beene some 50 leagues vp the said riuer : and do witnesse that there is great quantitie of Vines along the shore, but the grapes are not so bigge as they bee in the country of the Armouchiquois : There are also Onions, & many other sorts of good hearbs. As for the trees they are the fayrest that may be seene. When we were there we saw great number of Cedar trees. Concerning fishes the said *Champdorè* hath related vnto vs, that putting the kettle ouer the fire, they had taken fish sufficient for their diner before that the water was hot. Morcouer this riuer, stretching it selfe farre within the lands of the Sauages doth maruellously shorten the long trauels by meanes thereof. For in six daies they goe to *Gash:pè* comming to the bay or gulfe of *Chaleur*, or heate, when they are at the end of it, in carying their Canowes some few leagues. And by the same riuer in eight daies they goe to *Tadoussac* by a branch of the same which cometh from the North-West. In such sort that in Port Royall one may haue within 15. or 18. daies newes from the Frenchmen dwelling in the great riuer of *Canada*, by these waies : which could not be done in one moneth by sea, nor without danger.

Leauing Saint Iohns riuer, they came following the coast 20. leagues from that place, to a great riuer (which is properlie sea) where they fortified themselues in a little Island seated in the middest of this riuer, which the said *Champlein* had beene to discouer and view. And seeing it strong by nature, and of easie defence and keeping, besides that the season began to slide away, and therefore it was behouefull to prouide of lodging, without running any farther, they resolued to make their abode there. I will

1608.

Vines.

Great grapes among the Armouchiquois. Abundance of fishes. The Commodity of voyaging by the riuer.

The Ile of S. Croix, 20. leagues from S. Iohns riuer.

C

not

He that will  
possesse a  
land ought to  
place himselfe  
in the maine  
or firme land.

not sit out curiously the reasons of all parts vpon the resolution of this their dwelling; but I will alwaies be of opinion, that whosoever goes into a countrie to possesse it, must not stay in the Iles, there to be a prisoner. For, before all things, the culter and tillage of the ground must be regarded. And I would faine know how one shall till and manure it, if it behoueth at euery houre in the morning, at noone and the euening, to crosse a great passage of water, to goe for things requisite from the firme land. And if one feareth the enemy, how shall he that husbandeth the land, or otherwise busie in necessarie affaires, saue himselfe if he be pursued? for one findeth not alwaies a boat in hand, in time of neede, nor two men to conduct it. Besides, our life requiring many commodities, an Iland is not fit for to begin the establishment and seat of a Colony, vnlesse there be Currents and streames of sweet water for to drinke, and to supplie other necessaries in household, which is not in small Ilands. There needeth wood for fuell, which also is not there. But about all, there must be shelters from the hurtfull winds and colde: which is hardly found in a small continent, inuironed with water of all sides. Neuertheless the Companie sojourned there in the midst of a broad riuer, where the North wind and North-West bloweth as will. And because, that two leagues higher there be brooks that come crosse-wise to fall within this large branch of sea, the Ile of the Frenchmens retreat was called *Saint Croix*, 25. leagues distant from *Port Royal*. Whilest that they begin to cut downe Cedars and other trees of the said Ile to make necessary buildings, let vs returne to seeke out Master *Nicolas Aubri*, lost in the woods, which long time since is holden for dead.

As they began to visit and search the Iland, *Monsieur de Champdoré* (of whom we shal henceforth make mentiō, by reason he dwelt foure yeeres in those parts, conducting the voyages made there) was sent backe to the Bay of *Saint Mary*, with a Mine-finder, that had beene caried thither

thith  
did.  
into  
pass  
Iland  
goin  
with  
help  
heer

F  
whic  
hear  
migl  
ed at  
kerch  
migh  
ly it  
ioy a  
himf  
and h  
foun  
thes  
wha  
not f  
And  
of G  
we v  
bri  
may  
him  
the  
one  
cial  
any

thither for to get some Mines of siluer & Iron, which they did. And as they had crossed the French Baie, they entred into the said Baie of Saint *Marie*, by a narrow strait or passage, which is betweene the land of *Port Royal*, and an Island called the *Long Ile*: where after some abode they going afishing, the said *Aubri* perceaued them, and began with a feeble voice to call as loud as he could; and for to helpe his voice he aduised himselfe to doe as *Ariadne* did heere tofore to *Theseus*,

*Candidaque imposui longa velamina virga,  
Scilicet oblitos admonitur a mei.*

For he put his handkercher, and his hat on a staues end, which made him better to be knowen. For as one of them heard the voice, and asked the rest of the companie, if it might be the said *Monsieur Aubri*, they mocked & laughed at it. But after they had spied the mouing of the handkercher and of the hat, then they began to thinke that it might be hee. And comming neere, they knew perfectly it was himselfe, and tooke him in their Barke with great ioy and contentment the sixteenth day after he had lost himselfe. Diuers in this later age haue stuffed their books and histories with many miracles, wherein is not to bee found so great cause of admiration as in this. For during these sixteen daies hee fedde himselfe but by (I know not what) small fruits, like vnto *Cheries*, without kernel, (yet not so delicate) which are scarsly found in those woods. And indeed in these last voyages a speciall grace and fauor of God hath bene euident in many occurrences, which we will marke as occasion shall be offered. The poore *Aubri* (I call him so by reason of his affliction) was, as one may easily thinke, maruellously weakened. They gaue him food by measure, and brought him backe againe to the companie at the Island of Saint *Croix*, wherof euerie one receaued an incredible ioy and consolation, and especially *Monsieur De Monts*, whom it concerned more than any other. Doe not alleage vnto me the Histories of the

Returne to the Baie of Saint *Marie*, where the lost man was found again. The long Ile.

*Cheries.*

Plin. lib. 7.  
Cap. 2.

John Wier in  
the treatise De  
ieiunio com-  
ment.

Maide of *Consolans*, in the Countrie of *Poitou*: which was two yeares without eating, some six yeares agoe, nor of an other neere *Berne* in *Swisser-land*, which lost (not yet full ten yeares ago) the desire and appetite of eating, during all her life time, and other like examples: for they bee accidents hapned by the disordering of nature. And concerning that which *Pliny* reciteth, that in the remotest parts of the Indies, in the inferiour parts of the fountaine and spring of the riuer *Ganges*, there is a nation of *Astoms*, that is to say, Mouthlesse people, that liue but with the onely odour and exhalation of certaine rootes, flowers and fruits which they assume through their noses: I would hardly beleue it, but would thinke rather that in smelling they might bite very well of the said rootes and fruits: As also those that *James Quartier* mentioneth to haue no mouths, and to eat nothing, by the report of the Sauage *Donnacona*, whom he brought into France to make recitall thereof to the King, with other things as voide of common sense and credit as that. But imagine it were true, such people haue their nature disposed to this maner of liuing, and this case is not alike. For the said *Aubri* wanted no stomacke nor appetite, and hath liued sixteene daies, partlie nourished by some nutritiue force, which is in the aire of that countrie, and partly by those small fruits before spoken: God hauing giuen him strength to endure this long want of food, preserving him from the step of death. Which I finde strange, and is so indeed. But in the Histories of our time there be found things of greater maruell. Among other things of one *Henry de Hasseld*, merchant trafficking from the Low Countries to *Berg* in *Norwege*: who hauing heard a belly-god Preacher speaking ill of the miraculous fasts, as though it were not in Gods power to doe that which he hath done in times past, prouoked by it, did as say to fast, and abstained himselfe three daies from eating: At the end whereof, being pinched with hunger, tooke a morsell of bread, meaning to swallow it downe  
with

with a glasse of Beere: but all that sticke so in his throate, that he remained forty daies and forty nights without either eating or drinking. That time being ended, he vomited out by the mouth that which he had eaten and drunke, which all that while remained in his throat. So long an abstinence weakned him in such sort, that it was needfull to sustaine and restore him with milke. The Governour of the countrey hauing vnderstood this woonder, called him before him, and inquired of the truth of the matter: whereof being incredulous, would make new triall of it, and hauing made him carefully to bee kept in a chamber, found the thing to be true. This man is praised for great pietie, specially towards the poore. Sometime after being come for his priuate affaires to *Bruxelles* in *Brabant*, a Creditor of his, to bereaue him of his due, accused him of heresie, and so caused him to be burned in the yeere 1545.

And since one of the Chanons of the citie of *Liege*, making triall of his strength in fasting, hauing continued the same euen to the seuenteenth day, felt himself so weakned, that vnlesse he had beene suddenly succoured by a good restoratiue, he had quite perished.

A yongue Maid of *Buchold*, in the territorie of *Munster* in *Westphalia*, afflicted with grieffe of minde, and vnwilling to stirre or goe abroad from home, was beaten by her mother for the same, which redoubled her dolour, in such sort, that hauing lost her naturall rest, was foure moneths without either drinking or eating, sauing that sometimes she did chaw some roasted apple, and washed her mouth with a little *Prisane*.

The Ecclesiasticall Histories, among a great number of fasters, make mention of three holy Hermites, all named *Simeon*, which did liue in strange austeritie and long fasts, as of eight daies, and fifteene daies continuance, yea longer, not hauing for all their dwelling but a Columne or Hermitage where they dwelt and ledde their liues: by reason whereof they were named *Stelites*, that is to saie,

*Ibidem.*

*Ibidem.*

*Euagrius lib. 1. of the Ecclesiasticall historie. cap. 3. Baronius vpon the Martyrol Rom. 9. Ianv.*



*Columnaries*, as dwelling in Columnes.

But all these before alleaged, had partly resolved themselves to such fasts, and partly had by little and little accustomed themselves to it, so that it was not very strange for them to fast so long: which was not in him of whom we speake. And therefore his fast is the more to be admired, by so much as that he had not in any wise disposed himselfe thereto, and had not vsed these long austerities.

After he had bene cherished, and they sojourned yet sometime, to order the businesse, and to view the lands round about the Ile Saint *Croix*, motion was made to send backe the shippes into France before Winter, and so they that went not thither to Winter, prepared themselves for the returne. The meane while the Sauages from about all their confines came to see the maners of the Frenchmen: & lodged themselves willingly neere them: also in certaine variances hapned amongst themselves, they did make *Monsieur De Monts* Iudge of their debates; which is a beginning of voluntarie subiection, from whence a hope may be conceaued, that these people wil soone conforme themselves to our maner of liuing.

Amongst other things hapned before the departing of the said ships, it chanced one day, that a Sauage called *Bituani*, finding good relish in the kitchin of the said *Monsieur De Monts*, setled himselfe therein, doing there some seruice: And yet did make loue to a Maide, by way of marriage; the which not being able to haue with the good liking and consent of her father, he rauished her and tooke her to wife. Thereupon a great quarrell ensueth. And in the end the Maid was taken away from him, and returned to her fathers. A very great debate was like to follow, were it not that *Bituani* complaining to the said *Monsieur De Monts* for this iniury, the others came to defend their cause saying, (to wit, the father assisted with his friends) that he would not giue his daughter to a man, vnlesse he had some meanes by his industrie to nourish and maintaine both her

and

The Sauage  
subiuit  
themselues to  
the censure  
of *Monsieur  
De Monts* in  
in their vari-  
ances.

The fathers  
authoritie in  
marriage.

The  
cause the  
of Sauages-  
pleaded be-  
fore *Monsieur  
De Monts*.

and  
for  
loit  
not  
not  
that  
uing  
not  
shou  
But  
him  
*Mon*  
eth  
rede  
thed  
*Mat*  
Fren  
for th  
swor  
to th  
stand  
be m  
By  
in m  
ple, g  
fathe  
whic  
Chur  
ages,  
pised  
uenti  
was e  
lawes  
lie au  
ges an  
ent g

and the children that should proceed of the mariage : As for him he saw not any thing that he could doe : That he loitered about the kitchin of the said *Monsieur de Monts*, not exercising himselfe ahunting. Finallie, that he should not haue the maide, and ought to content himselfe with that which was passed. The said *Monsieur De Monts* hauing heard both parties, told them, that he detained him not, and that the said *Bituani* was a diligent fellow and should goe ahunting to make prooffe of what he could do. But yet for all that they did not restore the maide vnto him, vntill he had shewed effectually that which the said *Monsieur De Monts* had promised of him. Finally, he goeth afishing, taketh great store of Salmons, the maide is redeliuered him, and the next day following he came, clothed with a faire new gowne of Beuers well set on with *Matachias*, to the fort which was then a building for the Frenchmen, bringing his wife with him, as triumphing for the victory, hauing gotten her, as it were by dint of sword : whom he hath euer since loued dearely, contrarie to the custome of the other Sauages : giuing vs to vnderstand, that the thing which is gotten with paine, ought to be much cherished.

Store of Salmons.  
Beuers.  
*Matachias* be laces, beades, bracelets, or such trinkets

By this action we see the two most considerable points in matter of mariage to bee obserued among these people, guided onely by the law of nature : That is to say, the fatherly authority, and the husbands industrie : A thing which I haue much admired, seeing, that in our Christian Church, by I know not what abuse, men haue liued many ages, during which the fatherly authority hath bene dispised and set at naught, vntill that the Ecclesiasticall conuentions haue opened their eyes, and knowen that the same was euen against nature it selfe : And that our Kings by lawes and Edicts haue reestablished in his force this fatherly authority : which notwithstanding in spirituall marriages and vowes of religion hath not yet recovered his ancient glorie : And hath (in this respect) his proppre but vpon

on

them-  
tle ac-  
trange  
whom  
admi-  
sposed  
rities.  
ned yet  
e lands  
to send  
so they  
lues for  
out all  
chmen :  
certaine  
d make  
is a be-  
pe may  
e them-

rting of  
lled Bi-  
d Mon-  
re some  
way of  
he good  
d tooke  
And in  
eturned  
w, were  
sieur De  
eir cause  
that he  
ad some  
oth her  
and

on the Courts of Parlements orders, the which oftentimes haue constrained the detainers of Children, to restore them to their parents.

C H A P. V.

*The description of the Iland of Saint Croix : The enterprife of Monsieur De Monts difficult and generous, yet persecuted through enuie : The returne of Monsieur De Poutrincourt into France : the perils of the voiage.*

The description of the Ile of Saint Croix.

The fruitfulness of the Soile.

The Iland halfe a league in compasse.

**B**Efore we speake of the Ships returne into France, it is meete to tell you how hard the Ile of *Saint Croix* is to be found out, to them that were neuer there. For there are so many Iles and great Baies to goe by, before one be at it, that I wonder how euer one might pierce so far for to finde it. There are three or foure mountains, imminent aboue the others, on the sides : But on the North side, from whence the riuer runneth downe, there is but a sharpe pointed one, aboue two leagues distant. The woods of the maine land are faire and admirable high and well growen, as in like maner is the grasse. There is right ouer against the Iland fresh water brookes, very pleasant and agreeable, where diuers of *Monsieur De Monts* his men did their businesse, and builded there certaine Cabanes. As for the nature of the ground it is most excellent and most abundantly fruitfull. For the said *Monsieur De Monts* hauing caused there some peece of ground to be tilled, and the same sowed with Ric (for I haue seene there no wheat) hee was not able to tarry for the maturitie thereof to reape it : and notwithstanding, the graine, fallen, hath growen and increased so wonderfully that two yeeres after wee reaped and did gather of it as faire, bigge and waightie, as any in France, which the soile had brought forth without any tillage : and yet at this present it doth continue still to multiply every yeere. The said Iland containeth some halfe a league

league  
a Mou  
from t  
placed  
fashio  
of mu  
water  
Mont  
and le  
for th  
the tir  
hauing

The  
of Ma  
a good  
a bur  
one is  
and pu  
know  
manu  
action  
more  
fortun  
ny the  
shipes  
place,  
he is p  
who n  
two e  
Behol  
reduc  
had al  
(exce  
he tha  
his ho  
giue e

league of circuit, and at the end of it on the sea side, there is a Mount or small hill, which is (as it were) a little Ile severed from the other, where *Monsieur de Monts* his Canon was placed: There is also a little Chapell built after the sauage fashion. At the foot of which Chapell there is such store of mussells as is wonderfull, which may be gathered at low water, but they are small: I belecue that *Monsieur De Monts* people did not forget to chuse and take the biggest, and left there but the small ones to grow and increate. As for the exercise and occupation of our Frenchmen, during the time of their abode there, we will mention it briefly, hauing first conducted backe our ships into France.

Store of Mus.  
sels.

The Sea and maritime charges in such enterprises as that of *Monsieur De Monts*, be so great, that he who hath not a good stocke and foundation shall easilie sinke vnder such a burthen, and for to supplie, in some sort, those expences, one is forced to suffer and beare infinite discommodities, and put himselfe in danger to bee discredited among vnknown people, and which is worse, in a land which is vnmanured, and all ouer growen with forests. Wherein this action is the more generous, by so much as the perill is more euidently dangerous; and notwithstanding all this, fortune is not left vnattempted, and to treade downe so many thornes that stop the way. *Monsieur De Monts* his shipes returning into France, he remaineth in a desolate place, with one barke and one boate onely. And though he is promised to be sent for home at the end of the yeere, who may assure himselfe of *Aeolus* and *Neptunes* fidelitie, two euill, furious, vnconstant and vnmercifull Masters? Behold the estate whereunto the said *Monsieur De Monts* reduced himselfe, hauing had no helpe of the King, as haue had al those voiajes that haue beene heeretofore described (except the late Lord *Marquis de la Roche*) and yet it is he that hath done more than all the rest, not hauing yet lost his hold. But in the end-I feare he shall be constrained to giue ouer and forsake all, to the great shame and reproch

Enuy vpon  
the priuiledge  
granted to  
*Monsieur De  
Monts* vpon  
Beuers.

of the French name, which by this meanes is made ridiculous and a by word to other nations. For (as though one would of set purpose oppose himselfe to the conuersion of these poore Westerly people, and to the setting forward of the glorie of God and the Kings) there be men start vp, full of *Anarice* and *Enuie*: men which would not giue a stroke, or draw their swords for the Kings seruice (as *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* shewed one daie to his Maiesty) men which would not indure the least labour in the world for the honour of God, which doe hinder that any profite be drawn from the very prouince it selfe, to furnish to that which is necessarie to the establishment of such a worke, hauing rather that Englishmen and Hollanders reape the profit thereof than Frenchmen, and seeking to make the name of God vnknown in those parts of the world. And such men, which haue no feare of God (for if they had any they would be zealous of his name) are heard, are beleueed, and carry things away at their pleasure.

Now let vs prepare and hoise vp sailes. *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* made the voyage into these parts with some men of good sort, not to winter there, but as it were to seeke out his seat, and finde out a land that might like him. Which he hauing done, had no neede to toirne there any longer. So then the Ships being readie for the returne, he shipped himselfe, and those of his company, in one of them. The meane while the same was from all sides in these parts, of the wonders made in Ostend, then besieged by their Highnesse of Flanders, alreadie three yeares passed. The voyage was not without stormes and great perils: for amongst others, I will recite two or three which might be placed among miracles, were it not that the Sea-accidents are frequent enough, not that I will, for all that, darken the speciall fauour that God hath alwaies shewed in these voyages.

The first is of a gust of winde, which in the midst of their

The returne  
of *Monsieur  
De Poutrin-  
court* into  
France.

The first  
perill.

their n  
sailes, w  
the shi  
on the  
withou  
rackles.  
themsel  
flames,  
*Goudra*  
there w  
saile.  
uerturn  
of wate  
Briefely  
belly fu  
came, w  
vnproff  
faued a  
beene c  
But Go  
uen to c  
erfull m  
rise aga  
that sh  
with a f  
ouertur  
beneat  
The  
of a Ca  
is no d  
same,  
the sh  
and fai  
ble we  
not, a  
courte

their navigation came by night instantlie to strike in the sailes, with such a violent boistroufnesse that it ouerturned the ship in such maner, that of the one part the keele was on the face of the water, and the saile swimming vpon it, without any meanes or time to right it, or to loose the tackles. On the sudden the sea is all afire, and the Mariners themselues, all wet, did seeme to bee all compassed with flames, so furious was the Sea (the Sailers call this fire *Saint Goudrans* fire) and by ill fortune, in this sudden surprize, there was not a knife to be found for to cut the cables or the saile. The poore ship, during this casualtie, remained ouerturned, caried continually, one while vpon Mountaines of waters, then another while suncken downe euen to hell. Briefely, euery one did prepare to drinke, more than his belly full, to all his friends, when a new blast of winde came, which rent the saile in a thousand peeces, euer after vnprofitable to any vse. Happy saile! hauing by his ruine saued all this people; for if it had beene a new one they had beene cast away, and neuer newes had beene heard of them. But God doth often trie his people, and bringeth them euen to deaths doore, to the end they may know his powerfull might, and feare him. So the ship began to stur and rise againe by little and little: And well was it for them that she was deepe keeled, for if it had beene a siboate with a flat bottome and broade belly; it had beene quite ouerturned vpside downe, but the ballast, which remained beneath, did helpe to stirre her vpright.

The second was at *Casquet* (an Ile or rocke in the forme of a Caske, betweene France and England, on which there is no dwelling) being come within three leagues of the same, there was some ielousie betweene the Masters of the ship (an euill which oftentimes destroyeth both men and faire enterprises) the one saying that they might double well enough the said *Casket*, an other that they could not, and that it behooued to cast a little from the right course for to passe vnder the Iland. In this case the worst

The second  
danger.

Necessitie  
maketh vs  
secke to God.  
The diuillish-  
nesse of re-  
uengefull de-  
sire.

The third  
darger.

Their return  
at New ha-  
uen.

was that one knew not the houre of the day, because it was darke by reason of mistes, and by consequent they knew not if it did ebbe or flow. For if it had beene floud they had easily doubled it: but it chanced that it was turning water, and by that meanes the ebbe did hinder it. So that approching the said rocke they saw no hope to saue themselves, and that necessarily they must go strike against it. Then euery one began to pray to God, to craue pardon one of another, and (for their last comfort) to bewaile one another. Heereupon Captaine *Rossignol* (whose Ship was taken in New France, as we haue said before) drew out a great knife, to kill therewith Captaine *Timothie*, Gouvernor of this present voyage, saying to him, Doe st thou not content thy selfe to haue vndone me, but wilt thou needs yet cast me heere away? but he was held and kept from doing of that he was about to doe. And in very truth it was in him great folly, yea rather madnesse, to goe about to kill a man that was going to die, and he (that went to giue the blow) in the same perill. In the end as they went to strike vpon the rocke *Monsieur De Pourtrincourt*, who had alreadie yeelded his soule and recommended his family to God, asked of him that was at the top if there were any hope; who told him there was none: Then he bad some to helpe him to change the sailes, which two or three onely did, and already was there no more water but to turne the Ship, when the mercy and fauor of God came to helpe them, & turned the ship from the perils wherein they saw themselves. Some had put off their doublets for to seeke to saue themselves by climbing vpon the rocke, but the feare was all the harme they had for that time: sauing that some few houres after, being arriued neere to a rocke called *Le nid a L'aigle*, the Eagles nest, they thought to goe bord it, thinking, in the darknesse of the mist, it had been a Ship, from whence being againe escaped they arriued at New hauen, the place from whence they first set out. The said *Monsieur De Pourtrincourt* hauing left his armour and provisions

uision  
the sai  
good

But  
ger, fr  
ter the  
dent,  
fellow  
tome  
bottle  
to drin  
water  
had in  
being  
which

The b  
commo  
causes  
aire

D  
place  
confic  
But th  
wards  
that w  
ded to  
Fort v  
small

visions of war in the Ile of *Saint Croix*, in the keeping of the said *Monsieur De Monts*, as a gage and token of the good will he had to returne thither.

But I may yet well set downe heere a marvellous danger, from which the same vessell was preserued, a little after the departing from *Saint Croix*, and this by a bad accident, which God turned to good. For a certaine tipling fellow, being by night stealingly come downe to the botome of the ship, for to drinke his belly full, and to fill his bottle with wine, hee found that there was but too much to drinke, and that the said ship was alreadie halfe full of water: in such sort, that the perill was imminent, and they had infinite paines to stanch her by pumping. In the end being come about they found a great leake, by the keele, which they stopped with all diligence.

The fourth perill.

CHAP. VI.

*The buildings of the Ile Saint Croix: The French-mens discomforts in the said place: Vnknownen Sicknesse: of their causes: of the people that be subiect to it: of diets, bad waters, aire, windes, lakes, corruption of woods, seasons, disposition of bodies, of yongue, and old: the Authors aduise vpon the gouernment of health, and cure of the said diseases.*

**D**Vring the foresaid Navigation, *Monsieur De Monts* his people did worke about the Fort; which hee seated at the end of the Iland, opposite to the place where he had lodged his Canon. Which was wisely considered, to the end to command the riuer vp & down. But there was an inconuenience, the said Fort did lie towards the North, and without any shelter, but of the trees that were on the Ile shore, which all about hee commanded to be kept, and not cut downe. And out of the same Fort was the Switzers lodging, great and large, and other small lodgings, representing (as it were) a Suburbe. Some

The building at the Ile of *S. Croix.*



had housed themselves on the firme land, neere the brook. But within the Fort was *Monsieur De Monts* his lodging, made with very faire & artificiall Carpentrie worke, with the Banner of France vpon the same. At another part was the store-house, wherein consisted the safety & life of euerie one, likewise made with faire Carpentry worke, and couered with reedes. Right ouer against the said store-house, were the lodgings and houses of these Gentlemen, *Monsieur D'oruille*, *Monsieur Champlain*, *Monsieur Champdorè*, and other men of reckoning. Opposite to *Monsieur De Monts* his said lodging, there was a gallerie couered for to exercise themselves, either in play, or for the workmen in time of raine. And betweene the said Fort and the Platforme, where lay the Canon, all was full of gardens, wherunto euerie one exercised himselfe willingly. All Autumne quarter was passed on these works, and it was well for them to haue lodged themselves, and to manure the ground of the Iland, before Winter; whilst that in these parts pamphlets were set out vnder the name of *Maistre Guillaume*, stuffed with all sorts of newes: By the which, amongst other things, this *Prognosticator* did say, that *Monsieur De Monts* did pull out thornes in *Canada*: and all well considered, it may well be termed the pulling out of thornes, to take in hand such enterprises, full of toiles and continuall perils, with cares, vexations, and discomforties. But vertue and courage that ouercomeneth all these things, makes those thornes to be but Gilliflowers and Roses, to them that resolute themselves in these heroi-call actions, to make themselves praise-worthy and famous in the memorie of men, despising the vaine pleasures of delicate and effeminated men, good for nothing but to coffer themselves in a chamber.

Three discō-  
modities in  
wintering at  
*S. Croix*.

The most vrgent things being done, and hoarie snowie father being come, that is to say, Winter, then they were forced to keepe within doores, and to liue euerie one at his owne home: during which time, our men had three speciall

ciall  
(fort  
lacke  
night  
lodg  
other  
Christ  
more  
speak  
had n  
or wo  
which  
It was  
needfi  
get th  
snowe  
Sider  
sure w  
stribu  
fluggi  
take th  
sickne  
tier, in  
none t  
tures  
want  
their s  
by rea  
grew  
one th  
space  
led *A*  
ges of  
full to  
rie, an  
life, v

ciall discommodities in this Iland, *videlicet*, want of wood, (for that which was in the said Ile, was spent in buildings) lacke of fresh water, and the continuall watch, made by night, fearing some surprise from the Sauvages, that had lodged themselues at the foot of the said Iland, or some other enemy. For the malediction and rage of many Christians is such, that one must take heed of them much more than of Infidels. A thing which grieueth me to speak: would to God I were a liar in this respect, and that I had no cause to speake it! When they had need of water or wood, they were constrained to crosse ouer the riuer, which is thrice as broad of euery side, as the riuer of *Seine*. It was a thing painfull and tedious, in such sort that it was needfull to keepe the boat a whole day, before one might get those necessaries. In the meane while the cold and snowes came vpon them, and the Ice so strong, that the Sider was frozen in the vessels, and euery one his measure was giuen him out by waight. As for wine it was distributed but at certaine daies of the weeke. Many idle sluggish companions dranke snow-water, not willing to take the paines to crosse the riuer. Briefly, the vnknown sicknesses like to those described vnto vs by *James Quartier*, in his relation, assailed vs. For remedies there was none to be found. In the meane while the poore sicke creatures did languish, pining away by little and little, for want of sweet meats, as milke or spoon-meat for to sustain their stomacks, which could not receaue the hard meats, by reason of let, proceeding from a rotten flesh, which grew and ouer-abounded within their mouths: And when one thought to root it out, it did grow againe in one nights space more abundantly than before. As for the tree called *Annedda*, mentioned by the said *Quartier*, the Sauvages of these lands know it not. So that it was most pittifull to behold euery one, very few excepted, in this miserie, and the miserable sicke folkes to die, as it were full of life, without any possibilitie to be succoured. There died

Wickednesse  
of manie  
Christians.

The riuer of  
Roan.

Vnknown  
Sicknesses.

of

The number  
of the dead  
and sicke.  
Dangerous  
moneths.

of this sicknesse 36, and 36 or 40 more, that were stricken with it, recovered themselves by the helpe of the Spring, as soone as the comfortable season appeared. But the deadly season for that sicknesse is in the end of Ianuarie, the moneths of February and March, wherein most commonly the sicke doe die, euery one at his turne, according to the time they haue begun to be sicke: in such sort, that hee which began to bee ill in Februarie and March, may escape, but hee that shall ouer-haste himselfe, and betake him to his bed in December and Ianuarie, hee is in danger to die in Februarie, March, or the beginning of Aprill, which time being passed, he is in good hope, and as it were assured of his safetic. Notwithstanding some haue felt some touch thereof, hauing bene sharply handled with it.

*Monsieur De monts* being returned into France, did consult with our Doctors of Physicke vpon the sicknesse, which (in my opinion) they found very new & vnknown, for I doe not see, that when we went away, our Pothecarie was charged with any order for the cure thereof: and notwithstanding it seemeth that *Hippocrates* hath had knowledge of it, or at least of some that was very like to it. For in the Booke *De internis affect.* he speaketh of a certaine maladie, where the belly, and afterward the spleene doe swell and harden it selfe, and feele grieuous and sharpe gripes; the skinne becommeth blacke and pale, drawing towards the colour of a greene Pomgranet: the eares and gums doe render and yeeld a bad sent, the said gums disioining themselves from the teeth: the legs full of blisters: the limbes are weakned, &c.

But specially the Northerly people, are more subiect to it than other more Southerly nations. Witnesse the Hollanders, Frizeland men, and other thereabout, amongst whom the said Hollanders doe write in their nauigations, that going to the East Indies, many of them were taken with the same disease, being vpon the coast of Guinie: a dangerous

*Hippocrates.*

Northerly  
people sub-  
iect to the  
land disease  
of New  
France.

danger  
leagu  
lande  
of Sp  
Spani  
selues  
sea tw  
the w  
ly; Na  
ken to  
other  
them  
Eteth  
a cert  
is betw  
they sin  
ger; a  
white  
with a  
the un  
peradu  
der the  
salt me  
walles.  
are inn  
must be  
pellerh  
drunke  
other  
(saith  
the Sou  
prouisi  
and am  
and m  
feare t  
somest

dangerous coast, bearing a pestiferous aire a hundred leagues farre in the sea. And the same ( I meane the Hollanders) being, in the yeere 1606, gone vpon the coast of Spaine, to keepe the same coast, and to annoy the Spanish Nauie, were constrained to with-draw themselves, by reason of this disease, hauing cast into the sea two and twentie of their dead. And if one will heare the witnesse of *Olaus magnus*, writing of the Northernly Nations, of which part himselfe was, let him hearken to his report, which is this: *There is (saith he) yet another martiall sicknesse (that is, a sicknesse that afflicteth them which follow the warres) which tormenteth and afflicteth them that are besieged, such whose limbes thicken by a certaine fleshy heaunnesse, and by a corrupted bloud, which is betweene the flesh and the skinne, dilating it selfe like wax: they sink with the least impression made on them with the finger; and looseth the teeth as ready to fall out: changeth the white colour of the skinne into blew: and causeth a benumbing, with a distaste to take Physicke, and that disease is called in the vulgar tongue of the countrey Sorbut, in Greeke ραχζία, peradventure because of this putrifying softnesse, which is vnder the skinne, which seemeth to proceede of indigesting and salt meats, and to be continued by the cold exhalation of the walles. But it shall not haue so much force where the houses are inward wainscotted with boords. If it continue longer, it must be drinen out by taking euery day wormwood, as one expelleth out the roote of the stone, by a decoction of stale Beere drunke with butter. The same Author doth yet say in another place, a thing much to be noted: In the beginning (saith he) they sustaine the siege with force, but in the end, the Souldier being by continuance weakned, they take away the provisions from the inuaders, by artificiall meanes, subtilties and ambushments, specially the sheepe, which they carry away, and make them to graze in grassie places of their houses, for feare that through want of fresh meats they fall into the lothsomest sicknesse of all sicknesses, called in the country language,*

E

*Sorbut,*

*Olaus magnus,  
Lib.16.cap.51.*

Euill disposition of the body corrupteth the meates.

A medicine for the stone.

It is in the 9. booke, ca. 38.

This is to be noted.

Sorbut, or  
Scorbut.

*Sorbut*, that is to say, a wounded stomacke, dried by cruell torments, and long anguishes: for the cold and indigesting meats, greedily taken, seeme to be the true cause of this sickness.

The opening  
of a dead bo-  
die.

I haue delighted my selfe to recite heere the very words of this Author, because he speaketh thereof as being skilfull, and setteth foorth sufficiently enough the land disease of New France, sauing that he maketh no mention of the stiffening of the hammes, nor of a superfluous flesh which groweth and aboundeth within the mouth, and that if one thinke to take it away, it increaseth still; but well speaketh he of the bad stomacke. For *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* made a Negroe to be opened, that died of that sickness in our voyage, who was found to haue the inward parts very sound, except the stomacke, that had wrinkles, as though they were vlcered.

Causes of the  
said disease.

And as for the cause proceeding from salt meats, it is verie true, there are many other causes concurring, which feed and entertaine this sickness: Amongst which I will place in generall the bad food, comprehending with it the drinks; then the vice of the aire of the countrey, and after the euill disposition of the bodie: leauing the Physicians to list it out more curiously. Whereunto *Hippocrates* saith, that the Physician ought also carefully to take heed, in considering the seasons, the windes, the aspects of the Sunne, the waters, the land it selfe, the nature and situation of it, the nature of men, their maner of liuing and exercise.

In the begin-  
ning of the  
book *De aere*,  
*aquâ*, & *loc*.

What foode  
causerh the  
land disease.

As for the food, this sickness is caused by cold meats, without iuice, grosse and corrupted. One must then take heed of salt meats, smokie, mustie, raw, and of an euill sent, likewise of dried fishes, as New-found land fish, and stinking Raies: Briefly, from all melancholy meats, which are of hard digesting, are easily corrupted, and breed a grosse and melancholie bloud. I would not (for all that) be so scrupulous as the Physicians, which do put in the number of grosse and melancholie meats, Beeu-  
flesh,

flesh,  
as wel  
ding v  
the T  
birds,  
in bei  
might  
ger. T  
ned, b  
cheese  
small,  
not w  
hoppe  
wood,  
waters  
is obse  
paulsie  
for the  
besides  
agues,  
shortne  
veines,  
the di  
spleen  
Sor  
which  
they b  
muddi  
spect. S  
Caesar  
ordert  
get stil  
the sea  
was bu  
which  
that d

flesh, Beares, wilde Bores and Hogges flesh (they might as well adde vnto them Beuers flesh, which notwithstanding we haue found very good) as they do amongst fishes the Tons, Dolphins, & all those that carie lard: among the birds, the Hernes, Duckes, and all other water birds: for in being an ouer curious obseruator of these things, one might fall into the danger of staruing, and to die for hunger. They place yet among the meats that are to be shunned, bisket, beanes and pulse, the often vsing of milke, cheese: the grosse and harsh wine, and that which is too small, white wine, and the vse of vineger: Beere which is not well sodden, nor well scummed, and that hath not hoppes enow. Also waters that runne thorow rotten wood, and those of lakes and bogges, still and corrupted waters, such as is much in Holland and Frizeland, where is obserued that they of Amsterdam are more subiect to paulsies and stifning of sinewes, than they of Roterdam, for the abouesaid cause of still and sleepe waters: which besides doe ingender dropies, dysenteries, fluxes, quarten agues, and burning feuers, swellings, vlcers of the lights, shortnesse of breath, ruptures in children, swelling in the veines, sores in the legges: finally, they wholly belong to the disease whereof we speake, being drawn by the spleene, where they leaue all their corruption.

Bad waters.

Sometimes this sicknesse doth also come by a vice, which is euen in waters of running fountaines, as if they be among, or neere bogges, or if they issue from a muddie ground, or from a place that hath not the Suns aspect. So *Pliny* reciteth that in the voiage which the prince *Cesar Germanicus* made into Germany, hauing giuen order to his armie to passe the riuer of Rhine, to the end to get still forward in the countrie, he did set his campe on the sea shore, vpon the coast of Frizeland, in a place where was but one onely fountaine of fresh water to be found, which notwithstanding was so pernicious, that all they that dranke of it lost their teeth in lesse than two yeeres

*Plin. li. 25. c. 5.*

*Stomaccacé.*  
*Scelotyrbé.*

*Britannica,*  
an herbe.

*Strabo.*  
*Monsieur de*  
*Joinville.*  
The *Gouieres*  
of Sauoye.

What aire  
is against  
health.

Windes.

space, and had their knees so weake and disjointed, that they could not beare themselves. Which is verily the sicknesse whereof we speake, which the Physicians doe call *Stomaccacé*, that is to say, mouthes sore, and *Scelotyrbé*, which is as much to say, as the shaking of thighs and legs. And it was not possible to finde any remedie, but by the meanes of an hearbe called *Britannica*, or *Scurvie-grasse*, which besides is very good for the sinewes, against the sores and accidents in the mouth: against the Squinancie, and against the biting of serpents. It hath long leaues, drawing in colour to a dark greene, and produceth a black roote, from which liquor is drawen, as well as from the leaf. *Strabo* saith, that the like case hapned to the army that *Ælius Gallus* brought into Arabia, by the commission of *Augustus* the Emperour. And the like also chanced to king *S. Lewes* his armie in Egypt, as the Lord *de Joinville* reporteth. Other effects of bad waters are scene neere vnto vs, to wit, in Sauoy, where the women (more than men, because they are of a colder constitution) haue commonly swellings in their throats, as bigge as bottels.

Next to waters, the aire is also one of the fathers and ingenderers of this sicknes, in boggy and watrish places, and opposit to the South, which is most often rainy. But there is yet in New France another bad quality of the aire, by reason of flakes that be thicke there, and of the great rottennes in the woods, whose odour the bodies hauing drawen vp, during the raines of Autumne and winter, easily are ingendred the corruptions of the mouth, and swelling in the legges before spoken, and a cold entreth vnsensibly into it, which benummeth the limbes, stiffeneth the sinewes, constraineth to creepe with cruches, and in the end to keepe the bed.

And for as much as the windes doe participate with the aire, yea are an aire running with a more vehement force than ordinary, and in this quality haue great power over the health and sicknesses of men, we will speake some thing

thing  
sequ  
The  
held  
ders  
of the  
nus,  
whic  
wind  
drie  
a gre  
in Pr  
thern  
whic  
the a  
East  
noted  
ouer  
noti  
wind  
the q  
sides  
cordi  
ca. l  
and t  
and n  
500.  
found  
mild  
(acce  
contr  
Spain  
the f  
wind  
mie a  
if the

thing of it, not (for all that) straying ourselues from the sequell of our historie.

The Easterly winde, called by the Latins *Subsolanus*, is held for the healthfullest of all, and for that cause, wise builders giue aduice to set their buildings towards the aspect of the East. The opposit to it, is the winde called *Fauorinus*, or *Zephirus*, which our Sea-men doe name West, which in these parts is milde & fructifying. The Southern winde (called *Auster* by the Latines) is in *Affrica* hot and drie: But in crossing the *Mediterranian* sea, it gathereth a great moistnes, which maketh it stormy and putrifying in *Prouence* and *Languedoc*. The opposite to it is the Northern winde, otherwise called *Boreas*, *Bzie*, *Tramontane*, which is colde and drie, chaseth the cloudes and sweepeth the airie region. It is taken for the holsommest next to the East winde. But these qualities of the winde, found and noted in these parts, make not one generall rule thorow ouer all the earth. For the North-winde beyond the Equinoctiall line is not colde as in these parts, nor the South-winde hot, because that by a long crossing, they borrow the qualities of the regions thorow which they passe: besides that the South-winde at his first issue is cooling, according to the report of those that haue trauelled in *Affrica*. In like maner there be regions in *Perou* (as in *Lima* and the plaines) where the North-winde is vnholosome and noysome. And thorow all that coast, which is aboue 500. leagues in length, they take the South-winde for a found and fresh cooling winde, and which more is, most milde and pleatant: yea also that it doth neuer raïne by it (according to that which *Ioseph Acosta* writeth of it) cleane contrary to that we see in this our part of *Europe*. And in *Spaine* the East-winde, which we haue said to be found, the same *Acosta* saith, that it is noisome and vnfound. The winde called *Circius*, which is the North west, is so stormie and boistrous in the Westerly shores of *Norwege*, that if there be any which vndertaketh any voyage that way,

What windes  
be healthfull  
and vnhealth-  
full.

The windes  
haue not one  
and the sife  
same qualitie  
in all places.

Lib. 3 cap. 3.



*Olaus magnus*  
Lib. 1. Cap. 10.

Sicke folkes  
and beasts  
doe feele the  
winde and  
weather a-  
comming.

Seasons.

when that winde bloweth, he must make account to be lost and cast away: And this winde is so colde in that region, that it suffereth not any tree, small or great to grow there: So that for want of wood they must serue theselues with the bones of great fishes, to seeth or rost their meats, which discommodity is not in these parts. In like sort we haue had experience in New France that the North-winds are not for health: And the North-east (which are the colde, strong, sharpe and stormy *Aquilons*) yet worse: which our sicke folkes, and they that had wintred there the former yeare, did greatly feare, because that likely, some of them drooped away, when that winde blew, for indeed they had some sensible feeling of this winde: As we see those that bee subiect to ruptures endure great pangs when that the South-winde doth blow: And as we see the very beasts to prognosticate by some signes the change of weather. This noisome qualitie of winde proceedeth (in my iudgement) from the nature of the countrie thorow which it passeth, which (as we haue said) is full of lakes, and those very great, which be (as it were) standing and still waters. Whereto I adde the exhalation of the rottenesse of woods, that this winde bringeth, and that in so much greater quantitie, as the North-west part is great, large and spacious.

The seasons are also to be marked in this disease, which I haue not seene nor heard of, that it beginnes to work, neither in the spring time, Summer nor Autumne, vnlesse it be at the end of it, but in Winter. And the cause thereof is, that as the growing heat of the Spring, maketh the humors closed vp in the winter to disperse themselues to the extremities of the body, and so cleareth it from melancholy, and from the noisome humors that haue beene gathered in Winter: so the Autumne, as the Winter approacheth, draweth them inward, and doth nourish this melancholic and blacke humor, which doth abound specially in this season, and the Winter being come sheweth forth his effects

fects  
yelde  
the b  
Sum  
fed, b  
colde  
in the  
there  
sicker  
eth, t  
of the  
fed, c  
out p  
I w  
food  
rupti  
foure  
liue,  
Com  
forto  
The r  
tie as  
comm  
them  
carie  
bread  
sickn  
them  
by na  
taken  
*Can*  
there  
part  
A  
euery  
and l

fects at the costs and griefe of the poore patients. Galen yeldeth a reason for the same; saying that the humors of the bodie, hauing beene parched by the burning of the Summer, that which may rest of it, after the heat is expul- sed, becommeth fourthwith colde and drie: That is to say, colde by the priuation of the heat, and drie in as much as in the drying of these humors, all the moistnesse that was therein hath been consumed. And thereby it commeth that sicknesse are bred in this season, and the farther one go- eth, the weaker nature is, and the vntemperate coldnesse of the aire being entred into a bodie already thereto dispo- sed, doth handle it (as it were) at a becke and at will, with- out pitie.

*Galen. Com. 35. lib. 1. de nat. hum.*

I would adde willingly to all the foresaid causes the bad foode of the sea, which in a long voiage brings much cor- ruption in mans bodie. For one must of necessity, after foure or five daies, liue of salt meate, or to bring sheepe a- liue, and store of poultry; but this is but for Masters and Commanders in ships: and we had none in our voyage but for to reserue and multiplie in the land whither we did go. The mariners then and passengers doe suffer discommodi- tie as well in the bread, as in meat and drinke, the biskit be- commeth dampish and rotten, the fishes that are given them alike, and the waters stincking; they which carie sweet meates, be it flesh or fruits, and that vse good bread, good wine and good brothes, do easily auoide those sicknesse; and I durst (in some sort) be answerable vnto them for their healthes, vnlesse they be very vnhealthfull by nature. And when I consider that this disease is as well taken in Holland, Frizeland, in Spaine and in *Guinie*, as in *Canada*, I am brought to belecue that the chiefe cause thereof is in that which I haue said, and not peculiar nor particular to New France.

Bad foode and discom- modities of the Sea.

After all these causes and considerations, it is good in euery place to haue a wel disposed body, for to be in health and liue long. For those which naturally gather colde and grosse

Disposition of bodie.

grosse humors, and haue the masse of their bodie pory: Item they that be subiect to the oppilations of the spleene, and they that vse not a stirring lite, but sitting and without frequent motion, are more apt and subiect to these sicknesses. Therefore a Physitian might say that a student is not fit for that Countrey, that is to say, he shall not liue there in health: nor those which ouertoile in labors, nor melancholy people, men which haue drowsie dreaming spirits, nor those that be often visited with agues, and such other sort of people. Which I might easily beleue, because that these things doe heape much melancholy, cold and superfluous humors. Notwithstanding I haue tried the contrarie, both by my selfe and by others, against the opinion of some of ours, yea of *Sagamos Memberton* himselfe, which plaicth the Soothsaier among the Sauages, who (arriuing in that countrey) said that I should neuer returne into France, nor *Monsieur Boulet* (sometimes captaine of *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* his regiment) who for the most part of the time hath had agues there (but he did fare wel.) And they themselues did aduise our labourers to take but small labour in their worke (which counsell they could very well obserue). For I may say (and that truely) that I neuer made so much bodily worke, for the pleasure that I did take in dressing and tilling my gardens, to inclose and hedge them, against the gluttony of the hogges, to make knots, to draw out allies, to build harbours, to sowe wheat, rie, barley, oates, beanes, pease, garden hearbs, and to water them; so much desire had I to know the goodnesse of the ground by my owne experience. So that Summers daies were vnto me too short, and very often did I worke by Moonelight. Concerning the labour of the minde, I tooke a reasonable part of it; for at night, every one being retired, among the pratings, noises, and hurliburlies, I was shut vp in my studie, reading or writing of something. Yea I will not be ashamed to speake, that being requested by *Monsieur De Poutrincourt*, our Commander, to bestow some

Sagamos is a  
Sauage word  
which Signi-  
fieth a Lord,  
a ruler, or a  
Captaine.

The author  
his exercise  
in New  
France.

The labour  
of the minde.

some  
Etions  
and fo  
life, I  
therec  
dinari  
And v  
some  
difficu  
worke  
vnto r  
God,  
longer  
in liue  
any e  
other  
spake  
Proph  
ued th  
spake i  
And a  
and a  
and n  
neere  
a Cran  
loosin  
I took  
there  
ages.  
I sh  
dispo  
dren  
thers  
and g  
their  
mour

some houres of my industrie, in giuing Christian instructions to our small company, for not to liuelike beasts, and for to giue to the Sauages an example of our maner of life, I haue done it, according to the necessitie, and being thereof requested, euery Sunday, and sometimes extraordinarie, almost during all the time we haue bene there; And well was it for me that I had brought my Bible, and some bookes vnawares: for otherwise it had bene very difficult for me, and had bene cause to excuse me of that worke. It hath not bene without fruit, many witnessing vnto me that they had neuer heard so much good talke of God, not knowing before, any principle of that which belongeth to Christian doctrine: And such is the state wherein liue the most part of Christendome. And if there were any edifying of one part, there was backbiting on the other, by reason, that vsing a French liberty, I willingly spake the truth. Whereupon I remember the saying of the Prophet *Amos*, *They haue hated (saith he) him that reproued them in the gate, and haue had in abomination him that spake in integrity.* But in the end we became all good friends; And amongst these things God gaue me alwaies a sound and a perfect health, alwaies a good taste, alwaies mery and nimble, sauing that hauing once laien in the woods, neere to a brooke in snowey weather, I was touched with a Crampe or *Sciatica* in my thigh a fortnights space, not loosing my appetite nor stomacke for the same; for indeed I tooke delight in that which I did, desiring to confine there my life, if it would please God to blesse the voyages.

The pietie of  
the Author of  
this Historie.

*Amos. 5.  
verse. 10.*

I should be ouer tedious, if I would set downe heere the disposition of all persons, and to speake concerning children that they are more subiect to this sicknesse then others, for that they haue very often vlcers in the mouth and gummies, because of the thin substance that abound in their bodies: and also that they gather many crude humours by their disorder of liuing, and by the quantity of

Of Children.

Of aged  
folkes.

fruits they eat, being neuer filled with it, by which means they gather great quantity of waterish bloud, and the spleene being stopped cannot soake vp those moisturs. And as for old folkes that haue their heat weakened, and cannot resist the sicknes, being filled with crudities, and with a cold and moist temperature, which is the qualitie proper to stirre vp and nourish it: I will not take the Physicians office in hand, fearing the censuring rod: and notwithstanding (with their leaue) not touching with their orders and receits of *Agaric*, *aloes*, *rubarbe*, and other ingredients, I will write heere that which I thinke more ready at hand for the poore people, which haue not the abilitie and meanes to send to *Alexandria*, as well for the preferuation of their health, as for the remedie of this sicknesse.

Aduice for  
the sicknesse  
of New  
France,

Good Wine.

It is a certaine axiome that a contrary must be healed by his contrarie. This sicknesse proceeding from an indigestion of rude, grosse, cold and melancholie meates, which offend the stomacke, I thinke it good (submitting my selfe to better Iudgement and aduice) to accompany them with good sawces, be it of butter, oyle, or fat, all well spiced, to correct as well the quality of the meate, as of the bodie inwardly waxen colde. Let this be said for rude and grosse meates, as beanes, pease, and fish: for he that shall eat good capons, good partridges, good duckes and good rabers, he may be assured of his health, or else his body is of a very bad constitution. We haue had some sicke that haue (as it were) raised vp from death to life: for hauing eaten twice or thrice of a coolice made of a cocke, good wine taken according to the necessity of nature, is a soueraigne preferuatiue for all sicknesse, and particularly for this. Master *Macquin* and Master *Georges*, worshipfull Marchants of Rochel, as associates to *Monsieur De Monts*, did furnish vs with 45. <sup>u</sup>tonnes of wine, which did vs very much good. And our sicke folkes themselues, hauing their mouthes spoiled, and not being able to eat, haue neuer lost the tast of wine, which they tooke with a pipe. The same hath

hath  
of hea  
beside  
being  
sicke  
fed, v  
forted

An  
the bo  
panta  
moist  
on the  
rather  
good  
necess  
near.  
haue  
ter, b  
haue  
so tem  
sharp  
trees,  
trees,  
so mu  
is all  
in the  
then  
shall  
great  
from  
come  
well  
this  
T  
there  
to th

hath preserved many of them from death. The yong buds of hearbs in the Spring time be also very soueraigne. And besides that reason requireth to belecue it, I haue tried it, being my selfe gone many times to gather some for our sicke people, before that those of our garden might be v- sed, which restored them to their taste againe, and com- forted their weake stomacks.

Hearbs in the Spring time.

And as for that which concerneth the exterior parts of the body, we haue found great good in wearing wooden pantaphles, or patins with our shooes, for to auoide the moistnesse. The houses neede no opening, nor windowes on the Northwest side, being a winde very dangerous: but rather on the East side, or the South. It is very good to haue good bedding (& it was good for me to haue caried things necessary to this purpose) and aboue all to keepe himselfe neat. I would like well the vse of Stooues, such as they haue in Germany, by meanes whereof they feele no Winter, being at home, but as much as they please. Yea they haue of them, in many places, in their gardens, which doe so temper the coldnesse of winter, that in this rough and sharpe season, there one may see Orange-trees, Limon- trees, Figge-trees, Pomgranet-trees, and all such sorts of trees, bring forth fruit as good as in Prouence. Which is so much the more easie to doe in this new land, for that it is all couered ouer with woods, (except when one comes in the *Armonchiquois* countrie, a hundred leagues further of then Port Royall) And in making of winter a sommer one shall discouer the land: Which not hauing any more those great obstacles, that hinder the Sunne to court her, and from warming it with his heat, without doubt it will be- come very temperate, and yeeld a most milde aire: and well agreeing with our humour, not hauing there, euen at this time, neither colde nor heat that is excessiue.

Stooues.

Stooues in gardens.

The countrie of the Ar- mouchiquois 100. leagues distant from Port Royall.

The Sauages that know not Germany, nor the customes thereof, doe teach vs the same lesson, which being subiekt to those sicknesses (as we haue seene in the voiage of *Iames*

The Sweat-  
ings of the  
Sauages.

Ecclesi, 3.  
verse. 12.  
and 22.

Meanes of  
mirth.

Necessitie of  
hauing wo-  
men into the  
country.

Tree of life.

Sasafras.

*Quartier*) vse sweatings often, as it were euery moneth, and by this meanes they preferue themselues, driuing out by sweate all the colde and euell humors they might haue gathered. But one singular preferuatiue against this perfidious sicknesse, which commeth so stealingly, and which hauing once lodged it selfe within vs, will not be put out, is to follow the counsell of him that is wise amongst the wise, who hauing considered all the afflictions that man giue to himselfe during his life, hath found nothing better then *to reioice himselfe, and to be good, and to take pleasure in his owne workes.* They that haue done so, in our company, haue found themselues well by it: contrawise some alwaies grudging, repining, neuer content, idle, haue beene found out by the same disease. True it is, that for to inioy mirth it is good to haue the sweetnesse of fresh meates, fleshes, fishes, milke, butter, oyles, fruits, and such like, which we had not at will (I meane the common sort: for alwaies some one, or other of the company did furnish *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* his table with wilde foule, venison or fresh fish.) And if we had had halfe a dosen kyne, I beleue that no body had died there.

It resteth a preferuatiue, necessarie for the accomplishment of mirth, and to the end one may take pleasure on the worke of his hands, is euery one to haue the honest company of his lawfull wife: for without that, the cheare is neuer perfect; ones minde is alwaies vpon that which one loues and desireth; there is still some sorrow, the bodie becomes full of ill humours, and so the sickenesse doth breede.

And for the last and soueraigne remedie, I send backe the patient to the tree of life (for so one may well qualifie it) which *James Quartier* doth call *Anneda*, yet vnknown in the coast of Port Royall, vnlesse it bee, peraduenture the *Sasafras*, whereof there is quantitie in certaine places. And it is an assured thing, that the said tree is very excellent. But *Monsieur Champlain*, who is now in the great ri-  
uer

uer of  
the saic  
and to

The di  
lous ta  
bega:  
Fis

T  
countr  
a Pinn  
low th  
some h  
that in  
full sai  
and gu  
cause  
fough  
bout f  
Saint  
and W  
led by  
barre  
to the  
baies.  
age, w  
Cham  
many

uer of *Canada*, passing his winter, in the same part where the said *Quartier* did winter, hath charge to finde it out, and to make prouision thereof.

*Monsieur Champlain* is now this present year 1609. in *Canada*.

CHAP. VII.

*The discovery of new Lands by Monsieur De Monts: fabulous tales and reports of the riuer and fained towne of Norombega: The refuting of the authors that haue written thereof:*

*Fish bankes in Newfoundland: Kinibeki: Chouacoet:*

*Mallebarre: Armouchiquois: The death of a French man killed: Mortality of Englishmen in Virginia.*

**T**He rough season being passed, *Monsieur De Monts* wearied with his badde dwelling at *Saint Croix*, determined to seeke out another Port in a warmer countrie, and more to the South: And to that end made a Pinnesse to be armed and furnished with victuals, to follow the coast, and discovering new countries, to seeke out some happier Port in a more temperate aire. And because that in seeking, one cannot set forward so much as when in full failes one goeth in open sea, and that finding out baies and gulfes, lying betweene two lands, one must put in, because that there one may asloone finde that which is sought for, as else where, he made in this voyage but about six score leagues, as wee will tell you now. From *Saint Croix* to 60. leagues forward, the coast lieth East and West: at the end of which 60. leagues, is the riuer called by the Sauages *Kinibeki*. From which place to *Mallebarre* it lieth North and South, and there is yet from one to the other 60. leagues, in right line, not following the baies. So farre stretcheth *Monsieur De Monts* his voyage, wherein he had for Pilot in his vessell, *Monsieur De Champdore*. In all this coast so farre as *Kinibeki* there is many places where shippes may be harbored amongst the

*Monsieur De Monts* his voyage for the discovery of new Lands.

“ *Kinibeki* 60.  
“ leagues from  
“ *Saint Croix*.  
“  
“  
“  
“



Plin. B. 3.  
cap. 1.

“ Ilands, but the people there is not so frequent as is be-  
 “ yond that: And there is no remarkable thing (at least that  
 “ may be seene in the outside of the lands) but a riuer, where-  
 of many haue written fables one after another, like to  
 those that they (who grounding themselues vpon *Hannos*  
 his Commentaries, a Carthaginian captain) haue fained of  
 Townes built by him in great number vpon the coasts of  
 Africa, which is watered with the Ocean sea, for that hee  
 plaied an heroycall part in sailing so farre as the Iles of  
*Cap Vert*, where long time since no body hath beene, the  
 Nauiation not being so secure then, vpon that great sea,  
 as it is at this day by the benefit of the Compasse.

Therefore without alleaging that, which the first writ-  
 ters (Spaniards and Portingals) haue said, I will recite that  
 which is in the last booke, intituled, *The vniuersall Histo-*  
*rie of the West Indies*, Printed at *Douay* the last yeere 1607.  
 in the place where he speaketh of *Norombega*: For in re-  
 porting this, I shall haue also said that which the first haue  
 written, from whom they haue had it.

Fabulous  
tales of  
the riuer  
Norombe-  
ga.

“ Moreouer, towards the North (saith the Author, after  
 “ he had spoken of *Virginia*) is *Norombega*, which is known  
 “ well enough by reason of a faire towne, and a great riuer,  
 “ though it is not found from whence it hath his name: for  
 “ the Barbarians doe call it *Agguncia*: At the mouth of this  
 “ riuer there is an Iland very fit for fishing. The region that  
 “ goeth along the sea, doth abound in fish, and towards  
 “ New France there is great number of wilde beasts, and is  
 “ verie commodious for hunting; the Inhabitants doe liue  
 “ in the same maner as they of New France. If this beautifull  
 Towne hath euer beene in nature, I would faine know  
 who hath pulled it downe: For there is but Cabanes here  
 and there made with pearkes, and couered with barkes of  
 trees, or with skinnes, and both the riuer and the place  
 inhabited, is called *Pemptegoet*, and not *Agguncia*. The  
 riuer (sauing the tide) is scarce as the riuer of *Oyfe*. And  
 there can be no great riuer on that coast, because there are

*Pemptegoet*.

not

not lar  
great  
and is  
crossing  
nie ri  
*Norom*  
hauing  
is almo  
ing it  
of is al  
ry farre  
markal

But  
*Norom*  
this I  
before  
Geogr  
riuer in  
where  
ter. F  
for any  
this ri  
*Kinibe*  
riuer fo  
come  
barian  
haue a  
be sea  
the So  
are th  
numb  
Tr  
*Xaint*  
writte  
I take  
*Baca*

not lands sufficient to produce them, by reason of the great river of *Canada*, which runneth like this coast, and is not foure-score leagues distant from that place in crossing the lands, which from else-where received manie rivers falling from those parts which are towards *Norombega*: At the entrie whereof, it is so farre from hauing but one Iland, that rather the number thereof is almost infinite, for as much as this river enlarging it selfe like the Greeke *Lambda* Δ, the mouth whereof is all full of Isles, whereof there is one of them lying very farre off (and the formost) in the sea, which is high and markable about the others.

But some will say that I æquiocate in the situation of *Norombega*, and that it is not placed where I take it. To this I answer, that the author, whose words I have a little before alleaged, is in this my sufficient warrant, who in his Geographicall Mappe, hath placed in the mouth of this river in the 44. degree, and his supposed towne in the 45. wherein we differ but in one degree, which is a smal matter. For the river that I meane is in the 45. degree, and as for any towne, there is none. Now of necessitie it must be this river, because that the same being passed, and that of *Kinibeki*, (which is in the same height) there is no other river forward, whereof account should be made, till one come to *Virginia*. I say furthermore, that seeing the Barbarians of *Norombega* doe liue as they of New France, and haue abundance of hunting, it must be, that their prouince be seated in our New France: For fiftie leagues farther to the Southwest there is no great game, because the woods are thinner there, and the inhabitants settled, and in greater number then in *Norombega*.

True it is that a sea Captaine, named *John Alfonse*, of *Xaintonge*, in the relation of his aduenturous voyages, hath written, that, hauing passed *Saint Johns* Iland ( which I take for the same that I haue called heeretofore the Ile of *Bacaillos* ) the coast turneth to the West, and West South-west,

Objection.  
Answer.

“  
“  
“

An other Fabulous report of the River of *Norombega*.

Note this  
well.

“ west, as far as the riuer of *Norombegue*, newly discovered  
 “ (saith he) by the Portugais and Spaniards, which is in 30.  
 “ degrees: adding that this riuer hath, at the entrie thereof  
 “ many Iles, bankes, and rockes, and that fifteene or twenty  
 “ leagues within it, is built a great towne, where the people  
 “ be small and blackish, like them of the Indies, and are clo-  
 “ thed with skinnes, whereof they haue abundance of all  
 “ sorts. Item, that the bank of New found land endeth there:  
 “ and that that riuer being passed, the coast turneth to the  
 “ West, and West Northwest, about 250. leagues towards a  
 “ cuntry where there is both townes and castels. But I see  
 “ very little or no truth at all, in all the discourses of this  
 man: and well may he call his voiajes aduenturous, not  
 for him, who was neuer in the hundreth part of the places  
 he describeth (at least it is easie so to thinke) but for those  
 that will follow the waies which he willet mariners to  
 follow. For if the said riuer of *Norombega* be in thirtie de-  
 grees, it must needs be in *Florida*, which is the contrarie to  
 all them that euer haue written of it, and to the verie truth  
 it selfe.

The great  
Bancke of  
Newfound-  
land.  
*Banquereau.*  
*banc Iacquet.*

Concerning that which hee saith of the banke of New-  
 found land, it endeth (by the report of mariners, about the  
 Ile of *Sablon*, or *Sande*) about *Cap Breton*. True it is,  
 that there is some other bankes, that be called *Le banque-*  
*reau*, and *Le banc Iacquet*, but they are but fivie or six, or  
 ten leagues, and are diuided from the great banke of New  
 found land. And touching the men in the land of *Norom-*  
*bega*, they are of faire and high stature. And to say, that  
 this riuer being passed, the coast lieth West, and West  
 Northwest, that hath no likelihood. For from *Cap Breton*,  
 so farre as the point of *Florida*, that lieth ouer against the  
 Ile *De Cuba*, there is not any coast standing West North-  
 west, onely there is in the parts ioyning vpon the true ri-  
 uer called *Norombega*, some fiftie leagues coast, that stand-  
 eth East and West. Finally, of all that which the said *Iohn*  
*Alfonse* doth report, I receaue but that which he saith that  
 this

this riuer  
many I

The  
*Monts*  
where  
great r  
baned  
people  
baie o  
comm  
that w  
ther ba  
countr  
the gro  
rate, a  
Vines.  
subie  
heerea  
many  
groun  
one m

Th  
(wher  
*rombe*  
as *Ma*  
They  
heed  
at *Ma*  
was n  
all the  
witho  
such v  
depl  
*Mall*  
kettle  
one o

this riuer, whereof wee speake, hath at the comming in many Ilands, banks and rocks.

The riuer of *Norombega* being passed, *Monsieur De Monts* went still coasting, vntill hee came to *Kinibeki*, where a riuer is, that may shorten the way to goe to the great riuer of *Canada*. There is a number of Sauages Cabaned there, and the land beginneth there to be better peopled. From *Kinibeki* going farther, one findeth the baie of *Marchin*, named by the Captaine his name that commandeth therein. This *Marchin* was killed the yeere that we parted from New France 1607. Farther is another baie called *Chouakoet*, where (in regard of the former countries) is a great number of people: For there they till the ground, and the region beginneth to be more temperate, and for prooffe of this, there is in this land store of Vines. Yea euen there be Ilands full of it, (which be more subiect to the iniuries of the winde & cold) as we shall saie heereafter. There is betweene *Chouakoet* and *Malebarre* many baies and Iles, and the coast is sandie, with shallow ground, drawing neere to the said *Malebarre*, so that scarce one may land there with barkes.

The people that be from *Saint Johns* riuer to *Kinibeki* (wherein are comprised the riuers of *Saint Croix* and *Norombega*) are called *Etechemins*: And from *Kinibeki* as far as *Malebarre*, and farther, they are called *Armouchiquois*. They be traitours and theefes, and one had neede to take heed of them. *Monsieur De Monts*, hauing made some stay at *Malebarre*, victuals began to be scarce with him, and it was needfull to thinke vpon the returne, specially seeing all the coast so troublesome that one could passe no further without perill, for sholds that stretch farre into the sea, in such wise that the farther one goeth from the land, lesser depth there is. But before departing, a Carpenter of *Saint Mallos* died casually, who going to fetch water with some kettles, an *Armouchiquois* seeing fit opportunity to steale one of those kettles, when that the Frenchman tooke no

G

heede,

“ *Kinibeki*.

“

“

“

The bay of *Marchin*.

1607.

*Chouakoet*.

The ground manured.

Vines.

*Malebarre*.

The *Armouchiquois* traitours and theefes.

Shoulds stretching farre into the sea.

Violent death of a Frenchman of *Saint Mallos*.

The swiftnes  
of the *Armon-  
chiquois*.

1606.

*Monsieur De  
Monts* difficul-  
tie in his en-  
terprise.

heede, tooke it, and ran away speedily with his bootie. The Malouin running after, was killed by this wicked people: And although the same had not happened, it was in vaine to pursue after this theefe: for all these *Armonchiquois* are as swift in running as Gray-houndes: as we will yet further say in speaking of the voiage that *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* made in the same Country, in the yeere 1606. It greeued sore *Monsieur De Monts* to see such a thing, and his men were earnest for reuenge (which they might doe, for the other Barbarians were not so far from the Frenchmen but that a musket shot might haue skared them, which they had already on, rest to leuell euery one at his man) but the said *Monsieur De Monts*, vpon some considerations, which many other of his place and dignitie, might haue missed to consider, made euery one to put downe their musket cockes, and left them alone, not hauing hitherto found a fit place to make a setled dwelling. And so the said *Monsieur De Monts* caused all things to be in a readinesse for the returne to *Saint Croix*, where he had left a good number of his men, yet weake by the winter sicknesse, of whose health he was carefull.

Many that know not what belongeth to the sea, doe thinke that the setting of an habitation in an vnknown land is easie; but by the discourse of this voiage, and others that follow, they shall find that it is far easier to say than to doe, and that *Monsieur de Monts* hath exploited many things this first yeare, in viewing all the coast of this land euent to *Malebarre*, which is 400. leagues, following the same coast, and searching to the bottome of the Baies: besides the labour hee was forced to, in causing houses to be made at *Saint Croix*, the care he had of those which he had brought thither, and of their returne into France, if any perill or ship-wracke should come to those that had promised him to fetch him at the end of the yeere. But one may runne and take paine to seeke Ports and Hauens where fortune fauoureth: yet she is alwaies like to herselfe.

herselfe  
Climat  
lows v  
that w  
that b  
monet  
and 38  
count  
ready  
bad fa  
count  
of all  
haue t  
them  
them  
spoke  
For th  
meate  
the m  
gathe  
sickne  
thithe

The a  
bitati  
Mon  
sure  
la

T

herself. It is good for one to lodge himself in a sweet milde Climat, when one may chuse, notwithstanding death follows vs euey where. I haue heard of a Pilot of New Hauenthat was with the Englishmen in *Virginia* 24. yeares agoe, that being come thither, there died 36. of them in three moneths. Neuertheles *Virginia* is taken to be in the 36. 37. and 38. degrees of latitude, which is a good temperate country. Which considering, I yet belecue (as I haue already said before) that such mortality commeth by the bad fare. And it is altogether needfull to haue in such a countrie, at the very beginning, household, and tame cattell of all sorts, and a cary store of fruit trees and grafts, for to haue there quiet recreation necessarie to the health of them that desire people the land. That if the Sauages themselues be subiect to the sicknesse, wherof we haue spoken, I attribute that, to the same cause of euill fare. For they haue nothing that may correct the vise of the meates which they take: and are alwaies naked amongst the moistures of the ground, which is the very meanes to gather quantitie of corrupted humours, which cause those sicknesses vnto them, as well as to the strangers that goe thither, although they be borne to that kinde of life.

“ The mortali-  
tie of the  
English in  
*Virginia*, like  
that of the  
French in  
New France.  
*Virginia* is in  
36. 37. 38.  
degrees of la-  
titude.  
Praise of the  
temper of  
*Virginia*.  
Bad fare the  
chiefe cause  
of the sicknes.  
Things need-  
full.

CHAP. VIII.

*The arriuall of Monsieur Du Pont to Saint Croix: The habitation transferred in Port Royall: returne of Monsieur De Monts into France: the difficultie of hand Milles: The furniture of the said Monsieur Du Pont for the discovery of new lands beyond Malebarre: Shippe-wracke: forecast for the returne into France: Comparison of these voyages with them of Florida: the blame of those that dispraise the tillage of the lande.*

The second  
voyage made  
by Monsieur  
Du Pont-  
Grave.

**T**He Spring time season being passed in the voyage of the *Armouchiquois*, Monsieur De Monts did temporise at Saint Croix for the time that he had agreed

The arrivall  
of *Monsieur*  
*Du Pont*.  
1605.

Transmigra-  
tion from *S.*  
*Croix* to *Port*  
*Royal*.

New build-  
ings.

vpon, in the which if he had no newes from France, hee might depart and come to seeke some shippe of them that come to New found land for the drying of fish, to the end to repasse in France within the same, he and his companie, if it were possible. This time was already expired, and they were readie to set sailes, not expecting more any succour nor refreshing, When *Monsieur Du Point*, surnamed *Graué*, dwelling at *Honfleur*, did arrive with a company of some fortie men, for to ease the said *Monsieur De Monts* and his troupe, which was to the great ioy of all, as one may well imagine: and canon shots were free and plentiful at the comming, according to custome, and the sound of trumpets. The said *Monsieur Du Pont*, not knowing yet the state of our French men, did thinke to finde there an assured dwelling, and his lodgings readie: but considering the accidents of the strange sicknesse whereof we haue spoken, he tooke aduice to change place. *Monsieur De Monts* was very desirous that the new habitation had beene about 40. degrees, that is to say, 4. degrees farther then *Saint Croix*: but hauing viewed the coast as farre as *Malebarre*, and with much paine, not finding what hee desired, it was deliberated to goe and make their dwelling in *Port Royal*, vntill meanes were had to make an ampler discouery. So every one began to packe vp his things: That which was built with infinite labour was pulled downe, except the Store-house, which was too great and painefull to be transported, and in executing of this, many voyages are made. All being come to *Port Royal* they found out new labours: the abiding place is chosen right ouer against the Iland, that is at the comming in of the riuer *L'Equille*, in a place where all is couered ouer and full of woods, as thicke as possible may be. The Moneth of September did already begin to come, and care was to be taken for the unlading of *Monsieur Du Pont* his ship, to make roome for them that should returne backe into France. Finally there is worke enough for all. When the  
ship

ship w  
*Mont*  
shippe  
low hi  
getting  
among  
*Champ*  
condu  
cessary  
*Monts*  
*Du Po*  
wantin  
perfec  
and hi  
yeare  
Winte  
as for  
time to  
man to  
had be  
The  
assemb  
with t  
ing *Be*  
most:  
or *Sta*  
bring  
good  
where  
did no  
when  
about  
glad  
the ta  
Th  
haue

ship was in a readinesse to put to sailes, *Monsieur De Monts* hauing seene the beginning of the new habitation, shipped himselfe for his returne with them that would follow him. Notwithstanding many of good courage (forgetting the griefes and labours passed) did tary behinde, amongst whom were *Monsieur Champlain* and *Monsieur Champdorè*, the one for *Geographie*, and the other for the conducting and guiding of the voyages that should be necessary to be made by sea. Then the said *Monsieur De Monts* hoised vp sailes, and leaueth the said *Monsieur Du Pont* as his Lieutenant and deputie in these parts, who wanting no diligence (according to his nature) in making perfect that which was needfull for to lodge both himselfe and his people, which was all that might be done for that yeare in that country. For to goe farre from home in the Winter, and after so long a toile, there was no reason. And as for the tillage of the ground, I beleue they had no fit time to doe it: For the said *Monsieur Du Pont* was not a man to be long in rest, nor to leaue his men idle, if there had beene any meanes for it.

The Winter being come, the Sauages of the country did assemble themselues, from farre to *Port Royal*, for to truck with the Frenchmen, for such things they had, some bringing Beauers skinnes, and Otters (which are those whereof most account may be made in that place) and also *Ellans* or Staggess, whereof good buffe may be made: Others bringing flesh newly killed, wherewith they made many good *Tabagies* or feasts, liuing merily as long as they had wherewithall. They neuer wanted any bread, but wine did not continue with them till the season was ended. For when we came thither the yeare following, they had been about three Moneths without any wine, and were very glad of our comming, for that made them to take againe the taste of it.

The greatest paine they had, was to grinde the corne to haue bread, which is very painfull with hand-mills, where-

The returne of *Monsieur de Monts* into France.

Traffike with the Sauages.

Beuers, Otters, and Staggess.

*Tabagua* is a Sauage tearme, signifying banquet.

Hand Mills.



Exod. 11. ver.  
4. 5.

The number  
of the dead.

Fault in their  
buildings.

The furniture  
of Monsieur  
Du Pont to go  
to the disco-  
uery of new  
lands.

All the strength of the bodie is requisite : And therefore it is not without cause that in old time, bad people were threatened to be sent to the Mill, as to the painefullest thing that is : to which occupation poore slaues were set to, before the vse of water and winde-mills was found out, as the Prophane histories make mention : and the same of the comming of the people of Israel out of the land of *Ægypt*, where, for the last scourge that God will send to *Pharao*, he declareth by the mouth of *Moisès*, that *about midnight he will passe thorow Ægypt, and euery first borne shall die there, from the first borne of Pharao, that should sit upon his throne, to the first borne of the maide Seruant which grindeth at the Mill.* And this labor is so great, that the *Sauages* (although they be very poore) cannot beare it, and had rather to be without bread, then to take so much pains as it hath beene tried, offering them halfe of the grinding they should doe, but they chused rather to haue no corne. And I might well belecue that the same, with other things, hath beene great meanes to breed the sicknesse spoken of, in some of *Monsieur Du Pont* his men : for there died some halfe a dosen of them that winter. True it is, that I finde a defect in the buildings of our Frenchmen, which is, they had no ditches about them, whereby the waters of the ground next to them did runne vnder their lower-most roomes, which was a great hindrance to their health. I adde besides the bad waters which they vsed, that did not runne from a quicke spring, but from the neereff brooke.

The winter being passed, & the sea nauigable, *Monsieur Du Pont* would needes atchieue the enterprise begun the yeere before by *Monsieur De Monts*, and to goe seeke out a Port more Southerly, where the aire might be more temperate, according as he had in charge of the said *Monsieur De Monts*. He furnished then the barke which remained with him to that effect. But being set out of the port, and full readie, hoisted vp sailes for *Malebarre*, he was forced by

by com  
third ti  
entrie  
men w  
mercha  
And b  
which  
Port R  
it is, on  
with m  
league  
that en  
men, an  
must n  
Coloni  
temper  
and cu  
not fro  
that ter  
name o  
woolue

This  
knew n  
plic the  
Royall  
follow  
Shalou  
they v  
Port, M  
Baie o  
cordin  
to the  
Franc  
When  
newes  
shall a

by

by contrarie winde twice to put backe againe, and at the third time the said Barke strake against the rockes at the entrie of the said Port. In this disgrace of *Neptune*, the men were saued with the better part of prouision and merchandise; but as for the Barke it was rent in peeces. And by this mishap the voyage was broken, and that which was so desired intermitted. For the habitation of Port Royall was not iudged good. And notwithstanding it is, on the North and North-west sides, well sheetered with mountaines, distant some one league, some halfe a league from the Port and the riuer *L'Equille*. So we see how that enterprises take not effect according to the desires of men, and are accompanied with many perils. So that one must not woonder if the time be long in establishing of Colonies, specially in lands so remote, whose nature, and temperature of aire is not knowen, and where one must fell and cut downe Forrests, and be constrained to take heed, not from the people that we call Sauages, but from them that terme themselues Christians, and yet haue but the name of it, cursed and abhominable people, woorse then woolues, enemies to God and humane nature.

This attempt then being broken, *Monsieur Du Pont* knew not what to doe, but to attend the succour and supplie that *Monsieur De Monts* promised, parting from Port Royall at his returne into France, to send him the yeere following. Yet for all euent he built an other Barke and a Shaloup for to seeke French shippes in the places where they vie to dry fish, such as Campseau Port, English Port, Misamichis Port: the Baie of Chaleur (or heat,) the Baie of Morues or Coddés, and others in great number, according as *Monsieur De Monts* had done the former yeere, to the end to ship himselfe in them, and to returne into France, in case that no shippe should come to succour him. Wherein he did wisely, for he was in danger to heare no newes from vs, that were appointed to succeed him, as it shall appeare by the discourse following.

But

The wracke  
of their Bark.

Causes of de-  
lay in esta-  
blishing the  
dwelling  
place of the  
French men.

The comparing of these later voiaiges.

The blame of them who at this day despise the manuring of the ground.

Gods punishments.

But in the meane while wee must consider that they, which in these voyages haue transported themselues in these parts, haue had an aduantage ouer those that would plant in *Florida*, which is in hauing that refuge before said, of French shippes that frequent the New found lands for fishing, not being forced to build great shippes, nor to abide extreme famines, as they haue done in *Florida*, whose voyages haue beene lamentable for that respect, and these by reason of the sicknesses that haue persecuted them, but they of *Florida* haue had a blessing for that they were in a milde and fertill countrey, and more friendly to mans health then New France, spoken of else where. If they haue suffered famines, there was great fault in them, for not hauing tilled the ground, which they found plaine and champion: Which before all other thing is to be done, of them that will lodge themselues so farre from ordinarie succour. But the Frenchmen, and almost all nations at this day ( I meane of those that be not borne and brought vp to the manuring of the ground ) haue this badde nature, that they thinke to derogate much from their dignitie in addicting themselues to the tillage of the ground, which notwithstanding is almost, the onely vocation where innocencie remaineth. And thereby cometh that euerie one shunning this noble labour, our first Parents and ancient Kings exercise, as also of the greatest Captaines of the World, seeking to make himselfe a Gentleman at others costes, or else willing onely to learne the trade to deceaue men, or to claw himselfe in the Sunne, God taketh away his blessing from vs, and beateth vs at this day, and hath done a long time with an iron rodde, so that in all parts the people languisheth miserably, and we see the Realme of France swarming with beggers and vagabonds of all kindes, besides an infinite number, groaning in their poore cottages, not daring, or ashamed to shewfoorth their pouertie and miserie.

CHAP. IX.

*The first motive and acceptation of the voyage by Monsieur De Poutrincourt, together with the Author, into New France: their departure from Paris to goe into Rochel.*

**A**BOUT the time of the before mentioned shipwracke, *Monsieur De Monts* being in France, did thinke carefully vpon the meanes how to prepare a new supplie for new France. Which seemed hard and difficult to him, as well for the great charges that that action required, as because that Prouince had beene so discredited at his returne, that the continuing of these voyages any longer did seeme vaine and vnfruitfull. Besides, there was some reason to beleue that no bodie would aduenture himselfe thither. Notwithstanding, knowing *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* his desire (to whom before he had given part of the land, according to the power which the King had giuen him) which was to inhabite in those parts, and there to settle his family and his fortune, together with the name of God, he wrote vnto him, and sent a man of purpose to give him notice of the voyage that was in hand. Which the said *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* accepted of, leauing all other affaires, to attend on this action, though he had suites in law of great weight; to the prosecuting and defence whereof, his presence was very requisite: And that at his first voyage he had tried the malice of some, which during his absence prosecuted against him with rigour, and at his returne gaue ouer and became dōmbe. He was no sooner come to Paris, but that he was forced to depart, not hauing scarce time to provide for things necessarie. And I hauing had that good happe to be acquainted with him some yeeres before, asked mee if I would take part in that businesse: whereunto I demanded a daies respite to answer him. Hauing well consulted with

The third voyage made by *Monsieur de Poutrincourt*.

*Monsieur De Poutrincourt* accepteth the voiage of New France.

The causes  
of the Au-  
thors voiage.

my selfe, not so much desirous to see the countrie ( for I knew well that there was woods, lakes and riuers, and that one must goe ouer seas ( which I had before done in the Straights ) as to bee able to giue an eie iudgement of the land, whereto my minde was before inclined: and to auoid a corrupted world I engaged my word vnto him, being induced thereto specially for the vniustice done to me a litle before, by some Presidiall Iudges, in fauour of a Parsonage of eminent qualitie; whom I haue alwaies honored and reuerenced: Which sentence at my returne hath bene recalled, by order and sentence of the Court of Parliament, for which I am particularly obliged to *Monsieur Seruin*, the King his Aduocate Generall, to whom doth belong properly this Eloge, attributed according to the letter, to the most wise and most magnificent of all Kings.

Psal. 5. 4.

*Thou hast loued Iustice and hated iniquitie.*

So it is that God awakeneth vs somtimes, to stirre vs vp to generous actions, such as be these voiajes, which ( as the world doth varie ) some will blame, other some will approoue. But without answering any body in this respect, I care not what discourses idle men, or those that cannot, or will not helpe mee, may make, enioying contentment in my selfe, and being readie to render all seruice to God and to the King in those remote lands, that beare the name of France, if either my fortune or condition call me thither, for there to liue in quiet and rest, by an acceptable pleasing labour, and to shun the hard and miserable life, whereto I see reduced the most part of men in this part of the World.

To returne then to *Monsieur De Poutrincourt*, as he had dispatched some businesse, he inquired in some Churches if some learned Priest might be found out, that would goe with him, to relieue and ease him, whom *Monsieur De Monts* had left there at his voiage, whom we thought to be yet liuing. But because it was the Holy weeke, in which time they are employed, and waite on confessions and

shriuing,

shriuing  
themse  
sea, an  
ter Ea  
Paris,  
for no

The  
for the  
prouic  
giuen  
Roche  
ses of  
March  
De M

Ou  
rer we  
there t  
accom  
king t  
seeing  
From  
with o  
and M

The n  
Roche  
Towne  
of J

shriivings, there was none to be found; some excusing themselves vpon the troubles and discommodities of the sea, and the length of the voyage, other deferring it till after Easter. Which was cause that none could be had out of Paris, by reason the season hastened on, time and tyde tarry for no man, so then we were forced to depart.

There rested to finde out fit and necessary workemen for the voyage of New France, whereunto was speedilie provided, price agreed vpon for their wages, and mony giuen before hand in part thereof, to beare their charges to Rochell, where the rendez vous was, at the dwelling houses of Master *Macquin*, and Master *Georges*, worshipfull Marchants of the said Towne, the associates of *Monsieur De Monts*, which did prouide our furniture and prouision.

Our meaner people being gone, three or fower daies after we tooke our way to Orleans, vpon Good Friday, for there to solemnise and passe our Easter, where euery one accomplished the dutie vsuall to all good Christians, in taking the spiritual food, that is to say, the holy Communion, seeing we did vndertake, and were going on a voyage. From thence we came downe the riuer *Loyre* to Saumur, with our cariage: and from Saumur we went by *Touars* and *Maran* to Rochell, by hackney horses.

The parting  
from Paris.

#### CHAP. X.

*The name of our Ship called the Ionas: The shallow water at Rochell is the cause of the hard going out: Rochell a reformed Towne: the common people is insolent: Croquans: the accident of ship-wracke of the Ionas: new preparation: weak souldiers are not to be placed vpon the frontiers: The Ministers of Rochell doe pray for the conuersion of the Sauages: the smal zeale of ours: the Eucharist caried in voiages by the ancient Christian: the diligence of Monsieur De Pourincourt at the very point of Shipping.*

Being come to Rochell, we found there *Monsieur De Monts*, and *Monsieur De Pontrincourt*, that were come in Post, and our ship called the *Jonas*, of the burthen of 150. tonnes, readie to palle out of the chaines of the Towne, to tary for winde and tyde. The tyde I say, because that a great ship laden, cannot come to sea from Rochell, but in spring tydes, vpon the new and full moone, by reason that in the towne roade there is no sufficient depth. In the meane while we made good cheare, yea so good, that we did long to be at sea to make diet: which we did but too soone, being once come thither: for during two whole monethes we saw not a whit of land, as we will farther tell anone. But the workemen, thorow their good cheare (for they had euery one two shillings a daies hire) did play maruellous pranckes in Saint Nicholas quarter, where they were lodged, which was found strange in a towne so reformed as Rochell is, in the which no notorious riots nor dissolutions be made; and indeed one must behaue himselfe orderly there, vnlesse he will incurre the danger either of the censure of the Maier, or of the Ministers of the Towne. Some of those disordered men were put in prison, which were kept in the Towne-house till the time of going, and had beene further punished, had it not beene vpon consideration of the voyage, where they knew they should not haue all their eases, but should afterwards pay deere enough their madde bargin, in putting the said Master *Macquin* and Master *Georges* to so much trouble, to keepe them in order. I will not, for all that, put in the number of this disordred people, al the rest, for there were some very ciuill and respectiue. But I will say that the common people is a dangerous beast. And this maketh me remember the *Croquans* war, amongst whom I was once in my life, being in *Querci*. It was the strangest thing in the world to see the confusion of those wooden shooed fellowes, from whence they tooke the name of *Croquans* (that is to say *Hookers*).

The praises  
of Rochell.

*Croquans* (Signifying  
hookes) why  
so called.

*Hooker*  
fore and  
This co  
them;  
hedge-  
and fo  
Ou  
out of  
the 8.  
charge  
monly  
that th  
very d  
mann  
6. or 7  
arose i  
with  
which  
er of t  
that sh  
it was  
time,  
farre g  
there  
Our v  
cessity  
to any  
them  
away  
gone  
had c  
ter ca  
vpon  
court  
vnpr  
beho

*Hookers*) because that their wooden shoes, nayled before and behinde, did hooke or sticke fast at every steppe. This confused people had neither rime nor reason among them; every one was Master there; some armed with an hedge-hooke at a staves end, others with some rusty sword, and so accordingly.

Our *Jonas* hauing her full load, was in the end rowed out of the Towne into the roade, and we thought to set out the 8. or 9. of Aprill. Captaine *Foulnes* had taken the charge for the conducting of the voyage. But as commonly there is negligence in mens businesse, it hapned that this Captaine (who notwithstanding I haue knowen very diligent and watchfull at sea) hauing left the ship ill manned, not being in her himselte, nor the Pilot, but only 6. or 7. mariners good and bad, a great South-east winde arose in the night, which brake the *Jonas* cable, fastend with one onely ancker, and driueth her against a forewall which is out of the towne, backing and proping the Tower of the chaine, against which she strake so many times, that she brake and sunke downe; and it chanced well that it was then ebbing, for if this mishap had come in flowing time, the ship was in danger to be ouerwhelmed with a farre greater losse then we had, but she stood vp, and so there was means to mend her, which was done with speed. Our workemen were warned to come and helpe in this necessity, either to draw at the pompe, at the Capestane, or to any other thing; but few there were that endeouored themselues to doe any thing, the most part of them going away, and most of them made a mocke of it. Some hauing gone so far as to the oare, went backe complaining that one had cast water vpon them, being of that side that the water came out of the pompe, which the winde did scatter vpon them. I came thither with *Monsieur De Poutrincourt*, and some other willing men, where wee were not vnprofitable. Almost all the inhabitants of Rochell were beholding this spectacle vpon the rampiers. The sea was

Negligence  
in the keep-  
ing of the  
*Jonas*.

Hyred work-  
men negli-  
gent.



yet stormy, and we thought our ship would have dashed oftentimes against the great Towers of the towne. In the end, we came in with lesse losse then wee thought of. The ship was all vnladen, being forced to tackle and furnish her anew. The losse thereby was great, and the voyages almost broken off for euer: for I belecue, that after so many trials, none would have ventured to goe plant Colonies in those parts; that Country being so ill spoken of, that euery one did pittie vs, considering the accidents happened to them that had bene there before. Notwithstanding *Monsieur De Monts* and his associates, did beare manfully this losse. And I must needs be so bold as to tel in this occurance that if euer that country be inhabited with Christians and ciuill people, the first praise thereof must of right be due to the Authors of this voyage.

The courage  
of *Monsieur  
De Monts* and  
his associates.

This great trouble hindered vs about a moneth, which was employed in the vnlading, and lading againe of our ship. During that time, we did walke sometimes vnto the places neere about the towne, and chiefly vnto the Conuent of the Cordeliers, which is but halfe a league off from the towne: where being one Sunday, I did maruell how in those places of frontier, there is no better garrison, having so strong enemies neere them. And seeing I take in hand to relate an history of things, according to the true maner of them: I say that it is a shamefull thing for vs, that the Ministers of Rochell, pray to God euery day in their Congregations for the conuersion of the poore Sauage people, and also for our safe conducting, and that our Church-men doe not the like. In very truth we neuer required neither the one nor the other to doe it, but therein is knowen the zeale of both sides. In the end, a little before our departing, it came to my minde to aske of the Parson or Vicar of Rochell if there might be found any of his fraternity that would come with vs, which I hoped might easily be done, because there was a reasonable good number of them: and besides, that being in a maritime towne, I thought they

The frontiers ought to be furnished with good Souldiers.

The Ministers doe pray for the conuersion of the Sauiages.

they too  
nothing  
would  
with an  
bee the  
the sam  
almost  
heard o  
his first  
son, es  
mande  
of the p  
great n  
hundre  
(namin  
gie man  
upon b  
deserue  
were bu  
not suf  
mong a  
and see  
leue it  
our Lo  
for him  
one mu  
poore  
in Pari  
Seeing  
man, c  
nauiga  
Christ  
did car  
this di  
to adn  
then y

they tooke delight to haunt the seas : but I could obtaine nothing : and for all excuses, it was tolde me, that none would goe to such voyages, vnlesse they were moued with an extraordinary zeale and pietie : And that it would bee the best way to seeke to the fathers Iesuites for the same. Which we could not then doe, our ship hauing almost her full lading. Whereupon I remember to haue heard oftentimes of *Monsieur De Pourrin-court*, that after his first voiage, being at the Court, an Ecclesiasticall person, esteemed very zealous in the Christian religion, demanded of him what might be hoped for in the conuersion of the people of New France, and whether there were any great number of them. Whereunto he answered, that a hundred thousand soules might be gotten to *Iesus Christ*, (naming a number certaine for an vncertaine.) This Clergie man making small account of such a number, said thereupon by admiration, *is that all !* as if that number did not deserue the labour of a Church-man. Truly thought were but the hundreth part of that, yea yet lesse, one must not suffer it to bee lost. The good Sheeheard hauing among an hundred sheepe one astray, left the 99. for to go and seeke out the one that was lost. We are taught (&) I beleue it so) that though there were but one man to be saued, our Lord *Iesus Christ* had not disdained to come, as well for him, as he hath done for all the world. In like maner, one must not make so smal account of the saluation of these poore people, though they swarme not in number as with- in Paris or Constantinople.

Seeing it auailed me nothing in demanding for a Church- man, to administer the Sacrament vnto vs, be it during our nauigation, or vpon the land: The ancient custome of the Christians came into my minde, which going in voyage did carry with them the holy bread of the *Eucharist*, and this did they, because they found not, in all places, Priests to administer this Sacrament vnto them, the world being then yet full, either of Heathens or Heretickes. So that it

was

Math. 18.  
vers. 12. 13.

Custom of  
the ancient  
Christians,  
carying the  
Eucharist in  
their voyages.

was not vnproperly called *Viatic*, which they carried with them traueiling on the way : yet notwithstanding I am of opinion that it hath a spirituall meaning. And considering that we might be brought to that necessity, not hauing in New France but one Priest onely, (of whose death wee heard when we came thither) I demanded if they would doe vnto vs, as to the ancient Christians, who were as wise as we. I was answered that the same was done in that time for considerations which are not now at this daie. I replied that *Satirus* *Saint Ambroses* brother, going on a voyage vpon the sea, serued himselfe with this spirituall Physicke (as we read in his funerall oration made by his said brother *Saint Ambrose*) which he did carry in *Orario*, which I take to be a linnen cloth, or taffira : and well did it happen vnto him by it. For hauing made ship-wracke, he saued himselfe vpon a bord, left of his veilels wracke. But I was as well refused in this as of the rest. Which gaue mee cause of wondring : seeming to me a very rigorous thing to be in worse condition then the first Christians. For the *Eucharist* is no other thing at this day then it was then : And if they held it precious, we doe not demand it to make lesse account thereof.

Let vs returne to our *Jonas*. Now shee was laden and brought out of the towne into the roade : there resteth nothing more than fit weather & tide : which was the hardest of the matter. For in places where is no great depth, as in *Rockell*, one must tarry for the high tydes of the full and new Moones, and then peraduenture the winde will not be fit, and so one must deferre, till a fortnights time. In the meane while the season goeth away : as it was almost with vs. For we saw the hour that after so many labours and charges, we were indanger to tarry for lacke of winde, because the Moone was in the waine, and consequently the tyde. Captaine *Foulques* did not seeme to affect his charge, making no ordinary stay in the ship : and it was reported that other Merchants, not being of *Monsieur De Monts* his

*Saint Ambrose*  
in his funerall  
oration for  
his brother.

Hardnesse to  
come forth  
from a Port.

Bad suspicion  
of Captaine  
*Foulques*.

his soc  
age. A  
to mak  
a halfe  
said M  
vpon h  
lie in h  
the first  
end, w  
the fau  
made c  
day be  
de bois  
shelter  
assemb  
did dep  
prise.

Their a  
Pirats  
Why th  
when  
ston  
o

T  
town c

his societie, did secretly sollicite him to breake off the voyage. And indeed it hath beene thought that he caused vs to make wrong courses : which kept vs two monethes and a halfe at sea , as heereafter we shall see. Which thing the said *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* perceiuing, himselfe tooke vpon him the charge of Captaine of the ship, and went to lie in her, the space of fīue or six daies , for to get out with the first winde, and not to loose the opportunity. In the end, with much a doe the eleuenth day of May 1606. by the fauour of a small Easterly winde, he went to sea , and made our *Jonas* to be brought to the *Palisse* , and the next day being the 12. of the same moneth, came againe to *Chef de bois* (which be the places where ships put themselues for shelter from windes) where the hope of New France was assembled. I say the hope, because that of this voyage, did depend the continuance or totall breach of the enterprise.

The diligence and care of *Monsieur De Poutrincourt*.

\* A place so called neere *Rochell*.

CHAP. XI.

*Their departure from Rochell: Sundry meetings of ships, and Pirats: Stormy Sea about the Açores, and whence it proceeds: Why the West windes are frequent in the West sea: From whence the winds doe come: Porpeses doe prognosticate stormes: meanes to take them: the describing of them: of stormes: their effects: of Calmes: what is a gust of Winde: how it is made: the effects thereof: the boldnesse of mariners: how reuerence is giuen to the Kings ship: the supputation of the voyage: hot sea: then cold: the reason of it: and of the banckes of Ice in New-found Land.*

**T**He Saturday, Whitsonue 13. of May, we weighed our anckers, and sailed in open sea, so that by little and little wee lost the sight of the great towers and town of Rochell, then of the Iles of *Rez & Oleron*, bidding France

13. of May, 1606.

Meetings of  
Ships.

Meeting of a  
Pirate or out-  
lawed.

Neptunes  
sheepe.

Why is the  
sea stormie  
about the  
Açores.

France farewell. It was a thing fearefull for them that were not vsed to such a dance, to see them caried vpon so moueable an element, and to be at euery moment (as it were) within two fingers bredth to death. We had not long failed, but that many did their endeouour to yeeld vp the tribute to *Neptune*. In the meane while we went still forward, for there was no more going backe, the plancke being once taken vp. The 16. of May we met with 13. Holanders, going for Spaine, which did inquire of our voyage, and so held their course. Since that time we were a whole moneth, seeing nothing else out of our floting towne, but Skie and water, one ship excepted, neere about the *Açores*, well filled with English and Dutchmen. They bare vp with vs, and came very neere vs. And according to the maner of the sea, we asked them whence their ship was. They told vs they were New-found-land men, that is to say going a fishing for New-found-land-fish. And they asked vs if we would accept of their companie: we thanked them: therupon they dranke to vs, and we to them, and they tooke another course. But hauing considered their vessell all set with greene mosse on the belly and sides, we iudged them to be Pirates, & that they had of a long time beaten the sea, in hope to make some prise. It was then that we began to see, more than before, *Neptunes* sheepe to skip vp (so doe they call the frothy waues, when the sea beginneth to flur and to feele the hard blowes of his Trident. For commonly in that place before named the sea is stormy. If one aske me the cause why: I wil answer, that I thinke it to proceed of a certaine conflict between the East & westerly windes, which doe encounter in that part of the sea, and especially in Summer, when the West windes doe rise vp, and with a great force pierce and passe thorow a great distance of sea, vntill they finde the windes of these parts, which doe resist them; Then it is dangerous for a ship to be at these windy encounters. This reason seemeth the more probable vnto me, in this, that vntill we came neere the *Açores* we had the

winde

winde  
either  
which  
For Ea  
which  
that th  
Wheth  
which  
of we h  
land, b  
thence  
ally in  
vapors  
ing fro  
the Po  
from v  
when it  
vnto vs  
phet, th  
eth the  
wherco  
brew,

He brin  
the l  
on so  
The wi

And  
Genw  
of Ame  
West,  
winde  
Co  
& him  
alwai  
that f

winde

winde fit enough, and afterward, we had almost alwaies either South-west or Norweast, little North and South, which were not good for vs, but to saile with the bowline: For Easterly windes we had none at all, but once or twice, which continued nothing with vs (to speake of.) Sure it is that the Westerly windes doe raigne much a long that sea, Whether it be by a certaine repercussion of the East winde which is stiffe and swift vnder the Equinoctiall line, whereof we haue spoken else-where, or because that this Western land, being large and great, also the winde that issueth from thence doth abound the more. Which commeth especially in Summer, when the sunne hath force to draw vp the vapors of the earth, for the windes come from thence, issuing from the dennes and Cauces of the same. And therefore the Poets doe faine that *Aeolus* holdeth them in prisons, from whence hee draweth them, and giueth them liberty when it pleaseth him. But the spirit of God doth confirm it vnto vs yet better, when he saith by the mouth of the Prophet, that Almighty God, among other his maruels, draweth the windes out of his treasures, which be the Cauces whereof I speake. For the word *treasure* signifieth in Hebrew, secret and hidden place.

Westerly  
windes ordi-  
nary in the  
Westerne  
Sea.

from whence  
the windes  
doe come

Psal. 135.

*He bringeth forth the cloudes from the earthes furthest parts,  
the lightnings with the raines he makes, and them impartes,  
on some in his anger, on others for pleasures:  
The windes he draweth forth out of his deepe treasures.*

And vpon this consideration, *Christopher Columbus*, a Genwaie, first nauigator of these last ages vnto the Ilands of *Amerika*, did iudge that there was some great land in the West, hauing obserued, sailing on the sea, that continuall windes came from that part.

Continuing then our course, we had some other stormes & hindrances procured by windes, which we almost had alwaies contrary, by reason we set out too late: but they that set out in March haue commonly good windes, be-

Porpeses  
doe prognos-  
ticate storms.

The way to  
take them.

The descripti-  
on of the *Por-  
pese*.

The *Porpeses*  
hot blood  
doth comfort  
the sinewes.

A Beavers  
taile is dainty  
meate.

Stormes, and  
their effects.

cause that then the East, Noreast, and Northern windes doe raigne, which are fit and prosperous for these voiajes. These tempests were very often foretold vs by Porpeses, which did haunt about our ship by thousands, sporting themselues after a very pleasant maner. Some of them did pay for their so neer eapproaching. For some men waited for them at the beke head (which is the forepart of the ship) with harping Irons in their hands, which met with them sometimes, and drew them in aboard with the helpe of the other sailers, which, with iron hookes (which they call *Gaffes*) tied at the end of a long powle, pulled them vp. We haue taken many of them in that sort, both in going and comming, which haue done vs no harme. There bee two sorts of them, some which haue a blunt and bigge nose, others which haue it sharpe; we tooke none but of these last, but yet I remember to haue seene in the water some of the short-nosed ones. This fish hath two fingers bredth of fat, at the least, on the backe. When it was cut in two, we did wash our hands in his hot blood, which, they say, comforteth the sinewes. He hath a maruelous quantity of teeth along his lawes, and I thinke that he holdeth fast that which he once catcheth. Moreouer the inward parts haue altogether the taste of hoggs flesh, and the bones not in forme of fish bones, but like a foure footed creature. The most delicate meat of it, is the finne which he hath vpon the backe, and the taile, which are neither fish nor flesh, but better then that, such as also is in substance of taile, that of the Beuers, which seemeth to be scailed. These Porpeses be the onely fishes we tooke, before we came to the great bancke of *Mornes* or Codfish. But far off we saw other great fishes, which did shew, out of the water, aboue haife an akers length of their backes, and did thrust out in the aire aboue a speares height of great pipes of water, thorow the holes they had vpon their heads.

But to returne to our purpose of stormes: during our voiage, we had some which made vs strike downe saile, and

and to  
waues  
any co  
rowle  
the ket  
dishes  
other  
drinke  
to the  
what r  
For all  
dangere  
strong  
calmes  
washe  
we clim  
when a  
der the  
ses, fo  
ped in  
snortin  
ble to  
beene  
(which  
mande  
gusts o  
from v  
natural  
vapour  
aire: a  
to retu  
exhala  
hard, c  
agitati  
nesse,  
run aw

and to stand our armes a crosse, caried at the pleasure of the waues, and tossed vp and downe after a strange maner. If any coffer or chest was not well made fast, it was heard to rowle from side to side, makeing a foule noise. Sometimes the kettle was ouerturned; and in dyning or supping, our dishes and platters flew from one end of the table to the other, vnlesse they were holden very fast. As for the drinke, one must cary his mouth and the glasse, according to the motion of the ship. Briefely it was a sport, but somewhat rude, to them that cannot beare this iogging easily. For all that, the most of vs did laugh at it: for there was no danger in it, at least euident, being in a good ship, and strong to withstand the waues. We had also sometimes calmes, very tedious and wearisome, during which, we washed our selues in the sea, we danced vpon the decke, we climbed vp the maine top, we sang in musicke. Then when a litle small cloude was perceiued to issue from vnder the *Horizon*, we were forced to giue ouer those exercises, for to take heed of a gust of winde, which was wrapped in the same cloud, which dissoluing it selfe, grumbling, snorting, whistling, roaring, storming, and buzzing, was able to ouerturne our ship vp-side downe, vnlesse men had beene ready to execute that which the Master of the ship (which was Captaine *Foulques*, a man very vigilant) commanded them. There is no harme in shewing how these gusts of winde, otherwise called stormes, are formed, and from whence they proceed. *Plinie* speaketh of them in his naturall history, and saith, that they be exhalations & light vapours raised from the earth to the colde region of the aire: and not being able to passe further, but rather forced to returne backe, they sometimes meet sulphury and firy exhalations, which compasse them about, and binde so hard, that there come, thereby a great combat, motions and agitation, between the sulphury heat, and the airy moistnesse, which being constrained by the stronger enemy to run away, it openeth it selfe, maketh it selfe waie, whistleth,

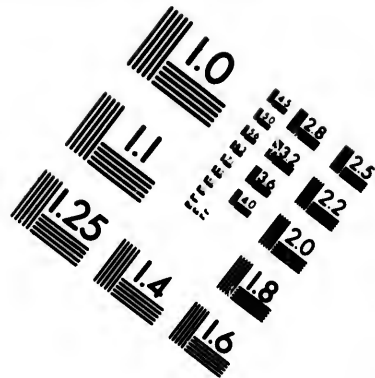
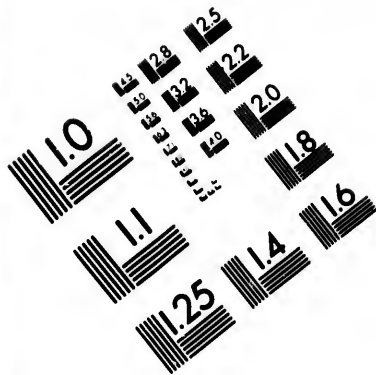
Calmes wearisome.

Whirlewinde, what it is, how it is made: the effects thereof.

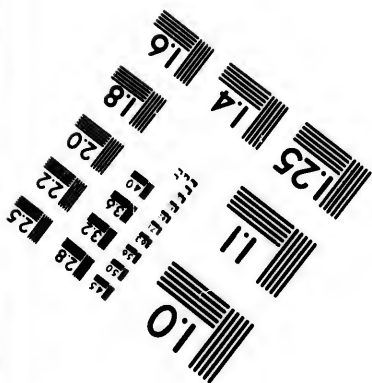
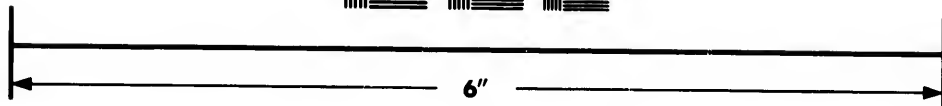
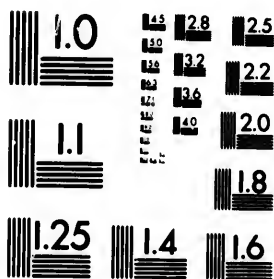
*Plin. lib. 2. cap. 48.*







**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

18  
20  
22  
24  
25

10  
11

roareth and stormeth, briefly becometh a winde, which is great or lesser according that the sulphury exalation which wrappeth it, breaketh it selfe and giueth it way, sometimes all at once, as we haue shewed before, and sometimes with longer time, according to the quantity of the matter whereof it is made, and according as, either more or lesse, it is moued by his contrary qualities.

The maruelous assurance of the good Mariners, in their sea-labours.

But I cannot leaue vnmentioned the wonderful courage and assurance that good sailers haue in these windie conflicts, stormes and tempests, when as a ship being caried and mounted vpon mountaines of waters, and from thence let downe, as it were, into the profound depthes of the world, they clime among the tacklings and cordes, not onely to the maine top, and to the very height of the maine mast, but also, without ladder steps, to the top of another mast, fastened to the first, held onely with the force of their armes and feet, winding about the highest tacklings. Yea much more, that if, in this great tossing and rowling, it chanceth that the maine saile (which they call *Paphil* or *Papefust*) be vntied at the higher ends, he, who is first commanded, will put himselfe stradling vpon the maine yard (that is the tree which crossed the maine mast) and, with a hammer at his girdle, and halfe a dosen nailes in his mouth, will tie againe and make fast, that which was vntied, to the perill of a thousand liues. I haue sometimes heard great account made of a Switzers bouldnesse, who (after the siege of *Laon*, and the citie being rendered to the Kings obedience) climbed and stood stradling vpon the thwart branch of the crosse of our Ladies church steeple of the said towne, and stood there forked wise, his feet vpward: But that, in my iudgement, is nothing in regard of this, the said Switzer being vpon a firme and solide body; and without motion, and this contrariwise hanging ouer an vnconstant sea, tossed with boistrous windes, as we haue sometimes scene.

The boldnes of a Switzer, at *Laon*.

After we had left these Pirats spoken of before, we were  
vntill

vntill  
trary  
off fre  
ding  
day v  
did co  
better  
sea, th  
his sh  
herse  
her fla  
for sh  
so gre  
must  
on the  
Maste  
ry day  
ed, fo  
The sa  
Fourt  
Banck  
*Maloe*  
league  
I belee  
conter  
encour  
seemin  
tance.  
But  
found  
Philos  
found  
and by  
botton  
And th  
or 3. d

vntill the 18. of Iune, tossed with diuers, and almost contrary windes, without any discouery, but of one ship far off from vs, which we did not boord, and yet notwithstanding the very sight thereof did comfort vs. And the same day we met a ship of *Honfleur*, wherein Captaine *La Roche* did command, going for New-found-landes, who had no better fortune vpon the sea then we. The custome is at sea, that when some particular ship meeteth with the King his ship (as ours was) to come vnder the lee, and to present herselfe, not side by side, but bias wise: Also to pull down her flagge, as this Captaine *La Roche* did, except the flagge, for shee had non, no more had we, being not needfull in so great a voyage, but in approaching the land, or when one must fight. Our sailers did cast then their computation, on the course that we had made. For in euery ship, the Master, the Pilot, and Masters Mate doe write downe euery day of their courses, and windes that they haue followed, for how many houres, and the estimation of leagues. The said *La Roche* did account that they were then in the Fourty five degrees, and within a hundred leagues of the Bancke. Our Pilot, called Master *Oliuer Fleuriot*, of Saint *Maloe*, by his computation said that we were within 60. leagues of it: And Captaine *Foulques* within 120. leagues. I belecue he gaue the best iudgement. We receiued much contentment by the meeting of this ship, and did greatly encourage vs, seeing wee did begin to meete with ships, seeming vnto vs that wee did enter in a place of acquaintance.

But by the way a thing must be noted, which I haue found admirable, and which giueth vs occasion to play the Philosophers. For about the same 18. day of Iune, wee found the sea-water, during three daies space, very warme, and by the same warmth, our wine also was warme in the bottome of our ship, yet the aire was not hotter then before. And the 21. of the said moneth, quite contrarie we were 2. or 3. daies so much compassed with mistes and coldes, that

The 18. of Iune.

A ship.

An other ship.

The vailing of Marchands ships to a ship Royall.

Computation of the voyage.

Sea water milke warme, then colde.

Great cold.

we

The reason  
of this Anti-  
peristase, and  
the cause of  
the Ices of  
New-found-  
lande.

In the 16.  
chapter.  
Second ex-  
perience.

we thought our selues to be in the moneth of January, and the water of the sea was extreame colde. Which continued with vs vntill we came vpon the said Bancke, by reason of the said miltes, which outwardly did procure this colde vnto vs. When I seeke out the cause of this *Antiperistase*, I attribute it to the Ices of the North, which come floating downe vpon the coast and sea adioyning to New-foundland, and *Labrador*, which wee haue said else-where is brought thither with the sea, by her naturall motion, which is greater there, then else-where, because of the great space it hath to runne, as in a gulfe, in the depth of America, where the nature and situation of the vniuersall earth doth beare it easily. Now these Ices (which sometimes are seene in banckes of tennelagues length, and as high as Mountaines and hils, and thrice as deepe in the waters) holding, as it were, an Empire in this sea, driue out farre from them, that which is contrary to their coldnesse, and consequently doe binde and close on this side, that small quantity of milde temperature that the Summer may bring to that part, where they come to seat and place themselves. Yet for all that, I will not deny but this region in one and the selfe-same paralell is somewhat colder then those of our part of Europe, for the reasons that we will alleage heereafter, when we shall speake of the fowlnesse of seasons. Such is my opinion: being ready to heare another mans reason. And being mindefull heereof, I did, of purpose, take heed of the same, at my returne from New France, and found the same warmenesse of water (or very neere) though it was in the Moneth of September, within fivie or six daies sailing on this side of the said bancke, whereof we will now intreate.

CHAP.

Of the  
our con-  
fishing  
of bir-  
line  
th

**B**E  
w  
C  
not dry  
the sea  
their co-  
birds, v  
our par  
100. or  
birds,  
other c  
anone.  
like to  
sea, we  
said Ba  
a Thur  
The sa  
succes  
found  
made p

CHAP. XII.

*Of the great Bancke of Morues or Coddes : of the Sound :  
our comming to the said Bancke : the description thereof : the  
fishing of New-found-land-fish : and of birds : the greedinesse  
of birds, called by Frenchmen Hap-foyes, that is to say,  
liuer-catchers : diuers perils : the fauours of God :  
the causes of frequent and long mistes in the Western  
sea : Land-markes : the sight of it : maruellous  
odours : the boording of two Shaloupes, the  
landing at the Port du Moutton : the  
comming into Port Royall : of two  
Frenchmen remaining there  
alone amongst the  
Sauages.*

**B**Efore wee come to the Bancke, spoken of before, which is the great Bancke where the fishing of greene Cod-fishes is made (so are they called when they are not dry, for one must goe alande for the drying of them) the sea-faring-men, besides the computation they make of their course, haue warnings when they come neere to it, by birds, which are knowen : euen as one doth them of these our parts, returning backe into France, when one is within 100. or 120. leagues neere it. The most frequent of these birds, towards the said Bancke, be *Godes, Fouquets*, and other called *Happe-foyes*, for a reason that we will declare anone. When these birds then were seene, which were not like to them that we had seene in the middest of the great sea, we began to thinke our selues not to be farre from the said Bancke. Which made vs to sound with our lead vpon a Thursday the 22. of Iune, but then we found no bottom. The same day in the euening, we cast againe with better successe : for we found bottome at 36. fadams. The said sound is a peece of lead of seuen or eight pound waight, made piramidall wise, fastened at one or diuers liues : and

Warnings  
neere the  
great Bancke.  
Birds called  
by French-  
men, *Godes*,  
*Fouquets*,  
*Happesfoyer*.

What the  
sound is, and  
how it is cast.

at the biggest end, which is flat, one putteth some grease to it, mingled with butter: then all the sailes are stricken downe, and the sound cast: and when that the bottome is felt, and the lead draweth no more line, they leave off letting downe of it. So our sound being drawn vp, brought with it some small stones, with a white one, and a peece of shell, hauing moreouer a pit in the grease, whereby they iudged that the bottome was a rocke. I cannot expresse the loy that we had, seeing vs there, where we had so much desired to be. There was not any one of vs more sicke, every one did leape for loy, and did seeme vnto vs to be in our owne country, though we were come but to the halle of our voyage, at least for the time, that passed before we came to Port Royall, whither we were bound.

The arrival  
to the fish  
Bancke.

Of the word  
Bancke: and  
description of  
the fishing  
Bancke.

Heere I will, before I proceed any further, decipher vnto you, what meaneth this word (*Bancke*) which paradiuventure putteth some in paine to know what it is. They sometimes call Banckes a sandy bottome which is very shallow, or which is a drie at low water. Such places be mortall for ships that meete with them. But the Bancke whereof we speake, are mountaines grounded in the depth of the waters, which are raised vp to 30. 36. and 40. fadams, neere to the vpper face of the sea. This Bancke is holden to be of 200. leagues in length: and 18. 20. and 24. leagues broad, which being passed there is no more bottome found out, then in these parts, vntill one come to the land. The ships being there arriued, the sailes are rowled vp, and there, fishing is made of the greene fish, as I haue said, whereof we shall speake in the booke following. For the satisfying of my reader, I haue drawn it in my Geographical Map of New-found-land, with prickes, which is all may be done to represent it. There is, farther off, other banckes, as I haue marked in the said Map, vpon the which good fishing may be made: and many goe thither that know the places. When that we parted from Rochel, there was (as it were) a Forrest of ships lying at *Chef de Bois*,  
(whereof

(wh  
in a  
ing)  
H  
saile  
We  
Iohn  
pass  
mirt  
wh  
with  
man  
sick  
from  
harc  
of C  
mari  
of th  
tha  
wher  
pow  
they  
catch  
were  
sport  
some  
wrig  
the th  
himse  
pulle  
Capt  
In  
skinn  
work  
lus, v  
kinde



(whereof that place hath taken his name) which went all in a company to that country, preventing vs (in their going) but onely of two daies.

Having seene and noted the Bancke, wee hoisted vp sailes and bare all night, keeping still our course to the West. But the dawne of day being come, which was Saint Iohn Baptists Eue, in Gods name we pulled downe sailes, passing that day a fishing of Cod-fish, with a thousand mirthes and contentments, by reason of fresh meates, whereof we had asmuch as we would, hauing long before wished for them. *Monsieur De Poutrincourt*, and a yong man of *Retel* named *Le Feure*, who, by reason of the sea-sicknesse were not come out from their beds nor cabanes, from the beginning of the Nauigation, came vpon the hatches that day, and had the pleasure, not onely of fishing of Cod, but also of those birds, that bee called by French mariners, *Happe-foyes*, that is to say *Liner-catchers*, because of their greedinesse to deuour the liuers of the Cod-fishes that are cast into the sea, after their bellies bee opened, whereof they are so couetous, that though they see a great powle ouer their heads, ready to strike them downe, yet they aduventure themselues to come neere to the ship, to catch some of them, at what price soeuer. And they which were not occupied in fishing did passe their time in that sport. And so did they, by their diligence that wee tooke some thirty of them. But in this action one of our shipwrights fell downe in the sea. And it was good for him that the ship went but slow, which gaue him meanes to saue himselfe by taking hold of the rudder, from which he was pulled in a boord, but for his paines was well beaten by *Captaine Foulques*.

In this fishing we sometimes did take sea-dogges, whose skinned our loyners did keepe carefully to smooth their worke withall. Item, fishes called by Frenchmen *Merlus*, which be better then Cod, and sometimes another kinde of fish called *Bars*: which diuersity did augment our delight.

The fishing of Cod.

*Happe-foyes*  
Why so called.

So

Sea-dogges skinned.

delight. They which were not busie in taking neither fishes nor birdes, did passe their time in gathering the hearts, guts, and other inward parts (most delicate) of the Cod-fish, which they did mince with lard and spices, and with those things did make as good *Bolonia* sauliges, as any can be made in Paris, and we did eat of them with a very good stomacke.

Excellent  
sauliges  
made with  
the inwards  
of Codd.

On the euening we made ready to continue our course, hauing first made our Canons to roare, as well because of Saint Iohn his holy day, as for *Monseieur De Poutrin courts* sake, which beareth the name of that Saint. The next day some of our men tolde vs they had scene a Bancke of Ice. And thereupon was recited vnto vs, how that the yeare before, a ship of Olone was cast away, by approaching too neere to it, and that two men hauing saued themselues vpon the Ice, had this good fortune, that another ship, passing by, the men tooke them in aboard them.

Men saued  
vpon a banck  
of Ice.

The weather  
in those seas  
contrary, then  
in ours.

It is to be noted that from the 18. of Iune vntill we did arriue at Port Royall, we haue found the weather quite otherwise to that we had before. For (as we haue already said) we had colde mistes or fogges, before our comming to the Bancke (where we came in faire sunshine) but the next day, we fell to the fogges againe, which (a far off) we might perceiue to come and wrappe vs about, holding vs continually prisoners three whole daies, for two daies of faire weather that they permitted vs: which was alwaies accompanied with colde, by reason of the Summers absence. Yea euen diuerstimes we haue scene our selues a whole sennight, continually in thicke fogges, twice without any shew of Sunne, but very little, as I will recite heereafter. And I will bring forth a reason for such effects which seemeth vnto me probable. As we see the fire to draw the moistnesse of a wet cloath, opposite vnto it, likewise the sunne draweth moistnesse and vapours both from the sea and from the land. But for the dissoluing of them, there is heere one vertue, and beyond those parts another, according

The causes of  
mists on the  
West sea.

acco  
four  
from  
pou  
moi  
char  
pare  
hau  
ther  
main  
earth  
all lin  
the ca  
long  
that  
this  
earth  
to dif  
But w  
the sa  
long  
moist  
well,  
their  
them,  
& the  
them  
in the  
small  
with  
which  
but no  
ning t  
ground  
I he  
seeing

according to the accidents and circumstances that are found. In these our countries it raiseth vp vapours onely from the ground, and from our riuers : which earthly vapours, grosse and waighty, and participating lesse of the moist element, doe cause vs a hot aire, and the earth discharged of those vapours, becomes thereby more hot and parching. From thence it commeth, that the said vapors, hauing the earth of the one part, and the Sunne on the other, which heateth them, they are easily dissolued, not remaining long in the aire, vnlesse it be in winter, when the earth is waxen colde, and the Sunne beyond the *Equinoctiall* line, farre off from vs. From the same reason proceedeth the cause, why mistes and fogges be not so frequent, nor so long in the French seas, as in New-found-land, because that the Sunne, passing from his rising, aboue the grounds, this sea, at the comming thereof, receiueth almost but earthly vapours, and by a long space retaineth this vertue to dissolue very soone the exhalations it draweth to it selfe. But when it commeth to the middest of the Ocean, and to the said new found land, hauing eleuated and assumed in so long a course a great abundance of vapours, from this moist wide Ocean, it doth not so easily dissolue them, as well, because those vapours be colde of themselues, and of their nature, as because the Element which is neereft vnder them, doth simpathize with them, and preserueth them, & the Sunne beames being not holpen in the dissoluing of them, as they are vpon the earth. Which is euen seene in the land of that countrie, which (although it hath but small heat, by reason of the abundance of woods) notwithstanding it helpeth to disperse the mistes and fogges, which be ordinarily there, in the morning, during summer, but not as at Sea, for about eight a clocke in the morning they begin to vanish away, and serue as a dew to the ground.

I hope the reader will not dislike these small digressions, seeing they serue to our purpose. The 28. day of Iune, we

A small  
bancke.

A Mariner  
fallen by  
night in the  
sea.  
Land markes.

The discouery  
of S. Peters  
Hills.  
Plus discouery  
of the  
Land.

Cap. Breton.  
The Bay of  
Campseau.  
Eight daies.

found our selues vpon a little small bancke (other then the great Bancke whereof we haue spoken) at forty fadams : and the day following, one of our Sailers fell by night into the sea, which had beene lost if he had not met with a cable, hanging in the water. From that time forward, we began to descric land markes (it was New-found-land) by hearbes, mosses, flowers, and peeces of wood, that we alwaies met, abounding the more, by so much we drew neere to it. The 4. day of Iuly, our saylers, which were appointed for the last quarter watch, descric in the morning, verry early, euery one being yet a-bed, the Iles of *Saint Peter*. And the Friday the seuenth of the said Moneth, we discouered, on the Lar-boord, a Coast of land, high raised vp, appearing vnto vs, as long as ones sight could stretch out, which gaue vs greater cause of Ioy, then yet we had had, wherein God did greatly shew his mercifull fauour vnto vs, making this discouery in faire calme weather. Being yet farre from it, the bouldest of the company went vp to the maine top, to the end to see it better, so much were all of vs desirous to see this land, true and most delightfull habitation of Man. *Monsieur De l'outrincourt* went vp thither, and my selfe also, which we had not yet done. Euen our dogges did thrust their noses out of the ship, better to draw and smell the sweet aire of the land, not being able to containe themselues from witnessing, by their gestures, the ioy they had of it. We drew within a league neere vnto it, and (the sailes being let downe) we fell a fishing of Codde, the fishing of the Bancke beginning to faile. They which had before vs, made voyages in those parts, did iudge vs to be at *Cap Breton*. The night drawing on, we stood off to the sea-ward : the next day following, being the eighthe of the said moneth of Iulij, as we drew neere to the Bay of *Campseau*, came, about the euening, mists, which did continue eight whole daies, during the which we kept vs at sea, hulling still, not being able to goe forward, being resisted by West and South-West windes. During these eight

eigh  
God  
whic  
speci  
a clea  
hour  
that  
had n  
times  
some  
vpon  
after  
Cann  
vs so l  
we say  
from t  
wrath  
we fol  
vncor  
so abun  
greater  
to take  
a thou  
proach  
painted  
*Maloc*.  
but the  
Haning  
sight,  
did exc  
beuer g  
had bur  
*chiaz* al  
at his g  
that tin  
at Port

eight daies, which were from one Saturday to another, God ( who hath alwaies guided these voyages, in the which not one man hath beene lost by-sea) shewed vs his speciall fauour, in sending vnto vs, among the thicke fogs, a clearing of the Sunne, which continued but halfe an houre: And then had we sight of the firme land, and knew that we were ready to be cast away vpon the rockes, if we had not speedily stood off to sea-ward. A man doth sometimes seeke the land, as one doth his beloued, which sometimes repulseth her sweet heart very rudely. Finally, vpon Saturday the 15. of Iulij, about two a clocke in the after noone, the sky began to salute vs, as it were, with Cannon shots, shedding teares, as being sorry to haue kept vs so long in paine. So that faire weather being come again, we saw comming straight to vs (we being fower leagues off from the land) two Shaloupes with open sailes, in a sea yet wrathed. This thing gave vs much content. But whilst we followed on our course, there came from the land odors vncomparable for sweetnesse, brought with a warm wind, so abundantly, that all the Orient parts could not procure greater abundance. We did stretch out our hands, at it were to take them, so palpable were they, which I haue admired a thousand times since. Then the two shaloups did approach, the one manned with Sauages, who had a Stagge painted at their sailes, the other with Frenchmen of Saint *Maloes*, which made their fishing at the Port of *Camfean*, but the Sauages were more diligent, for they ariued first. Having neuer seene any before, I did admire, at the first sight, their faire shape, and forme of visage. One of them did excuse himselfe, for that he had not brought his faire beuer gowne, because the weather had beene foule. He had but one red peece of frize vpon his backe, and *Matachiaz* about his necke, at his wristes, about the elbow, and at his girdle. We made them to eat and drinke. During that time they tolde vs all that had passed, a yeere before, at Port Royall (whither we were bound. In the meane while,

Gods fauour  
in danger.

Calmeweather.

Maruellous  
odours cum-  
ming from  
the land.

The board-  
ing of two  
shaloupes.

The Sauages  
goodly men.

*Matachiaz* be-  
cakanets,  
necklaces,  
bracelets, and  
wrought  
girdles.

During the mists at sea, it is faire wether on land. A discommoditie brings a commodity.

The care of the sauages for their wiues.

The departing of some of our company going a land.

The Sauages doe trauell much way in small time.

while, them of Saint *Maloe* came, and tolde vs as much as the Sauages had. Adding that the wensday, when that we did shunne the rockes, they had scene vs, and would haue cometo vs with the said Sauages, but that they left off, by reason we put to the sea: and moreouer that it had beene alwaies faire weather on the land: which made vs much to maruell: but the cause thereof hath beene shewed before. Of this discommodity inay be drawne heereafter a great good, that these mists will serue as a rampier to the country, and one shall know with speed what is passed at sea. They tolde vs also that they had beene aduertised, some daies before, by other Sauages, that a ship was scene at Cap Breton. These French men of S. *Maloe* were men that did deale for the associates of *Monsieur De Monts*, and did complaine that the Baskes, or men of Saint Iohn *De Lu* (against the King his Inhibitions) had trucked with the Sauages, and caried away about six thousand Beauers skinnes. They gaue vs fundrie sorts of their fishes, as *Bars*, *Marlus* and great *Fletans*. As for the Sauages, before to depart, they asked bread of vs, to carry to their wiues, which was granted and giuen them, for they deserued it well, being come so willingly to shew vs in what part wee were. For since that time we sailed still in assurance, and without doubt.

At the parting, some number of ours went a land at the Port of *Campseau*, as well to fetch vs some wood and fresh water, whereof we had neede, as for to follow the Coast from that place to Port Royal in a shaloup, for we did feare lest *Monsieur De Pont* should be at our comming thither already gone from thence. The Sauages made offer to goe to him thorow the woods, with promise to be there within six dayes, to aduertise him of our comming, to the end to cause his stay, for as much as word was left with him to depart, vnlesse he were succoured within the 16. day of that moneth, which he failed not to doe: notwithstanding our men desirous to see the land neerer, did hinder the same

which

which  
wood  
which  
Th  
accu  
wind.  
wheth  
ward.  
wrigh  
too mu  
the sea  
Some  
selues  
trouble  
Which  
they so  
In the  
fusion,  
did say  
rope th  
withall  
a sickne  
After  
day 23.  
*Du* *Re*  
Sunne  
*Du* *Mo*  
being c  
aland se  
water, w  
and lodg  
*Monts* n  
by the  
We saw  
acornes,  
roses, G

which promised vs to bring vnto vs the next day the said wood and water, if we would approach neere the land, which we did not, but followed on our course.

The Tuesday, 17. of Iuly, we were, according to our accustomed maner, surprisid with mistes and contrary wind. But the Thursday we had calme weather, so that whether it were mist or faire weather we went nothing forward. During this calme, about the euening, a Shipwright, washing hanselise in the sea, hauing before drunke too much *Aqua-vita*, found himselfe ouertaken, the cold of the sea water striuing against the heat of this spirit of wine. Some Mariners, seeing their fellow in danger, cast themselves into the water to succour him, but his wits being troubled, he mocked them, and they not able to rule him. Which caused yet other Mariners to goe to helpe; and they so hindred one another, that they were all in danger. In the end there was one of them, which, among this confusion, heard the voice of *Monsieur De Poutrincourt*, who did say to him, *John Hay* looke towards me, and with a rope that was giuen him, he was pulled vp, and the rest withall were saued. But the Author of the trouble fell into a sicknesse, that almost killed him.

After this calme we had two daies of fogges. The Sunday 23. of the said moneth, we had knowledge of the Port *Du Rossignoll*, and the same day in the afternoone, the Sunne shining faire, we cast anker at the mouth of Port *Du Monton*, and we were in danger to fall vpon a shold, being come to two fathams and a halfe depth. We went aland seuentene of vs in number, to fetch the wood and water, whereof we had need. There we found the Cabins and lodgings, yet whole and vnbroken, that *Monsieur De Monts* made two yeeres before, who had sojourned there by the space of one moneth, as we haue said in his place. We saw there, being a sandy land, store of Oakes, bearing acornes, Cypressse-trees, Firre-trees, Bay-trees, Muskeroses, Goose-beries, Puisse, Raspies, Fernes, *Lysimachia*

Mistes.  
Calmes.

The perill of  
many Mari-  
ners.

Drunkennesse  
causeth diuers  
perils.

Port au Rossig-  
noll.

Port au Mou-  
ton.

What growes  
in the la. d at  
Port au Mou-  
ton.

(a kinde of *Sammonce*) *Calamus odoratus*, *Angelica*, and other simples, in the space of two houres that we taried there. We brought backe in our ship wilde peaze, which we found good. We had not the leasure to hunt after rabbits that be there in great number, not far from the Port, but we returned aboard as soone as we had laden our selues with water and wood: and so hoised vp sailes.

*Le Cap de Sable.*  
Long Iland.  
The Bay S.  
*Mary.*  
The arriuing to Port Royall.

Tuesday the 25. day we were about the *Cap De Sable*, in faire weather, and made a good iourney, for about the euening we came to sight of *Long Ile*, and the Bay of Saint *Marie*, but because of the night we put backe to the seaward. And the next day we cast anker at the mouth of Port Royall, where we could not enter by reason it was ebbing water, but we gaue two Cannon shot from our ship to salute the said Port, and to aduertise the Frenchmen that we were there.

Difficulties in comming in.

Thursday the 27. of Iuly we came in with the flood, which was not without much difficultie, for that we had the winde contrary, and gusts of winde from the mountaines, which made vs almost to strike vpon the rockes. And in these troubles our ship bare still contrary, the Poupe before, and sometimes turned round, not being able to doe any other thing else. Finally, being in the Port, it was vnto vs a thing maruellous to see the faire distance and largeness of it, and the mountaines and hills that inuironed it, & I wondered how so faire a place did remaine desert, being all filled with woods, seeing that so many pine away in the world, which might make good of this land, if onely they had a chiefe gouernor to conduct them thither. By little and little we drew neere to the Iland, which is right ouer against the fort where we haue dwelt since: An Iland I say, the most agreeable thing to be seene in her kinde, that is possible to bee desired, wishing in our selues to haue brought thither some of those faire buildings that are vnprofitable in these our parts, that serue for nothing, but to retire wilde fowle in, and other birds. We knew not yet, if

The beauty of the Port.

*Monseieur*

*Monseieur*  
exp  
in va  
And  
*Bertol*  
peop  
fort, t  
a mad  
heere  
great  
ment  
warke  
they f  
witho  
with a  
friends  
alarme  
there,  
match  
knew i  
ed at th  
of cano  
And fro  
shots, a  
ter was  
house,  
seeing t  
dowes.  
two me  
called  
heere,  
seruatio  
*Pont* ha  
wards  
himself  
chandis



*Monsieur Du Pont* was gone or no, and therefore we did expect that he should send some men to meet vs; but it was in vaine: for he was gone from thence 12. daies before. And whilest we did hull in the middest of the Port, *Memberton*, the greatest *Sagamos* of the *Souriquois* (so are the people called with whom we were) came to the Frenchfort, to them that were left there, being only two, crying as a madde-man, saying in his language; What! You stand heere a dining (for it was about noone) and doe not see a great ship that commeth heere, and we know not what men they are: Suddenly these two men ran vpon the bulwarke, and with diligence made ready the Canons, which they furnished with pellets & touch powder. *Memberton*, without delay, came in a Conow made of barkes of trees, with a daughter of his, to view vs: And hauing found but friendship, and knowing vs to be Frenchmen, made no alarme. Notwithstanding one of the two Frenchmen left there, called *La Taille*, came to the shore of the Port, his match on the cocke, to know what we were (though he knew it well enough, for we had the white Banner displayed at the toppe of the mast) and on the sudden foure volly of canons were shot off, which made innumerable echoes: And from our part, the fort was saluted with three Canon shots, and many musket shots, at which time our Trumpeeter was not slacke of his dutie. Then we landed, viewed the house, and we passed that day in giuing God thanks, in seeing the Sauages cabins, and walking thorow the medowes. But I cannot but praise the gentle courage of these two men, one of them I haue already named, the other is called *Miquelet*: which deserue well to bee mentioned heere, for hauing so freely exposed their liues in the conseruation of the welfare of New France. For *Monsieur Du Pont* hauing but one barke and a shaloupe, to seeke out towards New-found-land, for french ships, could not charge himselfe with so much furniture, corne, meat and marchandises as were there; which he had beene forced to cast

*Sagamos* signifieth Captain.

Praises of the two Frenchmen left alone in the fort of Port-Royall.

into the sea (and which had been greatly to our preiudice, and we did feare it very much) if these two men had not aduentured themselues to tary there, for the preseruing of those things, which they did with a willing and ioyfull minde.

## C H A P. XIII.

*The happy meeting of Monsieur Du Pont : his returne vnto Port Royall : reioycing : description of the confines of the said Port : coniecture touching the head and spring of the great Riuer of Canada : sowing of Corne : the returne of Monsieur Du Pont into France : the voyage of Monsieur De Pourtrincourt vnto the countrie of the Arrouchiquois : faire Rie sprung vp without tillage : the exercises and maner of luing in Port Royall : the Medowes of the riuer De L'Equille.*

The tilling of  
the ground.

The meeting  
with Monsieur  
Du Pont.

**T**He Friday, next day after our arriual, Monsieur De Pourtrincourt affected to this enterprife, as for himselfe, put part of his people to worke in the tillage and manuring of the ground, whilest the others were employed in making cleane of the chambers, and euery one to make ready that which belonged to his trade. In the meane time those people of ours that had left vs at *Camp-seau*, to come along the coast, met (as it were miraculously) with Monsieur Du Pont, among Islands, that be in great number in those parts. To declare how great was the ioy of each side, is a thing not to be expressed. The said Monsieur Du Pont, at this happy and fortunate meeting, returned backe to see vs in Port Royall, and to shup himselfe in the *Jonas*, to returne into France. As this chance was beneficiall vnto him, so was it vnto vs, by the meanes of his ships that he left with vs. For without that, we had been in such extremity that we had not been able to goe nor come any where, our ship being once returned into France. He  
arriued

arriued  
Port  
made  
pend  
for h  
drin  
drun  
A  
try v  
nuall  
broo  
hills a  
on th  
cann  
them  
wher  
that b  
ing w  
mong  
them  
nights  
will, b  
with n  
No  
ner fa  
felic  
it is lik  
by the  
bring t  
and dep  
shalt ea  
thee, a  
taines  
confir  
land th  
in you a

arrived there, on Monday the last of July, and tarried yet in Port Royall vntill the 28. of August. All this moneth we made merry. *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* did set vp and opened a Hogshed of wine, one of them that was giuen him for his owne drinking, giuing leaue to all commers to drinke as long as it should hold, so that some of them drunke vntill their caps turned round.

At the very beginning, we were desirous to see the country vp the riuer, where we found medowes, almost continually about twelue leagues of ground, among which, brookes doe run without number, which come from the hills and mountaines adioyning. The woods very thicke on the water shoares, and so thicke, that sometimes, one cannot goe thorow them. Yet for all that, I would not make them such as *Ioseph Acosta* reciteth those of *Peru* to be, when he saith: *One of our brethren, a man of credit, told vs, that being gone astray, and lost in the Mountaines, not knowing what part, nor which way he should goe, found himselfe among bushes so thicke, that he was constrained to trauell upon them, without putting his feet on the ground, a whole fortnights space.* I refer the beleeuing of that to any one that will, but this beleefe cannot reach so farre, as to haue place with me.

*Ioseph Acosta*  
lib. 4. ca. 30.

Now in the land whereof we speake, the woods are thinner farre off from the shoares and watrish places: And the felicity thereof is so much the more to be hoped for, in that it is like the land, which God did promise to his people, by the mouth of *Moyse*, saying: *The Lord thy God doth bring thee into a good land, of riuers of waters, with fountaines and deptes, which doe spring in fields, &c. A land where thou shalt eat thy bread without scarcitie, wherein nothing shall faile thee, a land whose stones are of Iron, and from whose Mountaines thou shalt digge brasse.* And further in another place, confirming the promises for the goodnesse and state of the land that he would giue them. *The country (saith he) wherein you are going for to possesse it, is not as the land of Egypt,*

Land like to that which God promised to his people. De ut 8. vers. 7. 8.

Deuter. 11. vers. 10.

Heere upon  
the 3. chap.

Abundance  
of brookes.

Iron stones.  
Mountaines  
of Brasse.

Lakes and  
brooks vpon  
the moun-  
taines.

The forme of  
a Raine bow,  
vnder a caue.  
They trauell  
three leagues  
in the woods.

from whence you are come foorth, where thou diddest sow thy seed, and wateredst it with the labour of thy feet, as a garden of hearbes. But the country thorow which you are going to passe, for to possesse it, is a land of mountaines and fields, and is watered with waters that raineth from heauen. Now according to the description that heeretofore we haue made of Port Royall, and the confines thereof, in describing the first voiage of *Monsieur De Monts*, and as yet we doe mention it heere, brookes doe there abound at will, and (for this respect) this land is no lesse happy than the country of the Gaules (now called France) to whom King *Agrippa* (making an oration to the Iewes recited by *Iosephus* in his warre of the Iewes) attributed a particular felicity, because they had store of domesticall fountaines: And also that a part of those countries is called *Aquitaine*, for the same consideration. As for the stones which our God promiseth that should be of iron, and the mountaines of Brasse, that signifieth nothing else, but the Mines of Copper, of Iron, and of Steele, whereof we haue already heeretofore spoken, and will speake yet heereafter. And as for the fields (whereof we haue not yet spoken) there be some on the West side of the said Port Royall. And about the Mountaines there be some faire ones, where I haue seene lakes and brookes, euen as in the vallies. Yea euen in the passage to come foorth from the same fort, for to go to sea, there is a brooke, which falleth from the high rockes downe, and in falling disperfeth it selfe into a small raine, which is very delightfull in Summer, because that at the foote of the rocke, there are caues, wherein one is couered, whilest that this raine falleth so pleasantly: And in the caue (wherein the raine of this brooke falleth) is made (as it were) a Raine-bow, when the Sunne shineth: which hath giuen me great cause of admiration. Once we went from our fort as farre as the sea thorow the woods, the space of three leagues, but in our returne we were pleasantly deceiued, for at the end of our iourney, thinking to be in a plaine champion country,

we

wef  
wre  
of in  
With  
whic  
haue  
is all  
there  
of, no  
great  
of 40  
worle  
kingh  
at the  
two c  
ther fi  
mirab  
*Europ*  
and to  
nother  
*Lins*, v  
eth fro  
discha  
Let  
our felu  
is more  
hath co  
and aft  
for the  
land by  
*trin*  
teene da  
French  
turnep  
day fol  
vaine, b

we found our selues on the top of a high Mountaine, and were forced to come downe with paine enough, by reason of snowes. But Mountaines be not perpetual in a country. Within 15. leagues of our dwelling, the country, thorow which the Riuer *L'Equille* passeth, is all plaine and euen. I haue seene in those parts many countries, where the land is all euen, and the fairest of the world. But the perfection thereof is, that it is well watered. And for witnesse whereof, not onely in Port Royall, but also in all New France, the great riuer of Canada is proofe thereof, which at the end of 400. leagues is as broad as the greatest riuers of the world, replenished with Isles and rockes innumerable: taking her beginning from one of the lakes which doe meet at the streame of her course (and so I thinke) so that it hath two courses, the one from the East towards France: the other from the West towards the South sea: which is admirable, but not without the like example found in our *Europe*. For the riuer which commeth downe to *Trent* and to *Verone* proceedeth from a lake which produceth another riuer, whose course is bent opposite to the riuer of *Lins*, which falleth into the riuer *Danube*. So the *Nile* issueth from a lake that bringeth forth other riuers, which discharge themselues into the great *Ocean*.

Country well watered.

Coniecture vpon the Spring of the great Riuer of *Canada*.

Let vs returne to our tillage: for to that must we apply our selues: it is the first mine that must be sought for, which is more worth than the treasures of *Atabalipa*: And he that hath corne, wine, cattell, wollen and linnen, leather, iron, and afterward Codde-fish, he needeth no other treasures, for the necessaries of life. Now all this is (or may be) in the land by vs described: vpon the which *Monsieur De Pourrincourt* hauing caused a second tillage to be made, in fifteene daies after his arriuall thither, he sowed it with our French corne, as well wheat and rie, as with hempe, flax, turnep seed, redish, cabidges & other seeds: And the eight day following, hee saw that his labour had not beene in vaine, but rather a faire hope, by the production that the ground

Which is the first mine.

Sowing of corne.

ground had already made of the seedes which she had received. Which being shewed to *Monsieur Du Pont*, was vnto him a faire subiect to make his relation in France, as a thing altogether new there.

20 Of August.

The 20. day of August was already come, when these faire shewes were made, and the time did admonish them, that were to goe in the voyage, to make ready. Whereunto they began to giue order, so that the 25. day of the same moneth, after many peales of ordinance, they waighed anchor to come to the mouth of the Port, which is commonly the first daies journey.

Cause of the voyage made into the country of the *Armon. chiquon.*

*Monsieur De Monts* being desirous to reach as farre into the South as he could, and seeke out a place very fit to inhabite, beyond *Malebarre*, had requested *Monsieur De Pontrincourt* to passe farther than yet he had done, and to seeke a conuenient Port in good temperature of aire, making no greater account of Port Royall than of *S. Croix*, in that which concerneth health. Whereunto the said *Monsieur De Pontrincourt* being willing to condescend, would not tarry for the spring time, knowing he should haue other employments to exercise himselfe withall. But seeing his sowings ended, and his field greene, resolved himselfe to make this voyage and discouery before winter. So then he disposed all things to that end, and with his Barke ankered neere to the *Jonas*, to the end to get out in company. Whilest they lay there for a prosperous winde the space of three daies, there was a Whale of meane bignesse (which the Sauages doe call *Maria*) who came euery day into the Port, with the morning floud, playing there within at her pleasure, and went away backe againe with the ebbe. And then, taking some leasure, I made, in French verses, a farewell to the said *Monsieur Du Pont* and his company, which I haue placed among the *Muses* of New France.

A whale in Port Royall.

Parting from Port Royall.

The 28. day of the said moneth each of vs tooke his course, one one way, and the other another, diuersly to God

God  
the v  
who  
to tru  
deliu  
sieur  
ther;  
sieur  
Croix  
Cham  
hinde  
he wa  
quite  
where  
fore w  
big, w  
Corn  
looke  
there,  
referre  
our sel  
habita  
that w  
be sent  
my self  
titions  
We ca  
was ve  
that be  
that ha  
make t  
heere,  
particu  
Carpe  
lers, E  
their t

Gods keeping. As for *Monsieur Du Pont* he purposed by the way to set vpon a Merchant of *Rone*, named *Boyer*, who (contrary to the Kings inhibitions) was in those parts to trucke with the Sauages, notwithstanding he had beene deliuered out of prison in *Rochell*, by the consent of *Monsieur De Poutrincourt*, vnder promise he should not go thither; but the said *Boyer* was already gone. And as for *Monsieur De Poutrincourt*, he tooke his course for the Ile of *S. Croix*, the Frenchmens first abode, hauing *Monsieur De Champdore* for master and guide of his Barke: But being hindered by the winde, and because his barke did leake, he was forced twice to put backe againe. In the end hee quite passed the *Bay Française*, and viewed the said Ile, where he found ripe Corne, of that which two yeares before was sowed by *Monsieur De Monts*, which was faire, big, waighty, and well filled. He sent vnto vs some of that Corne to *Port Royall*, where I was requested to stay, to looke to the house, and to keepe the rest of the company there, in concord. Whereunto I did agree (though it was referred to my will) for the assurance that we had among our selues, that the yeare following we should make our habitation in a warmer country beyond *Malebarre*, and that we should all goe in company, with them that should be sent to vs out of France. In the meane while I employed my selfe in dressing the ground, to make inclosures and partitions of Gardens, for to sow Corne and kitchin hearbes. We caused also a ditch to be made all about the fort, which was very needfull to receaue the waters and moistnesse, that before did run vnderneath among the rootes of trees, that had beene fallen downe: which paraduventure did make the place vnhealthfull. I will not stand in describing heere, what each of our other workmen and labourers did particularly make. It sufficeth that we had store of Ioyners, Carpenters, Masons, Stone-caruers, Locke-smithes, Taylers, Boord-lawyers, Mariners, &c. who did exercise their trades, which (in doing their duties) were very kindly

Faire Rie  
found at S.  
*Croix.*

Their mean-  
ing is to  
plant beyond  
*Malebarre* to  
the South-  
ward.  
A ditch profi-  
tably made.

What store of  
workemen  
and labourers  
in New  
France.

Their exer-  
cise and man-  
ner of life.

Mussels, Lap-  
sters, Crabs.

Good proui-  
sion of wilde-  
fowle.

What quan-  
tity of bread  
and wine.

Preseruatue  
against the  
sicknesse of  
New France.

A cleare and  
pure aire.

Allowance.

used, for they were at their owne liberty for three houres labour a day. The ouerplus of the time they bestowed it, in going to gather mussels, which are at low water in great quantity before the fort, or Lapsters, or Crabs, which are in Port Royall vnder the Rockes in great abundance, or Cockles, which are in euery part in the Oase, about the shores of the said Port: All that kinde of fish is taken without net or boate. Some there were that sometimes tooke wilde-fowle, but not being skilfull, they spoiled the game. And as for vs, our table was furnished by one of *Monsieur De Monts* men, who prouided for vs in such sort that we wanted no fowle, bringing vnto vs, sometimes halfe a dosen of birdes, called by French men, *Outards* (a kinde of wilde geese) sometimes as many mallardes, or wilde geese, white and gray, very often two or three dosen of larkes, and other kindes of birds. As for bread, no body felt want thereof, and euery one had three quarts of pure and good wine a day. Which hath continued with vs as long as we haue been there, sauing that, when they, who came to fetch vs, in stead of bringing commodities vnto vs, helped vs to spend our owne (as we shall haue occasion heereafter to declare) we were forced to reduce that portion to a pinte; and notwithstanding there was very often some thing more of extraordinary. This voyage (for this respect) hath been the best voyage of all, whereof we are to giue much praises to the said *Monsieur De Monts*, and his associates *Monsieur Macquin* and *Monsieur Georges* of Rochel, in prouiding so abundantly for vs. For truly I finde that this Septembrall liquor (I meane wine) is, among other things, a soueraigne preseruatue against the sicknesse of that country: And the spiceries, to correct the vice that might be in the aire of that region, which neuertheles I haue alwaies found very cleere and pure, notwithstanding the reasons that I may haue alleaged for the same, speaking heeretofore of the same sicknesse. For our allowance, we had Pease, Beanes, Rice, Prunes, Raisons, dry Codde,

Cod  
foeu  
tity  
uers  
men  
vnto  
it for  
any t  
mand  
our v  
for al  
as m  
them  
made  
vs Co  
W  
is, th  
wood  
the m  
or hea  
selues  
world  
green  
haue  
heard  
selues  
wood  
sing ev  
den w  
clouer  
not far  
*Monts*  
before  
might  
all the  
fatisfa



Codde, and salt flesh, besides Oyle and Butter. But whensoever the Sauages, dwelling neere vs, had taken any quantity of Sturgions, Salmons, or small fishes; Item, any Beavers,\* *Ellans*, *Carabous*, (or fallow Deere) or other beasts, mentioned in my farwell to New France, they brought vnto vs halfe of it: and that which remained they exposed it sometimes to sale publikely, and they that would haue any thereof did trucke bread for it. This was partly our maner of life in those parts. But although euery one of our workemen had his particular trade or occupation, yet for all that it was necessary to imploy himselfe to all vses, as many did. Some Masons and Stone-caruers applied themselves to baking, which made vs as good bread as is made in Paris. Also one of our Sawyers, diu. times made vs Coales in great quantitie.

Wherein is to be noted a thing that now I remember. It is, that being necessary to cut turffes to couer the piles of wood, heaped to make the said coales, there was found in the medowes three foot deepe of earth, not earth, but grasse or hearbes mingled with mudde, which haue heaped themselves yeerely one vpon another from the beginning of the world, not hauing bene mooued. Neuerthelesse the greene thereof serueth for pasture to the *Ellans*, which we haue many times seene in our medowes of those parts, in heards of three or foure, great and small, suffering themselves sometimes to bee approched, then they ran to the woods: But I may say moreouer, that I haue seene, in crossing two leagues of our said medowes, the same to be al trodden with trackes of *Ellans*, for I know not there any other clouen footed beasts. There was killed one of those beasts, not farre off from our fort, at a place where *Monseigneur De Monts* hauing caused the grasse to be mowed two yeares before, it was growen againe the fairest of the world. Some might maruell how those medowes are made, seeing that all the ground in those places is couered with woods. For satisfaction whereof, let the curious reader know, that in

\* A kinde of stagge or red Deere. The liberall nature of the Sauages.

Charcoale made in New France.

What earth is in the medowes.

*Ellans* in the Medowes.

high Spring tides, specially in March and September, the floud couereth those shores, which hindereth the trees there to take root. But euery where, where the water ouerfloweth not, if there be any ground, there are woods.

## CHAP. XIII.

*Their departing from the Ile of S. Croix : the baye of Marchin : Choükoet : vines and grapes : the liberality of the Sauages : the land and people of the Arrouchiquois : the cure of an Arrouchiquois wounded : the simplicitie and ignorance of the people : vices of the Arrouchiquois : suspicion : people not caring for clothes : corne sowed, and vines planted in the country of the Arrouchiquois : quantitie of grapes : abundance of people : dangerous Sea.*

**L**ET vs returne to *Monsieur de Poutrincourt*, whom we haue left in the Ile Saint Croix. Hauing made there a reuiew, and cherished the Sauages that were there, he went in the space of foure daies to *Pemptegoet*, which is that place so famous vnder the name of *Norombega*. There needeth not so long a time in comming thither, but he taried on the way to mend his barke : for to that end he had brought with him a Smith and a Carpenter, and quantity of boordes. He crossed the Iles, which be at the mouth of the riuer, and came to *Kimbeki*, where his barke was in danger, by reason of the great streames that the nature of the place procureth there. This was the cause why he made there no stay, but passed further to the Baie of *Marchin*, which is the name of a Captaine of the Sauages, who at the arriual of the said *Monsieur De Poutrincourt*, began to crie out aloud *Hé Hé* : whereunto the like answer was made vnto him. He replied, asking in his language, What are ye ? They answered him, Friends : And thereupon *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* approching, treated amity with him, and presented him with kniues, hatchets, and *Matachiaz*, that is to say, scarfes, karkenets and bracelets

*Pemptegoet.*

*Kimbeki.*

The bay of  
*Marchin.*

brac  
glaf  
racy  
him  
aide  
that  
pres  
to w  
the B  
the c  
ward  
is, an  
Sour  
gamo  
which  
Franc  
koet th  
where  
there b  
standi  
they fo  
foure f  
the gra  
other l  
liquor  
and bra  
are not  
rods di  
the soo  
grauell  
they no  
uen as i  
the We  
From  
Port of  
brough

bracelets made of beades, or quilts made of white and blew glasse; whereof he was very glad, as also for the confederacy that the said *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* made with him, knowing very well that the same would be a great aide and support vnto him. He distributed to some men that were about him, among a great number of people, the presents that the said *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* gaue him, to whom he brought store of *Orignac*, or *Ellans* flesh (for the Baskes doe call a Stagge, or *Ellan*, *Orignac*) to refresh the company with victuals. That done, they set sailes towards *Chouïkoet*, where the riuer of *Captaine Olmechin* is, and where the yeare following was made the war of the *Souriquois* and *Etechemius*, vnder the conduct of the *Sagamos Memberton*, which I haue described in verses, which verses I haue inserted among the *Muses* of New-France. At the entry of the Bay of the said place of *Chouïkoet* there is a great Island, about half a league compassè, wherein our men did first discouer any vines (for, although there be some in the lands neerer to *Port Royall*, notwithstanding there was yet no knowledge had of them) which they found in great quantity, hauing the truncke three and foure foot high, and as bigge as ones fist in the lower part, the grapes faire and great, and some as bigge as plummes, other lesser: but as blacke, that they left a staine where their liquor was spilled: Those grapes, I say, lying ouer bushes and brambles that grow in the same Island, where the trees are not so thicke as in other where, but are six or seuen rods distant a sunder, which causeth the grapes to be ripe the sooner; hauing besides a ground very fit for the same, grauelly and sandy. They taried there but two houres: but they noted, that there were no vines on the North-side, euen as in the *Ile Saint Croix* are no Cedar-trees, but on the Westside.

From this Island they went to the riuer of *Olmechin*, a Port of *Chauakoet*, where *Marchin* and the said *Olmechin* brought to *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* a prisoner of the

Confederacy.

The riuer of  
*Olmechin*,  
Part De *Cio-  
ualkoet*.An Island of  
vines.The riuer of  
*Olmechin*.

The galant-  
nelle of the  
Sauages.  
Port de la  
Heve.

The Sauages  
doe paint  
their faces.

The Oration  
of *Messamoet*

*Messamoets* af-  
fection to the  
French men.  
The largesse  
and liberality  
of *Messamoets*.

*Souriquois* (and therefore their enemy) which they gave vnto him freely. Two houres after there arriued two Sauages, the one an *Eteshemis*, named *Chkoudun*, Captaine of the riuer Saint *Iohn*, called by the Sauages *Oigondi*: The other a *Souriquois*, named *Messamoet*, Captaine or *Sagamos* of the riuer of the Port *De La Heve*, where this prisoner was taken. They had great store of Merchandises trucked with Frenchmen, which they were coming to vtter, that is to say, great, meane, and small kettles, hatchets, knives, gownes, short cloakes, red wastcoates, basket, and other things: whereupon there arriued twelue or fiftene boats, full of Sauages of *Olmechins* subiection, being in very good order, all their faces painted, according to their wonted custome, when they will seeme faire, hauing their bow and arrow in hand, and the quiuer, which they laid downe aboard. At that houre *Messamoet* began his Oration before the Sauages: Shewing them, how that in times past, they often had friendship together: and that they might easily overcome their enemies, if they would haue intelligence and serue themselues with the amitie of the Frenchmen, whom they saw there present to know their Country, to the end to bring commodities vnto them heereafter, and to succour them with their forces, which forces he knew, and he was the better able to make a demonstration thereof vnto them, by so much that hee which spake, had before time beene in France, and dwelt therewith *Monsieur De Grandmont*, Governour of Bayonne. Finally, his speech continued almost an houre with much vehemency and affection, with a gesture of body and armes, as is requisite in a good Oratour. And in the end he did cast all his merchandises (which were worth aboue 300. crownes, brought into that country) into *Olmechin* his boat, as making him a present of that, in assurance of the loue he would witnes vnto him. That done the night hastened on, and euery one retired himselfe. But *Messamoet* was not pleased, for that *Olmechin* made not the like orati-

on vnto him, nor requited his present: For the Sauages haue that noble quality, that they giue liberally, casting at the feet of him whom they wil honor, the present that they giue him: But it is with hope to receiue some reciprocall kinde- nesse, which is a kinde of contract, which we call, without name, *I giue thee, to the end thou shouldest giue me.* And that is done throrow all the world. Therefore *Messumoet* from that day had in minde to make war to *Olmechin*. Notwith- standing the next day in the morning, he and his people did returne with a boate laden with that which they had, to wit, Corne, Tabacco, Beanes and Pumpions, which they distributed heere and there. Those two Captaines *Olmechin* and *Marchin* haue since beene killed in the wars. In whose stead was chosen by the Sauages one named *Bessabes*, which since our returne hath beene killed by Englishmen: And in stead of him they haue made a Captaine to come from within the lands, named *Asticon*, a graue man, vali- ant and redoubted, which, in the twinkling of an eye, will gather vp 1000. Sauages together, which thing *Olmechin* and *Marchin* might also doe. For our Barkes being there, presently the Sea was seene all couered ouer with their boates, laden with nimble and lusty men, holding them- selues vp straight in them: which we cannot doe without danger, those boates being nothing else but trees hollow- ed after the fashion that we will shew you in the booke fol- lowing. From thence *Monsieur De Ventrin court* following on his course, found a certaine Port very delightfull, which had not beene seene by *Monsieur De Monts*: And during the voyage they saw store of smoke, and people on the shore, which inuited vs to come aland: And seeing that no account was made of it, they followed the barke along the sand, yea most often they did outgoe her, so swift are they, hauing their bowes in hand, and their quiuers vpon their backes, alwaies singing and dauncing, not taking care with what they should liue by the way. Happy people! Yea, a thousand times more happy than they which in these

The Sauages  
be liberall.

A Corne-  
country,  
beanes, pum-  
pions and  
grapes.

*Bessabes*.  
Englishmen.

*Asticon*.

A very good  
Port.

The agility of  
the *Armouchi-  
quois*.  
Happy people  
if they had  
the know-  
ledge of God.

these parts make themselves to be worshipped ; if they had the knowledge of God and of their saluation.

Fifes.

*Monsieur De Poutrincourt* hauing landed in this Port, behold among a multitude of Sauages a good number of fifes, which did play with certaine long pipes, made as it were with canes of reedes, painted ouer, but not with such an harmony as our Shepherds might doe : And to shew the excellency of their art, they whistled with their noses in gambolling, according to their fashion.

A Saouage wounded.

And as this people did runne headlong, to come to the Barke, there was a Saouage which hurt himselfe greuously in the heele against the edge of a rocke, whereby hee was enforced to remaine in the place. *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* his Chirurgion, at that instant would apply to this hurt that which was of his art, but they would not permit it, vntill they had first made their mouthes and mops about the wounded man. They then laide him downe on the ground, one of them holding his head on his lap, and made many baulings and singings, whereunto the wounded man answered but with a *Ho*, with a complaining voice, which hauing done they yeilded him to the cure of the said Chirurgion, and went their way, and the patient also after he had beene dressed : but two houres after hee came againe, the most iocund in the world, hauing put about his head, the binding cloth, wherewith his heele was wrapped, for to seeme the more gallant.

Their mouthes and mops about him that was hurt.

The presents of a Saouage woman.  
Hempe very faire.  
Beanes.  
Quantity of grapes.

The day following, our people entred farther into the Port, where being gone to see the Cabins of the Sauages, an old woman of an hundred or six score yeares of age, came to cast at the feet of *Monsieur De Poutrincourt*, a loafe of bread, made with the wheat called *Mabis*, or *Mais*, and in these our parts, Turkey or Saracin wheat, then very faire hempe of a long growth ; Item beanes, and grapes newly gathered, because they had seene French men eat of them at *Chauakoet*. Which the other Sauages seeing, that knew it not, they brought more of them than one would, emulating

ting  
nelle  
pape  
It wa  
of th  
woul  
ken i  
this p  
next  
wit,  
were  
are su  
naked  
turne  
portu  
will n  
their l  
foot s  
doe n  
but w  
peopl  
if thre  
access  
know  
after b  
cond  
peopl  
follow  
tending  
their m  
of our  
match  
and th  
weapo  
where  
ded to

ting one another ; and for recompence of this their kind-  
 nesse, there was set on their foreheads a fillet , or band, of  
 paper, wet with spittle, of which they were very proud.  
 It was shewed them, in pressing the grape into a glasse, that  
 of that we did make the wine which we did drinke. Wee  
 would haue made them to eat of the grape , but hauing ta-  
 ken it into their mouthes, they spitted it out, so ignorant is  
 this people of the best thing that God hath giuen to man,  
 next to bread. Yet notwithstanding they haue no want of  
 wit, and might be brought to doe some good things, if they  
 were ciuized, and had the vse of handy craftes. But they  
 are subtrill , theeuish , and traiterous , and though they be  
 naked, yet one cannot take heed of their fingers ; for if one  
 turne neuer so little his eies aside, and that they spie the op-  
 portunity to steale any knife, hatchet, or any thing else, they  
 will not misse nor faile of it ; and will put the theft between  
 their buttockes, or will hide it within the sand with their  
 foot so cunningly, that one shall not perceiue it. Indeed I  
 doe not wonder if a people poore and naked be theeuish ;  
 but when the heart is malicious, it is vnexcusable. This  
 people is such that they must be handled with terrour : for  
 if through loue and gentlenesse , one giue them too free  
 accesse, they will practise some surprize, as it hath beene  
 knowen in diuers occasions heeretofore, and will yet heere-  
 after be seene. And without deferring any longer , the se-  
 cond day after our comming thither , as they saw our  
 people busie awishing linnen, they came some fifty, one  
 following another, with bowes, arrowes and quiuers , in-  
 tending to play some bad part , as it was coniectured vpon  
 their maner of proceeding ; but they were preuented, some  
 of our men going to meet them , with their muskets and  
 matches at the cocke, which made some of them run away,  
 and the others being compassed in, hauing put downe their  
 weapons , came to a Peninsule , or small head of an Iland,  
 where our men were, and making a friendly shew, deman-  
 ded to trucke the Tabacco they had for our merchandises.

The simplici-  
 ty and igno-  
 rance of peo-  
 ple.

The bad na-  
 ture of the  
*Armouchi-  
 quois.*

Note how  
 the *Armouchi-  
 quois* must be  
 dealt withall.

Suspition for  
the coming  
of *Olmechin*.

The trouble  
of garments.

Corne sow-  
ed, and vines  
panted.

The next day the Captaine of the said place and Port, came into *Monsieur De Poutrincourts* barke to see him: we did maruell to see him accompanied with *Olmechin*, seeing the way was maruellous long to come thither by land, and much shorter by sea. That gaue cause of bad suspition, albeit he had promised his loue to the Frenchmen. Notwithstanding they were gently receiued. And *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* gaue to the said *Olmechin* a complet garment, wherewith being clothed, he viewed himselfe in a glasse, and did laugh to see himselfe in that order. But a little while after, feeling that the same hindred him, although it was in October, when he was returned vnto his Cabins, he distributed it to sundry of his men, to the end that one alone should not be ouerpestered with it. This ought to be a sufficient lesson to so many finnickal, both men and women, of these parts, who cause their garments and brest-plates to be made as hard and stiffe as wood, wherein their bodies are so miserably tormented, that they are in their clothes vnable to all good actions. And if the weather be too hot they suffer in their great bummes with a thousand folds, vn-supportable heats, that are more vn-tolerable, than the torments which felons and criminall men are sometimes made to feele.

Now during the time that the said *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* was there, being in doubt whether *Monsieur De Monts* would come to make an habitation on that coast, as he wished it, he made there a peece of ground to be tilled, for to sow corne and to plant vines, which they did, with the helpe of our Apothecary *Master Lewes Hebert*, a man, who, besides his experience in his art, taketh great delight in the tilling of the ground. And the said *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* may be heere compared to good father *Noah*, who after he had made the tillage most necessarie for the sowing of corne, he began to plant the vine, whose effects he felt afterwards.

As they were a deliberating to passe farther, *Olmechin* came

cam  
hau  
he fa  
ning  
ber o  
cour  
day t  
of th  
Bark  
thou  
put t  
to fau  
flore  
ed, a  
whic  
Mou  
place  
alike.  
befor  
Mont  
yeare  
be pre  
our go  
matur  
ry tha  
cause v  
Bark  
th



came to the Barke to see *Monsieur De Poutrincourt*, where  
 hauing taried certaine houres, either in talking or eating,  
 he said that the next day 100. boates should come, contain-  
 ing euery one six men : but the comming of such a num-  
 ber of men, being but troublesome, *Monsieur De Poutrin-*  
*court* would not tarry for them ; but went away the same  
 day to *Malebarre*, not without much difficultie, by reason  
 of the great streames and sholds that are there. So that the  
 Barke hauing touched at three foot of water onely, we  
 thought to be cast away, and we began to vnlade her, and  
 put the victuals into the Shaloup, which was behinde, for  
 to saue vs on land : but being no full sea, the barke came a-  
 floate within an hour. All this Sea is a land ouerflow-  
 ed, as that of Mount Saint *Michels*, a sandy ground, in  
 which, all that resteth is a plaine flat country as far as the  
 Mountaines, which are seene 15. leagues off from that  
 place. And I am of opinion, that as far as *Virginia*, it is all  
 alike. Moreouer, there is heere great quantity of grapes, as  
 before, and a country very full of people. *Monsieur De*  
*Monts* being come to *Malebarre* in an other season of the  
 yeare, gathered onely greene grapes ; which he made to  
 be preferued, and brought some to the King. But it was  
 our good hap to come thither in October, for to see the  
 maturity thereof. I haue heere before shewed the difficul-  
 ty that is found in entering into *Malebarre*. This is the  
 cause why *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* came not in with his  
 Barke, but went thither with a shaloup onely, which  
 thirty or forty Sauages did helpe to draw in : and  
 when it was full ride (but the tide doth not  
 mount heere but two fadames high, which  
 is seldome seene) he went out, and  
 retired himselfe into his said barke,  
 to passe further in the morning,  
 as soone as hee should or-  
 daine it.

100. boates  
of Sauages.

*Malebarre.*  
Perill of  
sholds.

Note.  
Great quanti-  
ty of grapes.

Heere upon  
chap. 7.

Two fa-  
dames tide  
onely.

## C H A P. XV.

*Dangers: vnknown languages: the making of a forge, and of an oven: Crosses set vp: plenty: a conspiracy: disobedience: murder: the flight of three hundred against tenne: the agility of the Arrouchiquois: bad company dangerous: the accident of a Musket that did burst: the insolency of the Sauages: their timorosity, impiety, and flight: the fortunate Port: a bad sea: reuenge: the counsell and resolution for the returne: new perils: Gods fauours: the arrivall of Monsieur De Poutrincourt at Port Royall: and how he was receined.*

Danger.

*Oigoudi, or S. Johns riuer. Sauages of sundry nations, vnderstand not one another.*

**T**He night beginning to giue place to the dawning of the day, the sailes are hoised vp, but it was but a very perilous navigation. For with this small vessell they were forced to coast the land, where they found no depth: going backe to sea it was yet woorse: in such wise that they did strike twice or thrice, being raised vp againe onely by the waues, and the rudder was broken, which was a dreadfull thing. In this extremity they were constrained to cast anker in the sea, at two fadams deepe, and three leagues off from the land: Which being done, *Daniel Hay* (a man which taketh pleasure in shewing forth his vertue in the perils of the sea) was sent towards the Coast to view it, and see if there were any Port. And as he was neere land he saw a Sauage, which did daunce, singing *yo, yo, yo*, he called him to come neerer, and by signes asked him if there were any place to retire ships in, and where any fresh water was. The Sauage hauing made signe there was, he tooke him into his shaloup, and brought him to the Barke, wherein was *Chkoudun* Captaine of the riuer of *Oigoudi*, otherwise *Saint Johns riuer*; who being brought before this Sauage, he vnderstood him no more than

chan  
preh  
uage  
was  
there  
the  
the  
for  
brea  
Fi  
whic  
ble  
set  
done  
amor  
ing  
migh  
fowle  
selues  
that  
Caliu  
Porp  
Sons  
all  
nece  
selues  
cles,  
uages  
baske  
wares  
grape  
red  
vines  
theca  
tries,  
plant

than did our owne people: true it is, that by signes he comprehended better than they what he would say. This Savage shewed the places, where no depth was, and where was any, and did so well indenting and winding heere and there, alway the led in hand, that in the end they came to the Port shewed by him, where small depth is: wherein the barke being arriued, diligence was vsed to make a forge for to mend her with her rudder, and an ouen to bake bread, because there was no more basket left.

A forge and an ouen made.

Fifteene daies were employed in this worke, during the which *Monsieur De Poutrincourt*, according to the laudable custome of Christians, made a Crosse to be framed and set vp, vpon a greene bancke, as *Monsieur De Monts* had donetwo yeeres before at *Kinibeki* and *Malebarre*. Now among these painefull exercises they gaue not ouer making good cheere, with that which both the sea and the land might furnish in that part. For in this Port is plentie of fowle, in taking of which many of our men applied themselves: specially the sea larkes are there in so great flights that *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* killed 28. of them with one Caliuier shot. As for fishes, there be such abundance of Porpeses, and another kinde of fish, called by Frenchmen *Sousfleurs*, that is to say, *Blowers*, that the sea seemes to be all couered ouer with them. But they had not the things necessary for this kinde of fishing, they contented themselves then with shell-fish, as of Oysters, Skalops, periwinkles, whereof there was enough to be satisfied. The Sauvages of the other side did bring fish, and grapes within baskets made of rushes, for to exchange with some of our wares. The said *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* seeing the grapes there, maruellously faire, commanded him that waited on his chamber, to lay vp in the Barke a burthen of the vines from whence the said grapes were taken. Our Apothecary *M. Lewes Hebert*, desirous to inhabit in those countries, had pulled out a good quantity of them, to the end to plant them in Port Royall, where none of them are, al-

A crosse set vp.

Abundance of larkes and fishes.

Shell fish.

Grapes. Rush-baskets.

though the soyle be there very fit for vines. Which neuerthelesse (by a dull forgetfulnesse) was not done, to the great discontent of the said *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* and of vs all.

The triall of  
French wea-  
pons before  
the Sauages.

Good instru-  
ction.

See in the  
next booke.

Signes of  
conspiracy.

After certaine daies, the said *Monsieur De Poutrincourt*, seeing there great assembly of Sauages, came ashore, and to giue them some terrour, made to march before him one of his men, flourishing with two naked swords. Whereat they much wondred, but yet much more when they saw that our Muskets did pierce thicke peeces of wood, where their arrowes could not so much as scratch. And therefore they neuer assailed our men, as long as they kept watch. And it had beene good to sound the Trumpet at euery houres end, as Captaine *James Quartier* did. For (as *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* doth often say) *One must neuer laie bait for theeues*, meaning that one must neuer giue cause to an enemy to thinke that he may surprise you: But one must alwaies shew that he is mistrusted, and that you are not asleepe, chiefly when one hath to doe with Sauages, which will neuer set vpon him that resolutely expects them; which was not performed in this place by them that bought the bargain of their negligence very deare, as we will now tell you.

Fifteene daies being expired, the said *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* seeing his barke mended, and nothing remaining to be done, but a batch of bread, he went some 3. leagues distant within the land, to see if he might discouer any singularity: But in his returne he and his men perceaued the Sauages running away thorow the woods in diuers troupes of 20. 30. and more; some bowing themselues as men that would not be scene: others hiding themselues in the grasse not to be perceiued: others carrying away their stufte, and Canowes full of corne, for to betake them to their heeles: Besides the women transporting their children, and such stufte as they could with them. Those actions gaue cause to *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* to thinke that this people did  
plot

plot  
mand  
tire t  
often  
like t  
rite, t  
till ni  
*Mon*  
passed  
barke  
vnto t  
to the  
master  
which  
(being  
addict  
before  
some o  
uages,  
came a  
very ea  
woodd  
sleepe  
they set  
killed t  
running  
watch v  
our men  
cry, eue  
on their  
them w  
ber, but  
*Du Pon*  
thecary  
said *M*  
him) ca

plot some bad enterprife. Therefore being arriued he commanded his people, which were a making of bread, to retire themselues into their Barke. But as yong people doe often forget their duty, these hauing some cake, or such like thing, to make, had rather follow their likerish appetite, than to doe that which was commanded them, taried till night without retiring themselues. About midnight *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* thinking vpon that which had passed the day before, did aske whether they were in the barke; and hearing they were not, he sent the shaloupe vnto them, to command and bring them aboard, whereto they disobaiied, except his Chamberlain, who feared his master. They were five, armed with muskets and swords, which were warned to stand still vpon their guard, and yet (being negligent) made not any watch, so much were they addiècted to their owne wils. The report was, that they had before shot off two muskets vpon the Sauages, bicause that some one of them had stolne a hatchet. Finally, those Sauages, either prouoked by that, or by their bad nature, came at the breake of day without any noise (which was very easie to them, hauing neither horses, waggons nor wooden-shooes) euen to the place where they were asleepe: And seeing a fit opportunity to play a bad part, they set vpon them with shots of arrowes, and clubs, and killed two of them. The rest being hurt began to crie out, running towards the sea shoare. Then hee which kept watch within the barke, cried out all affrighted, O Lord! our men are killed, our men are killed. At this voice and cry, euery one rose vp, and hastily, not taking leasure to fit on their cloathes, nor to set fire to their matches, ten of them went into the shaloupe, whose names I do not remember, but of *Monsieur Champlain*, *Robert Granè* (*Monsieur Du Pont* his sonne) *Daniel Hay*, the Chirurgion, the Apothecary, and the Trumpeter: All which (following the said *Monsieur De Poutrincourt*, who had his sonne with him) came aland vnarmed. But the Sauages ran away as

Yong men  
disobedient.

*Monsieur De  
Poutrincourts*  
care.

Disobedi-  
ence.

Murder done  
by the Sau-  
ages.

Succour.

fast

fast as euer they could, though they were aboute three hundred, besides them that were hidden in the grasse (according to their custome) which appeared not. Wherein is to be noted how God fixeth, I know not what terror in the face of the faithfull, against infidels and miscreants, according to his sacred word, when he saith to his chosen people: *None shall be able to stand before you. The Lord your God shall put a terror and feare of you ouer all the earth, vpon which you shall march.* So we see that 135000. *Madianites*, able fighting men, ran away and killed one another before *Gedeon*, which had but 300. men. Now to thinke to follow after these *Sauages*, it had beene but labour lost, for they are too swift in running: But if one had Horses there, they might pay them home very soundly, for they haue a number of small paths, leading from one place to another (which is not in *Port Royall*) and their woods are not so thicke, and haue besides store of open land.

Whilest that *Monsieur De Poutrin court* was comming ashore, there was shot from the Barke some small cast peeces vpon some *Sauages*, that were vpon a little hill, and some of them were seene fall downe, but they be so nimble in sauing their dead men, that one knew not what iudgement to make of it. The said *Monsieur de Poutrin court*, seeing he could get nothing by pursuing of them, caused pits to be made to bury them that were dead, which I haue said to be two, but there was one that died at the waters side, thinking to saue himselfe, and a fourth man which was so sorely wounded with arrow shots, that hee died being brought to *Port Royall*; the fifth man had an arrow sticking in his brest, yet did scape death for that time: But it had beene better he had died there: for one hath lately tolde vs that he was hanged in the habitation that *Monsieur De Monts* maintaineth at *Kebeck* in the great riuer of *Canada*, hauing beene the author of a conspiracy made against his Captaine *Monsieur Champlain*, which is now there. And as for this mischiefe it hath beene procured by the

*Deutero. 11.  
vers. 25.*

*Judges 7. 8.*

*Armoichiquois  
be swift.*

The burying  
of the dead.

Conspiracy.

the f  
beca  
der a  
whic  
beca  
ding  
Bark  
foun  
vpon  
thore  
In  
boue  
a mus  
bled  
by ot  
the de  
of the  
But th  
ter the  
did fir  
accust  
and ha  
rie, an  
aduen  
who,  
fore, l  
vnto th  
for the  
meane  
to the p  
led vp  
corps,  
their sp  
this, tu  
with th  
howlin

the folly and disobedience of one, whom I will not name, because he died there, who plaid the cocke and ringleader among the yong men that did too lightly beleue him; which otherwise were of a reasonable good nature; and because one would not make him drunke, he sware (according to his custome) that hee would not returne into the Barke, which also came to passe. For the selfesame was found dead, his face on the ground, hauing a little dogge vpon his backe, both of them shot together, and pierced thorow with one and the selfesame arrow.

In this bad occurrence, *Monsieur Du Ponts Sonne*, a boue named, had three of his fingers cut off, with a splint of a musket, which being ouer charged did burst, which troubled the company very much, that was afflicted enough by other occasions: Neuertheless the last dutie towards the dead was not neglected, which were buried at the foot of the Crosse that had bene there planted, as is before said. But the insolencie of this Barbarous people was great, after the murders by them committed; for that as our men did sing ouer our dead men, the funerall seruice and praiers accustomed in the church, these raskals, I say, did dance and howled a far off, reioycing for their traitcrous trecherie, and therefore, though they were a great number, they aduentured not themselues to come and assaile our people, who, hauing at their leasure done what we haue said before, because the sea waxed very low, retired themselues vnto the Barke, wherein remained *Monsieur Champdorè*, for the gard thereof. But being low water, and hauing no meanes to come aland, this wicked generation came againe to the place where they had committed the murther, pulled vp the Crosse, digged out and vburied one of the dead corps, tooke away his shirt, and put it on them, shewing their spoiles that they had carried away: And besides all this, turning their backs towards the Barke, did cast sand with their two hands betwixt their buttockes in derision, howling like woolues: which did maruellously vex our

O

people,

Leaud companie casteth yeong men away.

Rash oathes take sometimes effect to the costs of the sweaters.

Accident by a Musket burst.

The insolencie of the Sauages.

The timorouinesse of the Sauages.

The impiety of the Sauages.

people, which spared no cast peeces shots at them; but the distance was very great, and they had already that subtilty as to cast themselues on the ground when they saw the fire put at it, in such sort that one knew not whether they had beene hurt or no, so that our men were forced, nill or will, to drinke that bitter potion, attending for the tide, which being come, and sufficient to carry them aland, as soone as they saw our men enter into the shaloup, they ran away as swift as gray-hounds, trusting themselues on their agilitie. There was with our men a *Sagamos* named *Schkon-dun*, spoken of before, who much disliked their pranks, and would alone goe and fight against all this multitude, but they would not permit him, so they set vp the Crosse againe with reuerence, and the body which they had digged vp was buried againe, and they named this Port,

The Sauages  
flight.

The courage  
of the Saga-  
mos *Schkon-  
dun*.

Port Fortunè. *Port Fortunè.*

The next day they hoised vp sailes, to passe further and discover new lands, but the contrary winde constrained them to put backe, and to come againe into the said Port. The other next day after, they attempted againe to goe farther, but in vaine, and they were yet forced to put backe vntill the winde should be fit. During these attempts, the Sauages (thinking, I beleue, that that which had passed betweene vs was but a iest and a play) would needs come againe familiarly vnto vs, and offered to truck, dissembling that they were not them that had done those villanies, but others, which, they said, were gone away. But they were not aware of the fable, how the *Storke* being taken among the *Cranes*, {which were found doing some dammage, was punished as the others, notwithstanding she pleaded that she was so far from doing any harme, that contrariwise she did purge the ground from Serpents, which she did eat. *Monsieur De Poutrin-court* then suffered them to approach, and made as though he would accept of their wares, which were Tabacco, Carkenets and bracelets made with the shels of a fish called *Vignaux*. (and *Esur-*

The shelles of  
mother of  
pearles.

*gni*.

*gni*  
b  
age)  
bean  
And  
man  
matc  
that  
string  
shoul  
he ha  
of hi  
busie  
exec  
he in  
ken,  
wher  
or se  
well  
the p

Th  
altho  
tle for  
off, t  
led L  
red, a  
red,  
courf  
was n  
solued  
court  
had le  
Port.

Vp  
weigh  
dange  
courf



gni by *James Quartier* in the discouery of his second voyage) of great esteeme among them : Item of their Corne, beanes, bowes, arrowes, quiuers, and other small trash. And as the society was renewed the said *Poutrincourt* commanded to nine or ten that were with him, to make the matches of their Muskets round, like to a round snare, and that when he should giue a signe, euery one should cast his string vpon the Sauages head that should be neere him, and should catch him, euen as the hangman doth with him that he hath in hand : And for the effecting of this, that halfe of his people should goe aland, whilest the Sauages were busie a trucking in the shaloup : which was done; but the execution was not altogether according to his desire. For he intended to serue himselfe with them that should be taken, as of slaues to grind at the hand-mill and to cut wood; wherein they failed by ouer much haste. Neuerthelesse six or seuen of them were cut in peeces, which could not so well run in the water as on the land, and were watched at the passage, by those of our men that were aland.

Stratagem.

Reuenge.

That done, the next day they indeuored to goe farther, although the winde was not good, but they went but a little forward, and saw onely an Iland six or seuen leagues off, to which there was no meanes to come, and it was called *L'ile douteuse*, the doubtfull Ile, which being considered, and that of one side the want of victuals was to be feared, and of the other that the winter might hinder their course, and besides they had two sicke men, of whom there was no hope of recouery; counsell being taken it was resolved to returne into Port Royall : *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* besides all this, being yet in care for them whom he had left there, so they came againe for the third time into Port *Fortune*, where no Sauage was seene.

*L'ile douteuse.*

Resolution for the returne.

Vpon the first winde, the said *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* weighed anker for the returne, and being mindfull of the dangers passed he sailed in open sea : which shortned his course, but not without a great mischiefe of the rudder,

Their returne. Perill.

Menane.

Perill.

A very swift  
current.

Perill.

Deut. 32. ver.  
39.Good confi-  
derations.

which was againe broken : in such sort that being at the mercy of the waues, they arriued in the end, as well as they could among the Ilands of *Norombega* where they mended it. And after their departure from the said Ilands they came to *Menane*, an Iland about six leagues in length, betweene *S. Croix* and *Port Royall*, where they taried for the winde, which being come somewhat favourable, parting from thence new mischances happened. For the shaloup being tied at the Barke, was stricken with a sea so roughly, that with her nose, shee brake all the hinder part of the said barke, wherein *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* and others were. And moreover not being able to get to the passage of the said *Port Royall*, the tide (which runneth swittly in that place) carried them towards the bottom of *Bay Françoise*, from whence they came not forth easily, and they were in as great danger as euer they were before, for as much as seeking to returne from whence they came, they saw themselves carried with the winde and tide towards the Coast, which is high rockes and downe sales, where, vnesse they had doubled a certaine point that threatned them of wrake they had beene cast away. But God will, in high enterprises, triethe constancy of them that fight for his name, and see if they will wauer : He bringeth them to the doore of death, and yet holdeth them by the hand, to the end they fall not into the pit, as it is written : *It is I, it is I, and there is none other God with me. I kill, and make a liue : I wound, and I heale : and there is no body that may deliuer any out of my hand.* So we haue said heeretofore, and seene by effect, that although in those Navigations a thousand dangers haue presented themselves, notwithstanding not one man hath beene lost by the sea, although that of them, which doe onely go for fishing, and to trade for skins, many there be that perish there : witnessse foure fisher men of *S. Maloe*, that were swallowed vp in the waters, being gone afishing, when as we were vpon our returne into France : God being willing that we should acknowledge to hold this benefit

nesfit  
the c  
auth  
uctou  
estab  
haue  
fauou  
say as  
Yet n  
A  
Wha  
A  
Af  
of U  
ges v  
court  
wher  
toget  
pecte  
more  
in dar  
my se  
And f  
haue p  
title o  
More  
a stior  
of Fra  
there  
pœslic  
Mon  
his qu  
with  
of the

nefit of him, and to manifest by that meanes his glory, to the end that sensibly men may see that it is he, which is the author of these holy enterprises, which are not made of covetousnes, nor by vniust effusion of blood, but of a zeale to establish his name and his greatnesse among nations that haue no knowledge of him. Now after so many heavenly fauours, it is the part of them that haue receiued them, to say as the Kingly *Psalmist*, well beloued of God :

*Yet neuerthelesse by thy right hand thou holdst me euer fast :*

*And with thy counsell dost me guide to glory at the last.*

*What thing is there that I can wish but thee in Heaue above ?*

*And in the Earth there is nothing like thee that I can loue.*

*Psal. 73. vers.  
23. 24.*

After many perils ( which I will not compare to them of *Ulysses*, nor of *Aeneas*, fearing to defile our holy voyages with prophane impurity ) *Monsieur De Poutrin-court* arriued in Port Royall the 14. day of Nouember, where we receiued him ioyfully, and with a solemnity altogether new in that part. For about the time that we expected his returne (with great desire, and that so much the more, that if any harme had happened him, we had beene in danger to haue confusion among our selues ) I aduised my selfe to shew some iollity going to meet him, as we did. And for as much as it was in French verses made in haste, I haue placed them with the *Muses of Nova Francia* by the title of *Neptunes Thea:er*, whereunto I refer the Reader. Moreouer to giue greater honour to the returne, and to our action, we did place ouer the gate of our Fort, the Armes of France, enuironed with Laurell Crownes ( whereof there is great store along the woods sides ) with the Kings pœsie, *Duo protegit vnus*. And vnder, the Armes of *Monsieur De Monts*, with this inscription, *Dabit Deus his quoque finem* : And those of *Monsieur De Poutrin-court*, with this other inscription, *Inuia virtuti nulla est via*, both of them also enuironed with garlands of Bayes.

The arriual  
of *Monsieur De  
Poutrin-court.*

## CHAP. XVI.

*The condition of the corne which they sowed : the institution of the order of Bon temps : the behaviour of the Sauvages among the Frenchmen : the state of winter : why raines and fogges be rare in this season : why raine is frequent betweenc the tropicks : snow profitable to the ground : the state of Ianuary : conformity of weather in the ancient and New France : Why the spring is slow : the tilling of gardens : their Crop : a water Mill : a Manna of Herrings : preparation for the returne : Monsieur De Poutrincourts invention : the Sauvages admiration : Newes from France.*

The state of  
Corne.

Coales.  
The vse of the  
compasse in  
land voiaiges.

The instituti-  
on of the or-  
der of Bon  
temps.

**T**He publike reioycing being finished, *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* had a care to see his corne, the greatest part whereof he had sowed two leagues off from our Fort, vp the riuier *L' Equille* : and the other part about our said Fort : and found that which was first sowed very forward, but not the last, that had beene sowed the sixth and ten daies of Nouember, which notwithstanding did grow vnder the snow, during Winter, as I haue noted it in my sowings. It would be a tedious thing to particularise all that was done amongst vs during Winter : as to tell how the said *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* caused many times coales to be made, the forge-coale being spent : That he caused waies to be made thorow the woods : That we went thorow the Forests by the guide of the Compasse, and other things of such nature. But I will relate that, for to keepe vs merry and cleanly, concerning victuals, there was an order established at the table of the said *Monsieur De Poutrincourt*, which was named *L' ordre de bon temps*, the order of good time (or the order of mirth) at first inuented by *Monsieur Champlain*, wherein they (who were of the same table)

table)  
fifteen  
that w  
so wel  
parts  
aux O  
as goo  
at farr  
before  
ing, a  
was o  
wene  
and at  
was th  
or Ste  
made  
his na  
hand  
was w  
follow  
was a  
traine  
Colan  
that c  
tofore  
Outa  
Item,  
uers,  
*Niba*  
with  
shop  
ter st  
(who  
uers  
gion  
whe

table) were euery one at his turne and day (which was in  
fifteene daies once) Steward and Cater. Now his care was  
that we should haue good and worshipfull fare, which was  
so well obserued, that (although the Belly-Gods of these  
parts doe often reproch vnto vs that we had not *La Rue*  
*aux Ours* of Paris with vs) we haue ordinarily had there,  
as good cheare as we could haue at *La Rue aux Ours*, and  
at farre lesser charges. For there was none, but (two daies  
before his turne came) was carefull to goe a hunting or fish-  
ing, and brought some dainty thing, besides that which  
was of our ordinary allowance. So well, that at breakfast  
we neuer wanted some modicum or other, of fish or flesh:  
and at the repast of dinners and suppers, yet lesse; for it  
was the great banquet, where the Governour of the feast,  
or Steward (whom the Sauages doe call *Atoetegi*) hauing  
made the Cooke to make all things ready, did march with  
his napkin on his shoulder, and his staffe of office in his  
hand, with the colar of the order about his necke, which  
was worth aboue foure crownes, and all them of the order  
following of him, bearing euery one a dish. The like also  
was at the bringing in of the fruit, but not with so great a  
traine. And at night after grace was said, he resigned the  
Colar of the order, with a cup of wine, to his successor in  
that charge, and they dranke one to another. I haue heere-  
tofore said that we had abundance of fowle, as Mallards,  
*Outards*, Geese, gray and whit, Partridges and other birds:  
Item, of *Ellans* (or stagge flesh) of *Caribous* (or Deere) Be-  
uers, Otters, Beares, Rabbets, Wilde-cats (or *Leopards*)  
*Nibachés* and such like, which the Sauages did take, wher-  
with we made as good dishes of meat, as in the Cookes  
shops that be in *La rue aux Ours* (Beare street) and grea-  
ter store: for of all meates none is so tender as *Ellans* flesh  
(whereof we made good pasties) nor so delicate as the Be-  
uerstaile. Yea we haue had sometimes halfe a dosen Stur-  
gions at one clap, which the Sauages did bring to vs, part  
whereof we did take, paying for it, and the rest was per-  
mitted

*La Rue aux*  
*Ours*, or Beare  
street, is, as  
Pic-corner,  
or such a  
Cooke place  
in London.

Store of Stur-  
gions.

Before in  
chap. 13.

The vse of  
the Sauages.

The Sauages  
haue care of  
the French-  
men.

Mortality.

Bad winde.

mitted them to sell publikely, and to truck it for bread, whereof our people had abundantly. And as for the ordinarie meat brought out of France, that was distributed equally, as much to the least as to the biggest. And the like with wine, as we haue said. In such actions we had alwaies 20. or 30. Sauages, men, women, girles and boies, who beheld vs doing our offices. Bread was giuenthem *gratis*, as we doe heere to the poore. But as for the *Sagamos Memberton* and other *Sagamos* (when any came to vs) they sat at table eating and drinking as we did: and we tooke pleasure in seeing them, as contrariwise their absence was irkesome vnto vs: as it came to passe three or foure times that all went away to the places where they knew that game and Venison was, and brought one of our men with them, who liued some six weekes as they did without salt, without bread and without wine, lying on the ground vpon skinnes, and that in snowy weather. Moreouer they had greater care of him (as also of others that haue often gone with them) than of themselues, saying, that if they should chance to die, it would be laid to their charges to haue killed them: And heereby it may be knowen that we were not (as it were) pent vpin an Iland as *Monsieur De Villegagnon* was in *Brasill*. For this people loue Frenchmen, and would all, at a neede, arme themselues for to maintaine them.

But, to vse no digression, such government as we haue spoken of, did serue vs for preseruatiues against the country disease. And yet foure of ours died in February and March, of them who were of a fretful conditiō, or sluggish. And I remember I obserued that all had their lodgings on the West side, and looking towards the wide open Port, which is almost foure leagues long, shaped ouale-wise, besides they had, all of them, ill bedding. For the former sicknesses, and the going away of *Monsieur Du Pont*, in that maner as we haue said, caused the quilt beds to be cast away, for they were rotten. And they that went with the said

said  
kers,  
ple h  
siques  
In the  
selues  
when  
dence  
W  
neith  
whet  
the S  
to rai  
a cou  
the se  
those  
as on  
betw  
both  
than  
hauin  
hee d  
heat;  
they  
they  
Sum  
more  
serue  
they  
haue  
See  
raines  
likew  
whic  
melte  
in Fe

said *Monsieur Du Pont* carried away the sheetes and blankets, challenging them as theirs. So that some of our people had sore mouthes, and swollen legges, like to the *Phthiſiques* : which is the sickneſſe that God ſent to his people in the deſert, in puniſhment for that they would fill themſelves with fleſh, not contenting themſelves with that whereof the deſert furniſhed them by the diuine prouidence.

We had faire weather almoſt during all the Winter. For neither raines nor fogges are ſo frequent there as heere, whether it be at ſea or on the land : The reaſon is, becauſe the Sunne beames, by the long diſtance, haue not the force to raiſe vp vapours from the ground heere, chiefly in a country all woody. But in Summer it doth, both from the ſea and the land, when as their force is augmented, and thoſe vapours are diſſolued ſuddenly or ſlowly, according as one approacheth to the *Equinoctial* line. For we ſee that betweene the two *Tropiques* it raineth in more abundance both at ſea and on the land, ſpecially in *Peru* and *Mexico*, than in *Africa*, becauſe the Sunne by ſo long ſpace of ſea, hauing drawen vp much moiſtneſſe from the maine Ocean, hee diſſolueth them in a moment by the great force of his heat ; where contrariwiſe towards the New found lands they maintaine themſelves along time in the aire, before they be turned into raine or be diſperſed : which is done in Summer (as we haue ſaid) and not in winter : and at ſea more than on the land. For on the land the morning miſts ſerue for a dew, and fall about eight a clocke : and at ſea they dure two, three, and eight daies, as oftentimes wee haue tried.

Seeing then wee are ſpeaking of Winter, wee ſay that raine being in thoſe parts rare, in that ſeaſon, the Sunne likewiſe ſhineth there very faire, after the fall of ſnowes, which we haue had ſeuē or eight times, but it is eaſily melted in open places, and the longeſt abiding haue beene in February. How ſo euer it be, the ſnow is very profitable

*Phthiſes.*  
Numbers. xi.  
verſ. 33. and  
Pſalm. 106,  
verſ. 15.

The ſtate of  
Winter weather.  
Why raine  
and miſts be  
ſcarſe in winter.

Why it raineth  
betweene  
the *Tropiques*.

Snow is profitable.

ble for the fruits of the earth, to preserve them against the frost, and to serve them as a fur-gowne. Which is done by the admirable providence of God for the preservation of men, and as the Psalme saith,

Psal. 147.  
vers. 16.

*He giueth Snow like wooll, bore frost  
Like ashes he doth spread,  
Like morsels casts his Ice.*

Frosts when they are.

The state of January.

Conformity of weather in East and West France.

And as the skie is seldome covered with clouds towards New found landes in Winter time, so are there morning frostes, which doe increase in the end of Ianuary, Februa- rie and in the beginning of March, for vntill the very time of Ianuarie, we kept vs still in our dublets: And I remem- ber that on a Sunday, the 14. day of that Moneth, in the af- ternooone, we sported our selues singing in musike vpon the riuier *L' Equille*, and in the same moneth we went to see the Cornetwo leagues off from our fort, and did dine merily in the Sunn-shine: I would not for all that say, that all other yeares were like vnto this. For as that winter was as milde in these parts, these last Winters of the yeares 1607. 1608. haue beene the hardest that euer was scene; it hath also been a like in those countries, in such sort that many Sauages di- ed through the rigor of the weather, as in these our parts many poore people & traellers haue been killed through the same hardnesse of Winter-weather. But I will say, that the yeare before we were in New France, the Winter had not beene so hard, as they which dwelt there before vs haue testified vnto me.

Wherefore is the season late.

Let this suffice for that which concerneth the winter sea- son. But I am not yet fully satisfied in searching the cause, why in one and the selfesame parallell the season is in those parts of New France more slow by a moneth than in these parts, and the leaues appeare not vpon the trees but to- wards the end of the Moneth of May: vnlesse we say that the thicknesse of the woods and greatnesse of Forrests doe hinder the Sunne from warming of the ground: Item, that the country where we were is ioyning to the sea, and ther- by

by mor  
try like  
this lan  
the tree  
their m  
Winter  
spoken

The  
dispos  
ground  
fruits t  
found  
den he  
a maru  
vp, an  
dantly  
made  
when  
dantly  
we kn  
confic  
they v  
famin  
there,  
in the  
want

W  
Poutr  
lodge  
fideri  
water  
much  
to the  
men  
noth  
our M



by more subiect to cold, as participating of *Peru*, a country likewise cold, in regard of *Africa* : And besides that, this land hauing neuer beene tilled is the more dampish, the trees and plants not being able easily to draw sap from their mother the earth. In recompence whercof the Winter there is also more slow, as wee haue heeretofore spoken.

The cold being passed, about the end of March the best disposed amongst vs striued who should best till the ground, and make gardens, to sow in them, and gather fruits thereof. Which was to very good purpose, for we found great discommodity in the Winter for want of garden hearbes. When euery one had done his sowing, it was a maruellous pleasure in seeing them daily grow and spring vp, and yet greater contentment to vse thereof so abundantly as we did : so that this beginning of good hope made vs almost to forget our natiue country, and especially when the fish began to haunt fresh-water, and came abundantly into our brookes, in such innumerable quantity that we knew not what to doe with it. Which thing when I consider, I cannot wonder enough how it is possible that they which haue beene in *Florida* haue suffered so great famins, considering the temperature of the aire, which is there, almost, without Winter, and that their famine began in the moneths of April, May and Iune, wherein they could want for no fish.

Whilest some laboured on the ground, *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* made some buildings to be prepared, for to lodge them which he hoped should succeed vs. And considering how troublesome the hand-mill was, he caused a water-mill to be made, which caused the Sauages to admire much at it. For indeed it is an inuention which came not into the spirit of men from the first ages. After that, our workmen had much rest, for the most part of them did almost nothing. But I may say that this Mill, by the diligence of our Millers, did furnish vs with three times more Herrings

Dressing of gardens.

Good crop from the ground.

Abundance of fishes.

The care of *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* in providing for them that should come after him. The building of a water-Mill.

Abundance  
of Herrings.  
Pilchers.

then was needfull vnto vs for our sustenance. *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* made two Hogshheads full of them to bee salted, and one hogshhead of *Sardines*, or Pilchers to bring into France for a shew, which were left in our returne at *S. Maloes*, to some Merchants.

Preparation  
for the re-  
turne.

Among all these things the said *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* did not neglect to thinke on his returne. Which was the part of a wiseman, for one must neuer put so much trust in mens promises, but one must consider that very often many disasters doe happen to them in a small moment of time. And therefore, euen in the Moneth of Aprill, he made two Barkes to be prepared, a great one and a small one, to come to seeke out French-ships towards *Campsean*, or New-found-land, if it should happen that no supply should come vnto vs. But the Carpentry-worke being finished, one onely inconuenience might hinder vs, that is, we had no pitch to calke our vessels. This (which was the chiefe thing) was forgotten at our departure from *Rochel*. In this important necessity, the said *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* aduised himselfe to gather in the woods quantity of the gumme issuing from Firre-trees. Which he did with much labour, going thither himselfe, most often with a boy or two: so that in the end he got some hundred pounds weight of it. Now after these labours, it was not yet all, for it was needfull to melt and purifie the same, which was a necessary point and vnknownen to our ship-Master *Monsieur De Champ-dorè*, and to his Mariners, for as much as, that the pitch we haue, commeth from *Norwege*, *Suedland*, and *Danzick*. Neuerthelesse the said *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* found the meanes to draw out the quintessence of these gummes and Firre-tree barks: and caused quantity of bricke to be made, with the which he made an open furnace, wherein he put a limbecke made with many kettles, ioyned one in the other, which he filled with those gums and barks: Then being well couered, fire was put round about it, by whose violence the gum enclosed with-

Great ouer-  
sight.  
*Monsieur De  
Poutrincourt*  
his inuention.

Bricks made  
in New  
France.

in

in the said lembecke melted, and dropped downe into a bason; but it was needfull to be very watchfull at it, by reason that if the fire had taken hold of the gum, all had beene lost. That was admirable, especially in a man that neuer saw any made. Whereof the Sauages being astonied did say, in words borrowed from the Basques, *Endia chaue Normandia*, that is to say, that the Normands know many things. Now they call all Frenchmen Normands, except the Basques, because the most part of fishermen that goe fishing there, be of that nation. This remedy came very fitly vnto vs, for those which came to seeke vs were fallen into the same want that we were.

Now, as he which is in expectation hath neither contentment nor rest vntill he hath that which he desireth; likewise our men, in this season had often their eies vpon the great compasse of Port Royall, to see if they might discover any ship a comming; wherein they were oftentimes deceiued, imagining sometimes they had heard a Canon-shot, other while to perceiue a saile: and very often taking the Sauages boates, that came to see vs, for French shaloups. For at that time great number of Sauages assembled themselues at the passage of the said Port to goe

to the wars against the *Arrouchiquois*, as we will declare in the booke following. Finally, that which was so much expected and wished for, came at length, and we had newes out of France, on the Ascension day in the fore-noone.

Why the Sa-  
uages call all  
French men  
Normands.

Newes out of  
France.

## CHAP. XVII.

*The arrivall of the French : Monsieur De Monts his society is broken, and why : the couetousnesse of them that doe rob the dead : bonfires for the nativity of the Duke of Orleans : the departing of the Saunages to goe to warres : Sagamos Membertou : voyages vpon the coast : Bay Françoise: base trafficke : the towne of Ouigoudi : how the Saunages doe make great voyages : their bad intention : a Steele Mine : The voyces of Seawoolues or Seales : the state of the Ile S. Croix : the loue of the Saunages towards their children : there-  
turne into Port  
Royall.*

The old Saunages haue good sight.

Salutations by Canon-shots.

**T**HE Sunne did but begin to cheere the earth, and to behold his Mistres with an amorous aspect, when the *Sagamos Membertou* (after our praiers solemnly made to God, and the break-fast distributed to the people, according to the custome) came to giue vs aduertisement that he had scene a saile vpon the lake, which came towards our Fort. At this ioyfull newes euery one went out to see, but yet none was found that had so good a sight as he, though he be aboute 100. yeeres old; neuertheless we spied very soone what it was. *Monsieur De Poutrin-court*, caused in all diligence the small Barke to be made ready for to goe to view further. *Monsieur De Champ-dore* and *Daniel Hay* went in her, and by the signe that had beene told them, being certaine that they were friends, they made presently to be charged foure Canons & 12. fawkonnets, to salute them that came so far to see vs. They on their part did not faile in beginning the ioy, & to discharge their peeces, to whom they rendered the like with vsury. It was onely a small barke vnder the charge of a yong man of Saint Maloes, named *Chenaliere*, who being arriued at the Fort, deliuered his letters to *Monsieur De Poutrin-court*, which were read publicly.

publikely. They did write vnto him, that for to helpe to  
 saue the charges of the voyage, the ship (being yet the *Io-*  
*nas*) should stay at *Campseau* Port, there to fish for Coddes,  
 by reason that the Merchants associate with *Monsieur De*  
*Monts*, knew not that there was any fishing farther than  
 that place: Notwithstanding if it were necessary he should  
 cause the ship to come to Port Royall. Moreouer, that the  
 society was broken, because that contrary to the King his  
 Edict, the Hollanders, conducted by a traiterous French-  
 man, called *La Jeunesse*, had the yeare before taken vp the  
 Beuers and other Furrer, of the great riuer of *Canada*; a  
 thing which did turne to the great dammage of the Socie-  
 tie, which for that cause could no longer furnish the char-  
 ges of the vnhabiting in these parts, as it had done in times  
 past. And therefore did send no body for to remaine there,  
 after vs. As we receaued ioy to see our assured succour, we  
 felt also great grieft to see so faire and so holy an enterprise  
 broken: That so many labours and perils past should serue  
 to no effect: and that the hope of planting the name of  
 God and the Catholike faith should vanish away. Not-  
 withstanding, after that *Monsieur De Poutrincourt*, had a  
 long while mused heereupon, he said, that although he  
 should haue no body to come with him, but onely his fa-  
 mily, he would not forsake the enterprise.

It was great grieft vnto vs to abandon (without hope of  
 returne) a land that had produced vnto vs so faire Corne,  
 and so many faire adorned gardens. All that could be done  
 vntill that time, was to finde out a place, fit to make a setled  
 dwelling, and a land of good fertility. And that being done,  
 it was great want of courage to giue ouer the enterprise, for  
 another yeare being passed, the necessity of maintaining an  
 habitation there, should be taken away, for the land was  
 sufficient to yeeld things necessary for life. This was the  
 cause of that grieft which pierced the hearts of them which  
 were desirous to see the Christian Religion established in  
 that country. But on the contrary, *Monsieur De Monts*,  
 and

“The cōtents  
 “of the letters  
 “written to  
 “*Monsieur De*  
 “*Poutrincourt*.  
 “  
 “  
 “The Socie-  
 “ty of *Monfi-*  
 “*eur De Monts*  
 “broken, and  
 “why.  
 “  
 “  
 “  
 “

*Monsieur De*  
*Poutrincourt*.  
 his resolu-  
 tion.

The English  
 nation going  
 to Virginia  
 with a zea-  
 lous intent to  
 plant true re-  
 ligion and so  
 to increase  
 Christs blef-  
 sed flocke, no  
 doubt he will  
 be their lea-  
 der.

and his associates, reaping no benefit, but losse, and hauing no helpe from the King, it was a thing which they could not doe, but with much difficulty to maintaine an habitati- on in those parts.

*Monsieur De  
Monts* is en-  
uied.

Robbing  
from the  
dead.

The Sauages  
be of a noble  
minde.

The faire de-  
ceit of *Semi-  
ramis*.

Now this enuy for the trade of Beuers with the Sauages, found not onely place in the Hollanders hearts, but also in French Merchants, in such sort that the priuiledge which had beene giuen to the said *Monsieur De Monts* for ten yeares, was reuoked. The vnsatiabie auarice of men is a strange thing, which haue no regard to that which is honest; so that they may rife and catch by what meanes soeuer. And thereupon I will say moreouer, that there haue beene some of them that came to that country to fetch vs home, that wickedly haue presumed so much as to strip the dead, and steale away the Beuers, which those poore people doe put, for their last benefit, vpon them whom they bury, as we will declare more at large in the booke following. A thing that maketh the French name to be odious, & worthy disdain among them, which haue no such fordide quality at all, but rather hauing a heart truly noble and generous, hauing nothing in priuate to themselues, but rather all things common, and which ordinarily doe present gifts (and that very liberally, according to their ability) to them whom they loue and honor. And besides this mischief, it came to passe that the Sauages, when that we were at *Campseau*, killed him that had shewed them the Sepulchers of their dead. I need not to alleage heere what *Herodote* reciteth of the vile baseness of King *Darius*, who thinking to haue caught the old one in the nest (as saith the prouerbe) that is to say, great treasures, in the Tombe of *Semiramis*, Queene of the *Babylonians*, went away altogether confounded, as wise as he came thither, hauing found in it a writing, altogether contrary to the first hee had read, which rebuked him very sharply for his auarice and wickednesse.

Let vs returne to our sorowfull newes, and to the grieffe thereof.

thereof. *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* hauing propounded to some of our company, whether they would tarry there for a yeare, eight good fellows offered themselues, who were promised that euery one of them should haue a hoghead of wine, and corne sufficiently for one yeare, but they demanded so great wages that they could not agree. So resolution was taken for the returne. Towards the euening we made bonfires for the natiuity of my Lord the Duke of *Orleans*, and began afresh to make our Canons and falconets to thunder out, accompanied with store of Musket shots, hauing before sung for that purpose, *Te Deum Laudamus.*

Bonfires made for the natiuity of the Duke of *Orleans.*

The said *Cheualier* bringer of the newes had borne the office of Captaine in the Ship that remained at *Campseau*, & in this condition there was giuen to him, for to bring vnto vs six Weathers, 24. Hens, a pound of Peper, 20. pounds of Rice, as many of Raisens, and of Prunes, a thousand of Almonds, a pound of Nutmegs, a quarter of Cinamon, two pounds of Maces, halfe a pound of Cloues, two pounds of Citron rindes, two dozen of Citrons, as many Orenge, a Westphalia gamon of Bacon, and six other gamons, a hoghead of Gascoine wine, and as much of Sacke, a hoghead of poudred Beefe, foure pottles and a halfe of oile of Oliue, a Jar of Oliues, a barrell of Vinegar, and two Sugarloaves: but all that was lost through Gutter-lane, and we saw none of all these things to make account of: Neuertheless I haue thought good to name heere these wares, to the end that they which will traueil on the seas may prouide themselues therewith. As for the Hens and Weathers it was told vs that they died in the voyage, which we easily beleued; but we desired, at least, to haue had the bones of them: they told vs yet, for a fuller answer, that they thought we had been all dead. See vpon what ground the consuming of our prouision was founded. For all that, we gaue good entertainment to the said *Cheualier* and his company, which were no small number, nor drinkers like

Refreshings sent to *Monsieur de Poutrincourt.*

A likorish tricke plaied to *Monsieur De Poutrincourt.*

Sea prouision

The *Marquis* of *Pisani* a most loving man in drinking.

*Chevaliers* had speeches told to *Monsieur De Poutrincourt*.

The *Sauages* goe to the warres.

What man *Memberton* is.

to the late deceased *Monsieur Le Marquis de Pisani*. Which made them like very well of our company : for there was but Cider well warred , in the ship wherein they came, for their ordinary portion. But as for the said *Chevalier*, euen the very first day he spake of a returne, *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* kept him some eight daies in delays, at the end whereof, this man willing to goe away, the said *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* put men in his Barke, and detained him, for some report, that he had said, that being come to *Campsean*, he would hoise vp sailes and leaue vs there.

Fifteene daies after, the said *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* sent a barke to *Campsean*, with part of our workmen, for to begin to pull downe the house. In the beginning of Iune the *Sauages*, about 400. in number, went away from the dwelling that the *Sagamos Memberton* had newly made, in forme of a towne, compassed about with high pales, for to goe to wars against the *Arrouchiquois*, which was at *Chonakoet* some 80. leagues distant from Port Royall ; from whence they returned victorious, by the stratagems which I will declare in the discription that I haue made of this war in French verses. The *Sauages* were neere two moneths in the assembling themselues thither. The great *Sagamos Memberton* had made them to be warned during, and before the Winter, having sent vnto them men of purpose, namely his two sonnes *Astaudin* and *Astaudinech*, to appoint them there the rendez-uous, or place of meeting. This *Sagamos* is a man already very old, and hath seene *Captaine Iames Lartier* in that country, at which time he was already married and had children, and notwithstanding did not seeme to be about 50. yeares old. He hath bene a very great warriour in his yong age, and bloody during his life : which is the cause why hee is said to haue many enemies, and he is very glad to keepe himselfe neere the French men, to lue in security. During this gathering of people, it behooued to make presents vnto him, and gifts



gifts of Corne and Beanes, yea of some barell of wine, to feast his friends. For he declared to *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* in these words : I am the *Sagamos* of this country, and am esteemed to be thy friend, and of all the Normands (for so call they the French men, as I haue said ) and that you make good reckoning of me : It would be a reproch vnto me if I did not shew the effects of this loue. And notwithstanding, whether it be through enuie, or otherwise, another *Sagamos*, named *Shkondun*, who was a good friend to the French, and vnfaigned, reported vnto vs, that *Memberton* did plot some thing against vs, and had made an Oration to that purpose. Which being vnderstood by *Monsieur De Poutrincourt*, he sent suddenly for him, to astonish him, and to see if he would obey. Vpon the first sending he came alone with our men, not making any refusal. Which was the cause that he was permitted to returne backe in peace, hauing first beene kindly vsed, and had some bottell of wine, which he loueth, because (saith he) that when he hath drunke of it, he sleepeth well, and hath no more feare nor care. This *Memberton* told vs, at our first comming thither, that he would make the King a present of his Copper Mine, because he saw we make account of Mines, and that it is meet that the *Sagamos* be Curteous and liberall one towards the other. For he, being *Sagamos*, esteemeth himselfe equal to the King, and to all his Lieutenants : And did say often to *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* that he was his great friend, brother, companion and equal, shewing his equality by ioyning the two fingers of the hand, that be called *indices*, or demonstratiue fingers. Now although this present which he would giue to his Maiesty was a thing that he cared not for, notwithstanding that procederh from a generous and good minde of his, which deserueth as great praises as if the thing had beene of greater value. As did the Persian King, who receiued with as good a will a handfull of water from a poore Country man, as the greatest presents that had beene made vnto him. For

*Memberton*  
his declar-  
ation.

Bad report  
against *Mem-  
berton*.

*Membertons*  
obedience.

*Memberton* his  
liberality.  
A Copper  
Mine.

The Sauages  
praise them-  
selues.

if *Memberton* had had more, he would haue offered it liberally.

*Monsieur De Poutrincourt* being not willing to depart thence, vntill he had seene the issue of his expectation, that is to say, the ripenessse of his Corne, he deliberated, after that the Sauages were gone to wars, to make voyages along the Coast. And because *Cheualier* was desirous to gather some Beuers, he sent him in a small barke to the Riuer of S. John, called by the Sauages, *Oüigoudi*, and to the Ile Saint Croix: And he, the said *Monsieur De Poutrincourt*, went in a shaloup to the said Copper Mine. I was of the said *Cheualier* his voyage: we crossed the French Bay to goe to the said riuer, where, as soone as we arriued, halfe a dosen Salmons newly taken, were brought to vs: we soiourned there foure daies, during which, we went into the Cabins of *Sagamos Chkoudun*, where we saw some 80. or 100. Sauages, all naked, except their priuy members, which were a making *Tabagy* (that is to say, abanquetting) with the meale that the said *Cheualier* had trucked with them for their old skinnes full of lice (for they gaue him nothing but that which they would cast away:) So made he there a trafficke which I little praise. But it may be that the odour of lucre is fauory and sweet, of what thing soeuer it be, and the Emperor *Vespasian* did not disdaine to receiue in his owne hands, the tribute which came vnto him from the pissing vessels of Rome.

Voyages vp-  
on the Coast  
of the French  
Bay.

Salmons.

Assemblee of  
Sauages a  
feasting.

Filthy tra-  
ding.

*Oüigoudi*  
towne.

Being among those Sauages, the *Sagamos Chkoudun* would needes giue vs the pleasure, in seeing the order and gesture that they hold going to the warres, and made them all to passe before vs, which I referue to speake of in the booke following. The Towne of *Oüigoudi* (so I call the dwelling of the said *Chkoudun*) was a great inclosure vpon an hill, compassed about with high and small trees, tied one against another, and within it many Cabins, great and small, one of which was as great as a Market hall, wherein many households retired themselues: And as for the

same

same where they made their *Tabagie*, it was somewhat lesse. A good part of the said Sauages were of *Gachepè*, which is the beginning of the great riuer of *Canada*; and they told vs, that they came from their dwelling thither in six daies, which made me much to maruell, seeing the distance that there is by sea, but they shorten very much their waies, and make great voijages by the meanes of lakes and riuers, at the end of which being come, in carying their Canowes three or foure leagues, they get to other riuers that haue a contrary course. All these Sauages were come thither to goe to the warres with *Memberton* against the *Armouchiquois*.

But because I haue spoken of this riuer of *Oüigondi*, in *Monsieur De Monts* voiage, I will not at this time speake more of it. When we returned to our Barke, which was at the comming in of the Port, halfe a league off from thence, sheltered by a cause that the sea hath made there, our men, and specially Captaine *Champ-dorè*, that conducted vs, were in doubt, lest some mischance should happen vnto vs, and hauing seene the Sauages in armes, thought it had beene to doe vs some mischiefe, which had beene very easie, for we were but two, and therefore they were very glad of our returne. After which, the next day come the wizard or Soothsaier of that quarter, crying as a mad-man towards our barke. Not knowing what he meant, he was sent for in a Cocke boat, and came to parly with vs, telling vs that the *Armouchiquois* were within the woods, which came to assaile them, and that they had killed some of their folkes that were ahunting: And therefore that we should come aland to assist them. Hauing heard this discourse, which according to our iudgement, tended to no good, we told him that our iournies were limited, and our victuals also, and that it was behouefull for vs to begone. Seeing himselfe denied, he said that before two yeares were come about, they would either kill all the Normands, or that the Normands should kill them. Wee mocked him and

*Gachepè* is the beginning of the great riuer of *Canada*. How the Sauages doe make great voijages.

The subtilty of an *Autmoins* or Sauage Soothsaier.

told him that we would bring our Barke before their Fort to ranfacke them all; but we did it not, for we went away that day: And hauing the winde contrary, we sheltred our felues vnder a small Iland, where we were two daies: during which, some went a shooting at Mallards for prouision; others attended on the Cookery: And Captaine *Champdorè* and my selfe, went along the rockes with hammers and chisels, seeking if there were any Mines. In doing whereof we found quantity of Steele among the rockes, which was since molten by *Monsieur De Poutrincourt*; who made wedges of it, and it was found very fine steels, whereof hee caused a knife to bee made, that did cut as a razor, which at our returne he shewed to the King.

A Mine of Steele.

From thence we went in three daies to the Ile *S. Croix*, being often contraried with the windes. And because we had a bad coniecture of the Sauages, which we did see in great number, at the riuer of *S. Iohn*, and that the troupe that was departed from Port Royall was yet at *Menane* (an Ile betweene the said Port Royall and *S. Croix*) which

*Menane.*

Good watch.  
Seales voices.

we would not trust, we kept good watch in the night time: At which time we did often heare Seales voices, which were very like to the voice of Owles: A thing contrarie to the opinion of them that haue said and written that fishes haue no voice.

The arriuall  
in the Ile of  
*Saint Croix*.  
The state of  
the same.

Being arriued at the Ile *Saint Croix*, we found there the buildings, left there all whole, sauing that the Store-house was vncovered of one side. We found there yet Sacke in the bottome of a pipe, wereof we dranke, and it was not much the worse. As for gardens, we found there Coale-worts, Sorrell, Lettuces, which we vsed for the kitching. We made there also good pasties of Turtle Doues, which are very plentifull in the woods, but the grasse is there so high that one could not finde them when they were killed and fallen in the ground. The court was there, full of whole caskes, which some ill disposed Mariners did burn for their pleasures, which thing when I saw, I did abhor, and I did iudge,

Turtles.

judge, better than before, that the Sauvages were (being lesse ciuilized) more humane and honest men, than many that beare the name of Christians, hauing, during three yeares, spared that place, wherein they had not taken so much as a peece of wood, nor salt, which was there in great quantity, as hard as a rocke.

The Sauvages of better nature than many Christians.

Going from thence, we cast anker among a great number of confused Iles, where we heard some Sauvages, and we did call to make them come to vs. They answered vs with the like call. Whereunto one of ours replied, *Oüen Kiran?* that is to say, *What are ye?* they would not discouer themselves. But the next day *Oagimont*, the *Sagamos* of this riuier, came to vs, and we knew it was he whom we heard. He did prepare to follow *Memberton* and his troupe to the warres, where he was grieuously wounded, as I haue said in my verses vpon this matter. This *Oagimont* hath a daughter about eleuen yeares old, who is very comly, which *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* desired to haue, and hath oftentimes demanded her of him to giue her to the Queene, promising him that he should neuer want Corne, nor any thing else; but he would neuer condescend thereto.

A number of Iles.

The loue of the Sauvages towards their children.

Being entred into our Barke he accompanied vs, vntill we came to the broad sea, where he put himselfe in his shaloup to returne backe; and for vs we bent our course for Port Royall, where we arriued before day, but we were before our Fort, iust at the very point that faire *Aurora* began to shew her reddy cheekes vpon the top of our woody hills; euery bodie was yet asleepe, and there was but one that rose vp, by the continuall barking of dogges; but we made the rest soone to awake; by peales of Musket shots and trumpets-sound. *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* was but the day before, arriued from his voyage to the mines, whether we haue said that he was to goe: and the day before that, was the Barke arriued that had carried part of our workmen to *Campseau*. So that all being assembled, there rested nothing more than to prepare things necessary for our

Arriual into Port Royall.

their Fort  
went away  
eltred our  
ies: du-  
prouision;  
e Champ-  
hammers  
In doing  
e rockes,  
ourt, who  
le, wher-  
s a razor,

S. Croix,  
ecause we  
did see in  
e troupe  
Menane  
) which  
ght time:  
s, which  
ntrarie to  
hat fishes

here the  
re-house  
Sacke in  
was not  
e Coale-  
itching.  
, which  
there so  
re killed  
of whole  
for their  
nd I did  
udge,

our shipping. And in this busines our Water-Mill did vs very good seruice, for otherwise there had been no meanes to prepare meale enough for the voyage, but in the end we had more than we had need of, which was giuen to the Sa-uages, to the end to haue vs in remembrance.

## C H A P. XVIII.

*The Port de Campseau : our departure from Port Royall : fogs of eight daies continuance : a Raine-bow appearing in the water : the Port De Saualet : tillage an honourable exercise : the Sa-uages grieffe at Monsieur De Poutrincourts going away : retourne into France : voyage to Mount Saint Michael : fruits of New France presented to the King : a voyage into New France after the said Monsieur De Poutrincourt his re-  
turne.*

The discription  
of the Port  
De Campseau.

The parting  
from Port  
Royall.  
Eight daies  
mist.

**V**Pon the point that we should take our leaue of Port Royall, *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* sent his men, one after another, to finde out the ship at *Campseau*, which is a Port being betweene seuen or eight Ilands, where ships may be sheltered from windes : and there is a Bay of about 15. leagues depth, and 6. or 7. leagues broad. The said place being distant from Port Royall about 150. leagues. We had a great Barke, two small ones, and a shaloup. In one of the small Barkes some men were shipped that were sent before. And the 30. of Iuly the other two went away. I was in the great one, conducted by *Monsieur De Champ-dorè*. But *Monsieur De Poutrincourt*, desirous to see an end of our sowed corne, tarried till it was ripe, and remained there eleuen daies yet after vs. In the meane time, our first iourny hauing beene the passage of Port Royall, the next day, mistes came and spread themselues vpon the sea, which continued with vs eight whole daies : during which, all we could doe was to get to *Cap De Sable*, which we saw not.

In

In these *Cimmerian* darkneses, hauing one day cast anker in the sea, by reason of the night, our anker driued in such sort, that in the morning, the tide had carried vs among Ilands; and I maruell that we were not cast away, striking against some rocks. But for victuals, we wanted for no fish, for in halfe an houres fishing we might take Codde enough for to feed vs a fortnight, and of the fairest and fattest that euer I saw, being of the colour of Carpes; which I haue neuer knowen nor noted, but in this part of the said *Cap De Sable*; which after we had passed, the tide (which is swift in this place) brought vs in short time as farre as to the Port *De La Heue*, thinking that we were no further than the *Port Du Mouton*. There we taried two daies, and in the very same Port we saw the Coddes bite at the hooke. We found there store of red Gooseberies, and a *Marcaffite* of Copper Mine: we also made there some trucking with the *Sauages* for skinnes.

From thence forward we had winde at will, and during that time it happened once, that being vpō the hatch- es, I cried out to our Pilote *Monsieur De Champdore*, that we were ready to strike, thinking I had seene the bottome of the sea; but I was deceiued by the Raine-bow which did appeare with all his colours in the water, procured by the shadow, that our boarespright saile did make ouer the same, being opposite to the Sunne, which assembling his beames, within the hollownesse of the same saile, as it doth within the clouds, those beames were forced to make a reuerberation in the water, and to shew forth this wonder. In the end we arriued within foure leagues of *Campsean*, at a Port, where a good old man of Saint Iohn *De Lus*, called *Captaine Sawalet*, receiued vs with all the kindnesse in the world. And for as much as this Port (which is little, but very faire) hath no name, I haue qualified it in my Geographical Map, with the name of *Sawalet*. This good honest man told vs that the same voyage was the 42. voyage that he had made into those parts, and neuerthelesse the

Perill.  
Abundance  
offaire Codde.

Port *De la Heue*.

The Raine-  
bow appear-  
ing in the  
water.

Port *Sawalet*.  
42. voyages  
made in New  
foundland.

New-found-land-men do make but one in a yeare. He was  
 maruellously pleased with his fishing; and told vs moreo-  
 uer that he tooke euery day fifty Crownes worth of fish,  
 and that his voyage would be woorth 1000. pounds. He  
 paied wages to 16 men, and his vessell was of 80. tunnes,  
 which could carry 100000. dry fishes. He was sometimes  
 vexed with the Sauages that did cabine there, who too  
 boldly and impudently went into his ship, and carried a-  
 way from him what they listed. And for to auoid their  
 troublesome behauiour, he threatned them that we would  
 come thither, and that we would put them all to the edge  
 of the sword, if they did him wrong. This did feare them, &  
 they did him not so much harme, as otherwise they would  
 haue done. Notwithstanding whensoever the Fishermen  
 came with their shaloups full of fish, they did chuse what  
 seemed good vnto them, and they did not care for Codde,  
 but rather tooke *Merlus*, or Whittings, *Barses* or *fletans*, a  
 kind of very great Turbots, which might be worth heere  
 in *Paris* about foure crownes apeece, and paradventure  
 six or more, for it is a marvellous good meat, specially when  
 they be great, and of the thickeesse of six fingers, as are  
 those that be taken there. And it would haue bene very  
 hard to bridle their insolency, because that for to doe it,  
 one should be forced to haue alwaies weapons in hand, and  
 so the worke should be left vndone. The good nature and  
 honesty of this man was extended, not onely to vs, but al-  
 so to all our people that passed by his Port, for it was the  
 passage to goe and come from Port Royall. But there were  
 some of them that came to fetch vs home, who did worse  
 than the Sauages, vsing him as the Souldier doth the poore  
 peasan, or country Farmer, heere: a thing which was ve-  
 ry grieuous for me to heare.

Good fishing.

Sauages vn-  
fortunate.

150. Leagues  
off they feare  
the French-  
men, inhabi-  
ted beyond  
that.

Sauages his  
kindnesse.

We were 4. daies there, by reason of the contrary wind.  
 Then came we to *Campseau*, where we taried for the other  
 Barke, which came two daies after vs. And as for *Mon-  
sieur De Poutrin court*, as soone as he saw that the come  
 might



might be reaped, he pulled vp some Rie, root and all, for to shew heere the beauty, goodnesse and vnmeasurable height of the same. He also made gleanes of the other sorts of seedes, as Wheat, Barly, O. res, Hemp, and others, for the same purpose: which was not done by them that haue heeretofore beene in *Brasill* and in *Florida*. Wherein I haue cause to reioyce, because I was of the company and of the first tillers of that land. And heerein I pleased my selfe the more, when I did set before mine eyes our ancient father *Noah*, a great King, great Priest, and great Prophet, whose occupation was to husband the ground, both in sowing of Corne and planting the Vine: And the ancient Romane Captaine, *Scranius*, who was found sowing of his field, when that he was sent for, to conduct the Romane Armie: And *Quintus Cincinatus*, who all dusty did plough foure akers of lands, bare headed and open stomack, when the Senats Harold brought letters of the Dictatorship vnto him; in sort, that this messenger was forced to pray him to couer himselfe, before he declared his Embassage vnto him. Delighting my selfe in this exercise, God hath blessed my poore labour, and I haue had in my garden as faire wheat as any can be in France, whereof the said *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* gaue vnto mee a gleane, when he came to the said Port *De Campseau*.

He was ready to depart from Port Royall, when *Memberton* and his company arriued, victorious ouer the *Ar-mouchiquois*. And because I haue made a description of this war in French Verses, I will not heere trouble my paper with it, being desirous rather to be briefe, than to seeke out new matter. At the instant request of the said *Member-ton* he taried yet one day. But it was pitious to see at his departing, those poore people weepe, who had beene alwaies kept in hope that some of ours should alwaies tarry with them. In the end promise was made vnto them, that the yeare following, households and families should be sent thither, wholly to inhabit their land, and teach them trades

Exceeding  
faire Corne.

The tillage of  
the ground is  
an honourable  
exercise.

Faire Wheat

The Sauages  
returne from  
the wars.

The Sauages  
teares at the  
going away  
of the French  
men.

Meale left be-  
hinde.

for to make them liue as we doe, which promise did somewhat comfort them. There was left remaining ten hogsh-heads of Meale, which were giuen to them, with the Corne that we had sowed, and the possession of the Mannour, if they would vse it, which they haue not done. For they cannot be constant in one place, and liue as they doe.

Monsieur De  
Poutrin oure  
his going a-  
way.

The eleuenth of August the said *Monsieur De Poutrin-court* departed, with eight in his company, from the said Port Royall, in a Shaloup to come to *Campsean*: A thing maruellously dangerous to crosse so many baies and seas in so small a vessell, laden with nine persons, with victuals necessary for the voyage, and reasonable great quantity of other stufte. Being arriued at the Port of Captaine *Saualer*, he receiued them all as kindly as it was possible for him: And from thence they came to vs, to the said Port of *Campsean*, where we taried yet eight daies.

The departing from  
New France.

The third day of September, we weighed ankers, and with much adoe came we from among the rockes, that be about the said *Campsean*. Which our Mariners did with two shaloups that did carry their ankers very farre into the sea, for to vphold our ship, to the end she should not strike against the rockes. Finally, being at sea, one of the said shaloups was let goe, and the other was taken into the *Jonas*, which besides our lading, did carry 10000. of fish, as well drie as greene. We had reasonable good winde vntill we came neere to the lands of Europe: But we were not ouercloied with good cheere, because that (as I haue said) they who came to fetch vs, presuming we were dead did cramme themselues with our refreshing commodities. Our workmen dranke no more wine, after we had left Port Royall: And we had but small portion thereof, because that which did ouer abound with vs, was drunke merrily in the company of them that brought vs newes from France.

The fight of  
the Sor-  
lingues.

The 26. of September we had fight of the Sorlingues, which be at the lands end of Cornewall in England, and the

the 28. thinking to come to *Saint Maloes*, we were forced (for want of good wind) to fall into Roscoff in Basse Bretagne, where we remained two daies and a halfe, refreshing our selues. We had a Sauage who wondred very much, seeing the buildings, steeples, and Wind-mils in France: yea also of the women, whom he had neuer seene clothed after our maner. From Roscoff (giuing thanks to God) we came with a good winde vnto *Saint Maloes*. Wherein I cannot but praise the watchfull foresight of our Master, *Nicolas Martin*, in hauing so skilfully conducted vs in such a nauigation, and among so many bankes and dangerous rocks, wherewith the coast, from the Cap of Vshant to *Saint Maloes*, is full. If this man be praise worthy, in this his action; Captaine *Foulques* deserueth no lesse praises, hauing brought vs thorow so many contrary windes, into vnknown lands, where the first foundations of New France haue beene laid.

Hauing taried three or foure daies at *Saint Maloes*, *Monsieur De Pontrincourts* sonne, and my selfe, went to Mount *Saint Michael*, where we saw the relikes, all, sauing the Buckler of this holy Archangell. It was told vs that the Lord Bishop of *Auranches*, had, foure or five yeares ago, forbidden to shew it any more. As for the building, it merireth to be called the 8. wonder of the world, so faire and great is it, vpon the point of one only rocke, in the midst of the waues, at full sea. True it is, that one may say that the sea came not thither when the said building was made. But I will reple, that howsoeuer it be, it is admirable. The complaint that may be made in this respect, is, that so many faire buildings are vnprofitable in these our daies, as in the most part of the Abbies of France. And would to God that by some *Archimedes* means, they might be transported into New France, there to be better employed to Gods seruice and the Kings. At the returne we came to see the fishing of Oysters at *Cancalle*.

After we had sojourned eight daies at *Saint Maloes*, we

Then of  
France.

The voyage  
vnto *S. Michael*.

The eight  
wonder of  
the world.

*Monsieur De  
Poutrin-court*  
his industry.

came, in a Barke, to *Honfleur*, where *Monsieur De Poutrin-court* his experience stood vs in good stead, who seeing our Pilots at their wits end, when they saw themselves betweene the Iles of *Ierzy* and *Sare* (not being accustomed to take that course, where we were driuen by a great winde, East South-East, accompanied with fogs and rain) he tooke his sea-chard in hand, and plaid the part of a Pilot, in such sort that we passed the *Raz Blanchart* (a dangerous passage for small Barkes) and we came easily, following the coast of Normandic, to *Honfleur*; for which, eternall praises be giuen to God. *Amen.*

Haruest of  
New France,  
shewed to the  
King.

Being at Paris, the said *Monsieur De Poutrin-court* presented the King with the fruits of the land from whence he came, and especially the Corne, Wheat, Rie, Barly and Oates, as being the most precious thing that may be brought from what country soeuer. It had beene very fit to vow these first fruits to God, and to place them in some church among the monuments of triumph, with more iust cause than the ancient Romanes, who presented to their country Gods and Goddesses *Terminus*, *Seia*, and *Segesta* the first fruits of their tillage, by the hands of the Priests of the fields, instituted by *Romulus*, which was the first order in new Rome, who had for Blason, a hat of the eares of Corne.

*Plin. lib. 18.  
cap. 2.*

*Outards*, or  
wild Geese,  
presented to  
the King.

The said *Monsieur De Poutrin-court* had bred tenne *Outards*, taken from the shell, which he thought to bring all into France, but fiue of them were lost, and the other fiue he gaue to the King, who delighted much in them; and they are at *Fontaine Belleau*.

Priuiledge of  
Beauers con-  
firmed to  
*Monsieur De  
Monts*.  
Three ships  
sent 1608.

Vpon the faire shew of the fruites of the said Country the King did confirme to *Monsieur De Monts* the priuiledge for the trade of Beauers with the Sauages, to the end to giue him meanes to establish his Colonies in New France. And by this occasion he sent thither in March last, Families, there to begin Christian and French Commonwealths, which God vouchsafe to blesse and increase.

The

The said ships being returned, we haue had report by *Monsieur De Champ-dorè*, and others, of the state of the Country which we had left, and of the wonderfull beauty of the Corn that the said *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* had sowed before his departure, together of the graines that be fallen in the gardens; which haue so increased that it is an incredible thing. *Memberton* did gather six or seuen barrels of the corne that we had sowed: and had yet one left, which he reserued for the Frenchmen, whom he looked for, who arriuing he saluted with three Musket shots and Bonfires. When it was laid to his charge that hee had eaten our Pigeons, which we left there, he fell aweeping, and embracing him that told it him, said, that it was the *Ma-charoa*, that is to say, the great birds which are Eagles, which did eat many of them, while we were there. Moreover, all great and small, did inquire how we did, naming euery one by his owne name, which is a witnesse of great loue.

From Port Royall, the said *Champ-dorè* went as farre as *Chouakonet*, the beginning of the *Armouchiquois* land, where he pacified that nation with the *Etechemins*, which was not done without solemnity. For as he had begun to speake of it, the Captaine, who is now instead of *Olmechin*, named *Astikon*, a graue man and of a goodly presence, how sauage foecer he be, demanded that some one of the said *Etechemins* should be sent to him, and that he would treat with him. *Oagimont*, *Sagamos* of the riuer *S. Croix*, was appointed for that purpose, and he would not trust them, but vnder the assurance of the Frenchmē he went thither. Some presents were made to *Astikon*, who, vpon the speech of peace, began to exhort his people & to shew them the causes that ought to induce them to hearken vnto it. Wherunto they condescended, making an exclamation at euery article that he propounded to them. Some fiue yeares ago *Monsieur De Monts* had likewise pacified those nations, and had declared vnto them, that he would be enemy to the first of them.

Newes from New France since our coming from thence.

It is very dangerous to teach the Sa-uages the vse of gunnes.

Eagles.

The Sa-uages wisdom.

them that should beginne the war, and would pursue him. But after his returne into France, they could not containe themselves in peace. And the *Armonchiquois* did kill a *Sonriquois* Sauvage, called *L'aroniac*, who went to them for to trucke merchandise, which he tooke at the storehouse of the said *Monsieur De Monts*. The warre aboue mentioned happened by reason of this said murther, vnder the conduct of *Sagamos Memberton*: the said warre was made in the very same place, where I now make mention, that *Monsieur de Champdorè* did treat the peace this yeare: *Monsieur Champlain* is in another place, to wit in the great riuer of *Canada*, neere the place where captaine *James Quartier* did winter, where he hath fortified himselfe, hauing brought thither households, with cattell and diuers sorts of fruite-trees. There is store of vines, and excellent hempe, in the same place where he is, which the earth bringeth forth of it selfe. He is not a man to be idle, and we expect shortly newes of the whole discouerie of this great and vncomparable riuer, and of the countries which it washeth on both sides, by the diligence of the said *Champlain*.

*Monsieur Champlain* is now in the riuer of *Canada*.  
Cattell.  
Fruit trees.  
Vines.  
Hempe.

*Monsieur De Poutrin-court* his resolution

1609.

As for *Monsieur De Poutrin-court*, his desire is immutable, in this resolution to inhabit and adorne his Prouince, to bring thither his familie, and all sorts of trades necessary for the life of man. Which, with Gods helpe hee will continue to effect all this present yeare 1609. And, as long as he hath vigor and strength, will prosecute the same, to liue there vnder the Kings obeyfance.



The second Booke of the History  
of *Noua Francia*, containing the fashions and  
maners of life of the people there,  
and the fertility of the Lands and  
Seas mentioned in the  
former Booke.

THE PREFACE.

**A**lmighty God, in the creation of  
this world, hath so much deligh-  
ted himselfe in diuersity, that,  
whether it be in Heauen, or in  
the Earth, either under the same  
or in the profound depth of wa-  
ters, the effects of his might and  
glory doe shine in euery place. But the wonder that far  
exceedeth all others, is, that in one and the selfe same  
kind of Creature, I meane in Man, are found more va-  
riety than in other things created. For if one enters in-  
to the consideration of his face, two shall not be found  
who in euery respect doe resemble one another: If he  
bee considered in the voice, the same variety shall be  
found: If in the speech, all Nations haue their proper  
and peculiar language, whereby one is distinguished  
from the other. But in maners and fashion of life, there  
is a maruellous difference, which (without troubling

rsue him.  
containe  
kill a *Som-*  
em for to  
house of  
entioned  
the con-  
made in  
on, that  
is yeare:  
t in the  
captaine  
fied him-  
ttell and  
, and ex-  
hich the  
be idle,  
ouerie of  
ountries  
f the said

immuta-  
rouince,  
necessa-  
hee will  
, as long  
same, to

OF

*our selues in crossing the Seas to haue the experience thereof) we see visibly in our very neighborhood. Now forasmuch as it is a small matter to know, that people differ from vs in customes and maners, vnles we know the particularities thereof; a small thing is it likewise to know, but that, which is neere to vs: but the faire Science is to know the maner of life of all Nations of the World, for which reason Vlysses hath beene esteeme because he had seene much and knowen much. It hath seemed necessary vnto me to exercise my selfe in this second booke vpon this subiect, in that which toucheth the Nations spoken of by vs, seeing that I haue tied my selfe vnto it, and that it is one of the best parts of an History, which without it would be defectiue, hauing but slightly and casually handled here aboue those things that I haue reserued to speake of heere. Which also I doe, to the end, if it please God to take pitie of those poore people, and to worke by his holy spirit, that they be brought into his fold, their children may know heereafter what their Fathers were, and blesse them that haue employed themselues in their conuersion, and reformation of their vnciuility. Let vs therefore begin with man from his birth, and hauing in grosse marked out what the course of his life is, we will conduct him to the graue, there to leaue him to rest, and also to repose our selues.*





## C H A P. I.

*Of the Natiuity of Man.*

He authour of the booke of Wisdome, called Salomon, witnesseth vnto vs a most true thing, that *All men haue a like entrance into the world; and the like going out.* But ech seuerall people hath brought some ceremonies, after these were accomplished. For some haue wept, seeing the birth of man vpon this worldly Theater. Others haue reioyced at it, as well because Nature hath giuen to euery creature a desire to preserue his owne kinde, as for that, Man hauing beene made mortall by sinne, he desireth to bee in some sort restored againe to that lost right of immortality, and to leaue some visible image issued from him, by the generation of children. I will not heere discourse vpon euery Nation, for it would be an infinite thing. But I will say that the *Hebrews* at the natiuity of their children did make some particular ceremonies vnto them, spoken of by the Prophet *Ezechiel*, who hauing in charge to make a demonstration to the Citie of *Hierusalem* of her owne abomination, doth reproch vnto her, saying, that she is issued and borne out of the *Cananeans* Country, that her father was an *Amorite*, and her mother an *Hittite*. And as for thy birth (saith he) *in the day that thou wast borne thy nauell was not cut, neither wast thou washed in water to soften thee, nor salted with salt, nor any wise swadled in cloutes.* The *Cimbres* did put their new borne children into the snow to harden them: And the French-

Ezech. 16.  
vers. 2 3. 4.

Iulian. imp. S<sup>d</sup>.  
don. Car. 7.  
Clausian. in  
Ruffin. lib. 2.

August. epist.  
ad Maxim.  
Philos.

men did plunge theirs into the riuer *Rhine*, to know if they were legitimate: for if they did sinke vnto the bottome they were esteemed bastards, and if they did swim me on the water they were legitimate, meaning (as it were) that French-men ought naturally to swim vpon the waters. As for our Sauages of New France, when that I was there, thinking nothing lesse than on this History, I tooke not heed of many things which I might haue obserued: But yet I remember, that as a woman was deliuered of her child they came into our Fort, to demand very instantly for some grease or oyle to make the child to swallow it downe before they giue him the duggé or any food: they can render no reason for this, but that it is a custome of long continuance. Whereupon I coniecture that the diuell (who hath alwaies borrowed ceremonies from the Church, as well in the ancient as in the new law) would, that his people (so doe I call them that belecue not in God, and are out of the Communion of Saints) should be anointed like to Gods people: which vnction he hath made to be inward, because the spirituall vnction of the Christians is so.

## CHAP. II.

### *Of the imposition of names.*

The dignity  
of eldership  
or first borne.

**A**S for imposition of names, they giue them by tradition, that is to say, they haue great quantity of names, which they chuse and impose on their children. But the eldest sonne commonly beareth his fathers name, adding at the end some diminutiue: as the eldest of *Memberton* shall be called *Membertouchis*, as it were the lesser, or the yonger *Memberton*. As for the yonger Son, he beareth not the Fathers name, but they giue him such name as they list: And hee that is borne after him shall beare his name, adding a syllable to it: as the yonger of *Memberton* is called *Actaudin*, he that commeth after is called *Actaudinech*. So *Memembourré* had a sonne named *Semcoud*,

*Semcoud*, and his yonger was called *Semcoudsch*. It is not for all that a generall rule, to adde this termination *sch*. For *Panoniacs* yonger Sonne (of whom mention is made in *Membersous* warre against the *Armonchiouis*, which I haue described in the *Muses of New France*) was called *Panoniagués*: so that this termination is done according as the former name requireth it. But they haue a custome that when this elder brother, or father, is dead, they change name, for to auoid the sorrow that the remembrance of the deceased might bring vnto them. This is the cause why, after the decease of *Memembourré*, & *Semcoud*, (that died this last Winter) *Semcoudsch* hath left his brothers name, and hath not taken that of his father, but rather hath made himselfe to be called *Paris*, because he dwelt in *Paris*. And after *Panoniacs* death, *Panoniagues* forsooke his name, and was, by one of our men, called *Roland*: which I finde euill and vndiscreetly done, so to prophane Christians names, and to impose them vpon Infidels: as I remember of another that was called *Martin*. *Alexander* the Great (though he was an Heathen) would not that any should beare his name, vnlesse he should render himselfe woorthy thereof by vertue. And, as one day a souldier, bearing the name of *Alexander*, was accused before him to be voluptuous and lecherous, he commanded him, either to forsake that name, or to change his life.

The changing of names.

The *Bracliens* (as *Iohn De Leri* saith, whom I had rather follow in that which he hath seene, than a Spaniard) impose names to their children of the first thing that cometh before them, as if a bow and string come to their imagination, they will call their child *Ourapacen*, which signifieth a bow and a string, and so consequently. In regard of our Sauages, they haue at this day names without signification, which peradventure in the first imposing of them, did signifie some thing, but as the tongues do change the knowledge thereof is lost. Of all the names of them that I haue knowen, I haue learned none, sauing that

*Chkondun* signifieth a *Tromt* : and *Oigoudi* the name of the riuer of the said *Chkondun*, which signifieth *to see*. It is verry certaine, that names haue not beene imposed, to what thing soeuer, without reason. For *Adam* gauethe name to euery liuing creature, according to the property and nature thereof, and consequently names haue beene giuen to men signifying something : As *Adam* signifieth *Man*, or *that which is made of earth* : *Euub* signifieth, *the Mother of all liuing* : *Abel*, *weeping* : *Cain*, *possession* : *Iesus*, *a Sauiour* : *Diuell*, *a Slanderer* : *Satan*, *an aduersarie* &c. Among the Romans, some were called *Lucius*, because they were born at the breake of day ; Others *Cesar*, for that the Mothers belly was cut at the birth of him that first did beare this name : In like maner *Lentulus*, *Piso*, *Fabius*, *Cicero*, &c. all nick-names, giuen by reason of some accident, like our Sauages names, but with some more iudgement.

### CHAP. III.

#### *Of the feeding of their Children.*

Esay 49. vers.  
15.

**A**Lmighty God, shewing a true Mothers duty, saith by the Prophet *Esay* : *Can a woman forget her child, and not haue compassion on the Sonne of her wombe ?* This pity which God requireth in Mothers, is to giue the brest to their children, and not to change the food which they haue giuen vnto them before their birth. But at this day the most part make their brests to serue for alurements to whoredome, and being willing to set themselues at ease, free from the childrens noise, do send them into the Country, where peradventure they be changed or giuen to bad nurses, whose corruption and bad nature they sucke with their milke. And from thence come the changelings, weake and degenerate from the right stocke whose names they beare. The Sauage women beare a greater loue than that towards their yong ones : for none but themselues doe nourish them : And that is generall thorowout all the West Indies :

Indies: likewise their breasts are no baits of loue, as in these our parts, but rather, loue in those lands is made by the flame that nature kindleth in euery one, without annexing any arts to it, either by painting, amorous poisons or otherwise. And for this maner of nursing their children, are the ancient German women praised by *Tacitus*, because that euery one did nurse their Children with her owne breasts, and would not haue suffered that another besides themselues should giue sucke to their children. Now our Sauage women do giue vnto them, with the dugged meats which they vse, hauing first well chawed them: and so by little and little bring them vp. As for the swadling of them, they that dwell in hot Countries and neere the *Tropicks*, haue no care of it, but leaue them free vnbound. But drawing towards the North, the mothers haue an euen smooth boord, like the couering of a drawer or cupbord, vpon which they lay the child wrapped in a Beauer fur, vnles it be too hot, and tied thereupon with some swadling band, whom they carry on their backs their legges hanging downe: then being returned into their Cabins they set them in this maner vp straight against a stone or some thing else. And as in these our parts, one giues small feathers and gilt things to little children, so they hang quantity of beades and small square toies, diuersly coloured, in the vpper part of the said boord or plancke, for the decking of theirs.

CHAP. IIII.

*Of their loue towards their children.*

**T**HAT which we haue said euen now, is a part of true loue, which doth shame the Christian women. But after the Children be weaned, and at all times, they loue them all, obseruing this law that Nature hath grafted in the hearts of all creatures (except in leaud slippery women) to haue care of them. And when it is question to demand

mand of them some of their children (I speake of the *Son-riguois*, in whose land we dwelt) for to bring them into France, they wil not giue them: but if any one of them doth yeeld vnto it, presents must be giuen vnto him, besides large promises. We haue alreadie spoken of this at the end of the 17. chapter. So then I finde that they haue wrong to be called Barbarous, seeing that the ancient Romans were far more Brabarous than they, who ostentimes sold their children for to haue meanes to liue. Now that which causeth them to loue their children more than we doe in these parts is, that they are the maintenance of their fathers in their old age, whether it be to helpe them to liue, or to defend them from their enemies: And nature conserueth wholly in them her right in this respect. By reason whereof that which they wish most is to haue number of children, to be thereby so much the mightier, as in the first age of the world, when virginity was a thing reprocuable, because of Gods commandement to man and women to increase, multiply and replenish the earth: but after it was filled, this loue waxed maruellous cold, and children began to be a burthen to fathers and mothers, whom many haue had in disdaine, and haue verie often procured their death: Now is the way open for France to haue a remedy for the same. For if it please God to guide and prosper the voyages of New France, whosoever in these parts shall finde himselfe oppressed may passe thither, and there end his daies in rest, and that without feeling any pouerty: or if any one findeth himselfe ouerburthened with children, he may send halfe of them thither, and with a small portion they shall be rich and possesse the land, which is the most assured condition of this life. For we see at this day, labor and paine in all vocations, yea in them of the best sort, which are often crossed through enuy and wants: others will make a hundred cappings and crouchings for to liue, and yet they doe but pine away. But the ground neuer deceaueth vs, if we earnestly cherish her. Witnesse the fable of

The cause why the Sa-uages loue their children more than we doe in these parts.

Genf. 2. vers. 28.

Means to ease the families of France.

of him, who by his last will and testament, did declare to his children that he had hidden a treasure in his Vineyard, and as they had well and deeply digged and turned it they found nothing, but the yeere being come about, they gathered so great a quantity of grapes, that they knew not where to bestow them. So thorow all the holy Scripture, the promises that God maketh to the Patriarches *Abraham, Isaac* and *Iacob*, and afterwards to the people of *Israel*, by the mouth of *Moses*, is, that they shall possesse the land, as a certaine heritage that cannot perish, and where a man hath wherewith to sustaine his familie, to make himselfe strong and to liue in innocency : according to the speeches of the ancient *Cato*, who did say, that commonly Husbandmen, or Farmers Soñnes be valiant and strong, and doe thinke on no harme.

To possesse  
the land is a  
rich heritage.

*Plin. lib. 18.*  
*cap. 5.*

CHAP. 5.

*Of their Religion.*

**M**An being created after the image of God, it is good reason that he acknowledge, serue, worship, praise and blesse his Creator, and that therein he employ his whole desire, his minde, his strength and his courage. But the nature of man hauing been corrupted by sinne, this faire light that God had first giuen vnto him, hath beene so darkned, that he is becom therby to lose the knowledge of his beginning. And for as much as God sheweth not himself vnto vs by a certaine visible forme, as a father or a King might doe; man finding himselfe ouercome with powerty and infirmity, not setting himselfe to the contemplation of the wonders of this Almighty workman, and to seeke him as he ought to be sought for, with a base and brutish spirit, miserably hath he forged to himselfe gods, according to his owne fancy : And there is nothing visible in the world, but hath beene deified in some place or other : yea euen in that rancke and degree, iniaginary things hath also beene put, as Vertue, Hope, Honour, Fortune, and a thousand

T

such

Idolaters in  
Virginia.

Act. 19. verſe

24.

The Sauages  
eafie to be  
conuerted to  
the Chriſtian  
religion.

James Cartier.

ſuch like things : Item infernall gods, and ſickneſſes, and all ſorts of plagues, euery one worſhipping the things that he ſtood in feare of. But notwithstanding, though *Tullie* hath ſaid, ſpeaking of the nature of the gods, that there is no nation ſo ſauage, or brutiſh nor ſo barbarous, but is ſeaſoned with ſome opinion of them: yet there haue been found, in theſe later ages, nations that haue no feeling thereof at all: which is ſo much the ſtranger that among them, there were, and yet are, Idolaters, as in *Mexico* and *Virginia*. If we will we may adde heereunto *Florida*. And notwithstanding, all being well conſidered, ſeeing the condition both of the one and of the other is to be lamented, I giue more praiſe to him that worſhippeth nothing, than to him who worſhippeth creatures without either life or ſenſe, for at leaſt, as bad as he is, he blaſphemeth not, and giueth not the glorie due to God to another, living (indeed) a life not much differing from brutiſhneſſe: but the ſame is yet more brutiſh that adoreth a dead thing, and putteth his confidence in it. And beſides, he which is not ſtained with any bad opinion, is much more capable of true adoration, than the other: being like to a bare table, which is ready to receiue what colour ſoever one will giue to it. For when any people hath once receiued a bad impreſſiõ of doctrine, one muſt roote it out from them before another may be placed in them. Which is very difficult, as well for the obſtinacy of men, which doe ſay, our fathers haue liued in this ſort: as for the hindrance that they giue them which doe teach them ſuch a doctrine, and others whoſe life dependeth thereupon, who doe feare that their meanes of gain be taken from them: euen as that *Demetrius* the ſiluerſmith, mentioned in the *Acts* of the Apoſtles. This is the reaſon why our Sauages of New France wil be found more eafie to receiue the Chriſtian doctrine, if once the Prouince be thorowly inhabited. For (that we may begin with them of *Canada*) *James Quartier*, in his ſecond relation, reciteth that which I haue ſaid a little before, in theſe words



words, which are not heere laied downe in the former Booke.

This said people (saith he) hath not any beleefe of God (that may be esteemed) for they belecue in one, whom they call *Cudoïagni*, and say, that he often speaketh to them, and telleth them what weather shall fall out. They say that when he is angry with them hee casteth dust in their eies. They belecue also, that when they die they goe vp into the starres, and afterwards they goe into faire greene fields, full of faire trees, flowers and rare fruits. After they had made vsto vnderstand these things, wee shewed them their error, and that their *Cudoïagni* is an euill Spirit that deceiueth them, and that there is but one God, which is in Heauen, who doth giue vnto vs all, and is Creator of all things, and that in him we must onely beleue, and that they must be baptised, or goe into hell. And many other things of our faith were shewed them: which they easily beleueed, and called their *Cudoïagni*, *Agoinda*. So that many times they requested our Captaine to cause them to be baptized, and the said Lord (that is to say, *Donnacona*) *Taiguragni*, *Domagaia*, with all the people of their towne came thither for that purpose: but because we knew not their intent and desire, and that there was no body to instruct them in the faith, wee excused our selues to them for that time, and bad *Taiguragni* and *Domagaia* to make them vnderstand that we would returne another voyage, and would bring Priests with vs and *Chrême*, telling them, for an excuse, that one cannot be baptizied without the said *Chrême*, which they did beleue. And they were very glad of the promise which the Captaine made them to returne, and thanked them for it.

*Monsieur Champlain*, hauing of late made the same voyage which the Captaine *James Quartier* had made, did discourse with Sauages, that be yet liuing, and reporteth the speeches that were betweene him and certaine of their *Sagamos*, concerning their beleefe in spirituall and heauenly

“ The Sauages religi-  
“ on in Can-  
“ nada.

“ The state  
“ of soules  
“ after death.

“ People ea-  
“ sily to be  
“ conuerted.  
“ *Agoinda*  
“ signifieth  
“ wicked.

The Sauges  
beleefe  
and faith.

Of the cre-  
ation of  
man.

They be-  
leeue one  
God, one  
Sonne, one  
Mother,  
and the  
Sunne.

ly things, which I haue thought good (being incident to this matter) to insert heere; his words are these: The most part of them be people without law, according as I could see and informe my selfe, by the said great *Sagamos*, who told mee that they verily belecue there is one God, who hath created all things. And then I asked him, seeing that they belecue in one onely God: by what meanes did hee place them in this world, and from whence they were come? He answered mee, that after God had made all things, he tooke a number of arrowes, and did sticke them into the ground, from whence men and women sprung vp, which haue multiplied in the world vntill now, and that mankinde grew by that meanes. I answered him, that what he said was false: But that indeed there was one onely God, who had created all things both in Heauen and Earth. Seeing all these things so perfect, and being no body that did gouerne in this world, he tooke slime out of the Earth, and created thereof our first father *Adam*: And while he did sleepe, God tooke one of his ribes, and formed *Euah* thereof, whom hee gaue to him for company, and that this was the truth that both they and we were made by this meanes, and not of arrowes, as they did beleue. He said nothing more to me, but that he allowed better of my speech than of his owne. I asked him also if he beleued not that there were any other but one onely God? He said vnto me that their beleefe was: There was one onely God, one Sonne, one Mother, and the Sunne, which were foure. Notwithstanding, that God was ouer and aboue all, but that the Sonne was good, and the Sunne, by reason of the good which they receiued of them: As for the Mother, shee was naught and did eat them; and that the Father was not very good. I shewed him his error according to our faith, whereunto he gaue some credit. I demanded of him if they neuer saw nor heard their ancestors say that God was come into the world: He told me hee had not seene him: but that anciently there were fiue men, who tra-  
uelling

uelling towards the setting of the Sunne, met with God, who demanded of them, Whither go yee? They answered, We goe to seeke for our liuing : God answered them, You shall finde it heere. But they passed further, not making any account of that which God had said vnto them; who tooke a stone and therewith touched two of them, who were turned into stones : And he said againe to the three others, Whither goe yee? and they answered as at the first time : and God said vnto them againe, Passe no further, you shall finde it heere : and seeing that they found no food they passed further : And God tooke two staues, and touched therewith the two formost, who were transformed into staues. But the fift man staid and would passe no further : And God asked him againe, Whither goest thou? Who made answer, I go to seeke for my liuing : and God told him, Tarry and thou shalt finde it : and he staid without passing any further : And God gaue him meate, and he did eat of it : and after he had made good cheare he returned among the other Sauages, and told them all that you haue heard. He also told me, that at another time there was a man who had store of *Tabacco* ( which is an hearbe the smoke whereof they take ) and that God came to this man and asked him where his pipe was : The man tooke his *Tabacco* pipe and gaue it to God, who dranke very much *Tabacco*. After he had taken well of it, God brake the said *Tabacco*-pipe into many peeces, and the man asked him, Why hast thou broken my *Tabacco*-pipe, and thou seeest well that I haue none other? And God tooke one which he had, and gaue it him, saying vnto him : Lo, heere is one which I giue to thee, carry it to thy great *Sagamo*, let him keepe it; and if he keepe it wel, he shall not want any thing, nor any of his companions : The said man tooke the *Tabacco*-pipe, which he gaue to his great *Sagamo*, who (whilest he had it) the Sauages wanted for nothing in the world : But that since the said *Sagamo* had lost this *Tabacco*-pipe, which is the cause of the great famine

“ Of five  
“ men whom  
“ the Sauages  
“ beleue to  
“ haue seene  
“ God.  
“ Men trans-  
“ formed in-  
“ to stones:

“ And into  
“ staues.

“ Of an o-  
“ ther Man  
“ whom the  
“ Sauages be-  
“ leue to  
“ haue spo-  
“ ken with  
“ God.  
“ *Tabacco*.

I doe not  
thinke that  
this Theo-  
logy may be  
expounded  
to these  
people,  
though one  
could per-  
fectly speak  
their lan-  
guage.

“ which sometimes they haue among them. I demanded of  
 “ him, whether he did beleuee all that; he told me, yes, & that  
 “ it was true. Now I beleuee that that is the cause why they  
 “ say that God is not very good. But I replied and said vnto  
 “ him, that God was all good, and that without doubt it was  
 “ the Diuell that had shewed himselfe to those men, and that  
 “ if they did beleuee in God as we doe, they should want no-  
 “ thing that should be needfull for them : That the Sunne  
 “ which they saw, the Moone and the Starres, were created  
 “ by the same great God, who hath made both Heauen and  
 “ Earth, and that they haue no power, but that which God  
 “ hath giuen them : That we beleuee in that great God, who  
 “ by his goodnesse did send vnto vs his dearely beloued Son,  
 “ who being conceiued by the Holy Ghost, tooke humane  
 “ flesh within the virgin wombe of the Virgin Mary, hauing  
 “ been 33. yeeres on earth working infinit miracles, raising vp  
 “ the dead, healing the sicke, driuing out Diuels, giuing sight  
 “ to the blinde, shewing vnto men the wil of God his Father,  
 “ for to serue, honour and worship him, hath spilled his  
 “ blood, and suffered death and passion for vs, and for our  
 “ sinnes, and redeemed mankind, being buried and risen a-  
 “ gaine, went downe into hell, and ascended vp into Hea-  
 “ uen, where he sitteth at the right hand of God his father.  
 “ That this was the beleefe of all Christians, which doe be-  
 “ leuee in the Father, in the Sonne, and in the holy Ghost,  
 “ which be not for all that three Gods, but are one selfesame  
 “ and one onely God, and one Trinity, wherein there is no-  
 “ thing before nor after, nothing greater nor lesser. That  
 “ the Virgin Mary, Mother to the Sonne of God, and all men  
 “ and women that haue liued in this world, doing Gods com-  
 “ mandements, and suffered Martyrdome for his name, and  
 “ who, by the permission of God, haue wrought miracles,  
 “ and are Saints in Heauen in his Paradise, pray all for vs vn-  
 “ to this great diuine Maiestie, to pardon vs our faults and  
 “ sinnes, which we do against his law and commandements :  
 “ And so by the Saints praiers in Heauen, and by our owne  
 that

that we make to his diuine Maieftie, he giueth vs what we haue need of, and the Diuell hath no power ouer vs; and can doe vs no hurt. That if they had this beleefe they should be euen as we are. That the Diuell should not be able to doe them any more harme, and they should not want what should be needfull for them. Then the said *Sagamo* said vnto mee, that he granted all that I said. I demanded of him what ceremony they vsed in praying to their God: he told me that they vsed no other ceremony, but that euery one did pray in his heart as he would. This is the cause why, I beleeeue, there is no law among them, neither doe they know what it is to worship or pray to God, and liue the most part as brute beasts: And I beleeeue that in short time they might be brought to be good Christians, if one would inhabit their land, which most of them doe desire. They haue among them some Sauages whom they call *Pilotona*, who speake visibly to the Diuell, and he telleth them what they must doe, as well for warres as for other things: And if he should command them to goe and put any enterprife in execution, or to kill a French man or any other of their nation, they will immediatly obey to his command. They beleeeue also that all their dreames are true; and indeed, there be many of them which doe say that they haue seene and dreamed things that doe happen, or shall come to passe: but to speake thereof in truth they be visions of the Diuell, who doth deceiue and seduce them. So farre *Monsieur Champleins* report. As for our *Souriquois*, and other their neighbours, I can say nothing else, but that they are destitute of all knowledge of God, haue no Adoration, neither doe they make any diuine seruice, liuing in a pitifull ignorance; which ought to touch the hearts both of Christian Princes, and Prelates, who very often doe employ vpon friuolous things that which would be more than sufficient to establish there many Colonies, which would beare their names, about whom these poore people would flocke and assemble themselues. I do

What Sa-  
uages  
speake to  
the Diuell.

The Sau-  
ges do be-  
leeue firm-  
ly in  
dreames.

A lesson for  
Christian  
Princes and  
Prelates.

not

To all sorts  
and degrees  
of people.

Luk. 12. vers.  
31.

not say they should goe thither in Person, for their presence is heere more necessary, and besides euery one is not fit for the Sea : but there are so many persons well disposed that would imploy themselues on that, if they had the meanes : They then that may doe it are altogether vnexcusable. Our present age is fallen, as one might say, into an *Astorgie*, wanting both loue and Christian charity, and retaine almost nothing of that fire which kindled our Fathers either in the time of our first Kings, or in the time of the *Croisades* for the holy land ; yea contrariwise if any venture his life, and that little meanes he hath, vpon this generous Christian worke, the most part doe mocke him for it, like to the *Salamandre*, which doth not liue in the midst of flames, as some doe imagine, but is offso cold a nature that shee killeth them by her coldnesse. Euery one would runne after treasures, and would carry them away without paines taking, and afterward to liue frolike ; but they come too late for it, and they should haue enough if they did belecue, as is meet to doe, in him that hath said : *Seeke first the kingdome of God, and all these things shall be giuen vnto you ouer and aboue.*

Let vs returne to our Sauages, for whose conuersion it resteth vnto vs to pray to God that it will please him to open the meanes to make a plentifull haruest to the further manifestation of the Gospell : for ours, and generally all those people euen as farre as *Florida* inclusiuely, are very easie to be brought to the Christian religion, according as I may coniecture of them which I haue not seene, by the discourse of Histories. But I finde that there shall be more facility in them of the neerer lands, as from *Cap-Breton* to *Malebarre*, because they haue not any shew of religion (for I call not religion vnlesse there be some *Latria* and diuine seruice) nor tillage of ground (at least as farre as *Chonakoet*) which is the chiefest thing that may draw men to belecue as one would, by reason that out from the Earth commeth all that which is necessaric for the life, after the  
generall

generall vse we haue of the other Elements. Our life hath chiefly need of meat, drinke and clothing. These people (as one may say) haue nothing of all that, for it is not to be called couered, to be alwaies wandring and lodged vnder foure stakes, and to haue a skinne vpon their backe: neither doe I call eating and liuing, to eat all at once and starue the next day, not prouiding for the next day. Whosoever then shall giue bread and clothing to this people, the same shall be, as it were, their God, they will beleue all that he shall say to them. Euen as the Patriarch Iacob did promise to serue God if he would giue him bread to eat and garments to couer him. God hath no name: for all that wee can say, cannot comprehend him. But we call him God, because hee giueth. And man in giuing may by resemblance be called God. Cause (saith S. *Gregorie Nazianzeno*) that thou beest a God towards the needie, in imitating Gods mercifulnesse. For man hath nothing so diuine in him as benefits. The heathen haue knowen this, and amongst others *Pliny*, when he saith, that it is a great signe of diuinitie in a mortall man, to helpe and aide an other mortall man. These people then enioying the fruits of the vse of trades and tillage of the ground, will beleue all that shall be told them, *in auditum auris*, at the first voice that shal sound in their eares: and of this haue I certain proofes, because I haue knowen them wholly disposed thereunto by the communication they had with vs; and there bee some of them that are Christians in minde, & do performe the acts of it, in such wise as they can, though they be not baptised: among whom I will name *Chkoudun*, Captaine (*alias Sagamos*) of the riuer of Saint Iohn, mentioned in the beginning of this worke, who, whensoever he eateth, listeth vp his eies to heauen, and maketh the signe of the crosse, because he hath scene vs doe so: yea at our praiers he did kneele downe as we did: And because he hath scene a great crosse planted neere to our fort, he hath made the like at his house, and in all his cabins; and carieth one at

The right meanesto bring the Sa-uages to ones deuotion.  
Gen. 28.20.

*Greg. Nazian* in the oration of the care for the poore.

*Plin. lib. 2.7.*

his brest, saying, that he is no more a Sauage, and acknowledging plainly, that they are beasts (so hee saith in his language) but that he is like vnto vs, desiring to be instructed. That which I say of this man, I may affirme the same almost of all the others: And though he should be alone, yet hee is capable, being instructed, to bring in all the rest.

The Armouchiquois are a great people, which haue likewise no adoration: and being settled, because they manure the ground, one may easily make a congregation of them, and exhort them to that which is for their saluation.

Lib. 1. chap. 7.

They are vicious and bloody men, as we haue said heere before: but this insolencie proceeds for that they feele themselves strong, by reason of their multitude, and because they liue more at ease than the others, reaping the fruits of the earth. Their countrie is not yet well knowne, but in that small part that wee haue discovered, I finde they haue conformitie with them of *Virginia*, except in the superstition & error, in that which concerneth our subject, for as much as the Virginians doe begin to haue some opinion of a superior thing in nature, which gouerneth heere this world. They beleue in many gods (as an English Historian that dwelt there reporteth) which they call *Montoac*, but of sundry sorts and degrees. One alone is chiefe and great, who hath euer beene, who purposing to make the world, made first other gods, for to be meanes and instruments, wherewith he might serue himselfe in the Creation and in the government. Then afterwards the Sunne, the Moone and the Starres, as demy gods, and instruments of the other Principall order. They hold that the woman was first made, which by coniunction with one of the gods had children. All these people doe generally beleue the immortality of the soule, and that after death good men are in rest, and the wicked in paine: Now them that they esteeme to be the wicked are their enemies, and they the good men: In such sort that, in their opinion, they shall all after death be well at ease, and specially when they

A conformity  
betweene  
the Armouchi-  
quois and  
the naturall  
Virginians.  
The religion  
of the Virgi-  
nians.



they haue well defended their country, and killed many of their enemies. And as touching the resurrection of the bodies, there are yet some nations in those parts that haue some glimpse of it. For the *Virginians* doe tell tales of certaine men risen againe, which say strange things: As of one wicked man, who after his death had beene neere to the mouth of *Popogusso* (which is their Hell) but a god saued him, and gaue him leaue to come againe into the world, for to tell his friends what they ought to doe for to auoide the comming into this miserable torment. Item, that yeare that the English men were there, it came to passe within 60. leagues off from them (as said the *Virginians*) that a body was vnburied, like to the first, and did shew, that being dead in the pit, his soule was aliue, and had trauelled very farre, thorow a long and large way, on both sides of which did grow very faire and pleasant trees, bearing the rarest fruits that can be seene: and that in the end he came to very faire houses; neere to the which he found his father, which was dead, who expressly commanded him to returne backe and to declare vnto his frinds the good which it behooued them to doe for to enioy the pleasures of this place: And that after he had done his message he should come thither againe. The generall History of the West Indies reporteth, that before the comming of the Spaniards into *Perou*, they of *Cusco* and thereabout, did likewise belecue the resurrection of the bodies. For seeing that the Spaniards, with a cursed auarice, opening the sepulchers for to haue the gold and the riches that were in them, did cast and scatter the bones of the dead heere and there, they praied them, not to scatter them so, to the end that the same should not hinder them from rising againe: which is a more perfect beleefe than that of the *Sadduces*, and of the Greekes, which the Gospell and the Acts of the Apostles witness vnto vs that they scoffed at the resurrection, as also, almost all the heathen antiquity hath done.

Fabulous  
tales of the  
resurrection.

Hist. gen. of  
the Indies. 4.  
booke, the  
124. chap.

Luc. 20. vers.  
27.  
Act. 17. vers.  
32.

Some of our Westerne Indians, expecting this resurrection, haue esteemed that the soules of the good did goe into heauen, & them of the wicked into a great pit or hole, which they thinke to be far off towards the Sunne setting, which they call *Popogusso*, there to burne for ever: and such is the beleefe of the *Virginians*: The others (as the *Brasilians*) that the wicked goe with *Aignan*, which is the euill spirit that tormenteth them: but as for the good, that they went behinde the Mountaines to dance and make good cheere with their fathers. Many of the ancient Christians, grounded vpon certaine places of *Esdra*, of *S. Paul*, and others, haue thought that after death our soules were sequestred into places vnder the earth, as in *Abrahams* bosome, attending the iudgement of God: And there *Origen* hath thought that they are as in a Schoole of soules, and place of instruction, where they learne the causes and reasons of the things they haue seene on the Earth, and by reasoning make iudgements of consequences of things past, and of things to come. But such opinions haue bene reiected by the resolution of the Doctours of *Sorbone* in the time of King Philip the faire, and since by the Councell of *Florence*. Now if the Christians haue held that opinion, is it much to these poore Sauages to bee entred in those opinions that we haue recited of them?

As concerning the worshipping of their gods, of all them that be out of the Spanish dominion, I finde none but the *Virginians* that vse any diuine seruice (vnlesse we will also comprehend therein, that which the *Floridians* doe, which we will recite hereafter) They then represent their gods in the shape of a man, which they call *Kevuasouuock*. One onely is named *Kevmas*. They place them in houses and Temples, made after their fashion, which they call *Machicomuck*, wherein they make their prayers, singing and offering to those gods. And seeing we are fallen to speake of infidels, I praise rather the ancient Romans who were aboue 173. yeares without any images of Gods, as *S. Augustin*

4. *Esdra* 7.  
ver. 31. 32.  
S. Paul to the  
Heb. ch. 11.  
at the end.  
Orig. 2.  
booke of  
principles.

S. Aug. 4. de  
Ginitate Dei  
cap. 31.

*Augustin*

gustin saith. *Numa Pompilius* hauing wisely forbidden to make any, because that such a foolish and senseles thing made them to be despised, and from this contempt came, that the people did cast out all feare, nothing being better than to worship them in spirit seeing they are spirits. And indeed *Pliny* saith: *That there is nothing which sheweth more the weakenesse of mans wit, than to seeke to assigne some image or figure to God. For in what part soeuer that God sheweth himselfe he is all sense, all sight, all hearing, all soule, all understanding: and finally he is all of himselfe, without vsing any organe.* The ancient Germans instructed in this doctrine, not onely did admit no images of their gods (as saith *Tacitus*) but also would not that they should be drawen or painted against the walles, nor set in any humane forme, esteeming that to derogate too much from the greatnes of the heauenly power. It may be said among vs that figures and representations are the bookes of the vnlearned: but leauing disputations aside, it were fitting that euery one should be wise and wel instructed, and that no body should be ignorant.

Plin. lib. 2.  
cap. 7.

Our *Souriquois* and *Armonchiquois* Sauages, haue the industry both of painting and caruing, and doemake pictures of beasts, birds and men, as well in stone as in wood, as pretilie as good workemen in these parts; and notwithstanding they serue not themselues with them in adoration, but onely to please the sight, and the vse of some priuat tooles, as in Tabacco-pipes. And in that (as I haue said at the first) though they be without diuine worship, I praise them more than the *Virginians* and all other sorts of people, which more beasts than the very beasts worship and reuerence senselesse things.

The Sauages  
haue the in-  
dustrie both  
of painting  
and caruing.

Captaine *Laudonniere* in his History of *Florida*, saith that they of that Country haue no knowledge of God; nor of any religion, but of that which appeareth vnto them, as the Sunne and the Moone; to whom, neuertheless, I finde not in all the said History that they make any adoration,

The Floridians.

*Belleforests*  
false report.

sauing that when they goe to warre, the *Paracousi* maketh some praier to the Sunne for to obtaine victory, and which being obtained he yeeldeth him praises for it, with songs to the honour of him, as I haue more particularly spoken in my first booke the 10. chapter. And notwithstanding *Monsieur De Belleforest* writeth to haue taken from the said History that which he mentioneth of their bloudie sacrifices, like to them of the *Mexicains*, assembling themselves in one field, and setting vp there their lodges, where after many dances and ceremonies, they lift vp in the aire and offer to the Sunne, him vpon whom the lot is fallen to be sacrificed. If he bee bold in this thing, he presumeth no lesse where he writeth the like of the people of *Canada*, whom he maketh sacrificers of humane bodies, although they neuer thought on it. For if Captaine *Iames Quartier* hath seen some of their enemies heads, dressed like leather, set vpon peeces of wood, it doth not follow that they haue beene sacrificed, but it is their custome to doe so, like to the ancient *Gaulois*, that is to say, to take off the heads of their enemies whom they haue killed, and to set them vp in, or without their Cabins as a Trophee: which is vsuall thorow all the West Indies.

To returne to our *Floridians*, if any one will call the honour they doe to the Sunne, to be an act of religion, I will not contrary him. For in the old time of the golden age, when that ignorance found place amongst men, many (considering the admirable effects of the Sunne and of the Moone, wherewith God vseth to gouerne things in this low world) attributed vnto them the reuerence due to the Creator: And this maner of reuerence is expounded vnto vs by *Iob*, when he saith: *If I haue beholden the Sunne in his brightnesse, and the Moone running cleere: and if my heart hath been seduced in secret, and my mouth hath kissed my hand: this also had beene an iniquity to be condemned: for I had denied the great God aboue.* As for the hand kissing it is a kind of reuerence which is yet obserued in doing homages.

*Iob* 31. vers.  
26. 27.

Not

Not being able to touch the Sunne, they stretch forth their hands towards it, then kissed it: or they touched his Idoll, and afterwards did kisse the hand that had touched it. And into this idolatry did the people of Israel sometime fall, as we see in *Ezechiel*.

In regard of the *Brasilians*, I finde by the discourse of *Iohn De Leri* (whom I had rather follow than a Spanish Authour, in that which he hath seene) that not onely they are like vnto ours, without any forme of religion or knowledge of God, but that they are so blind and hardned in their *anthropophagie*, that they seeme to be in no wise capable of the Christian doctrine. Also they are visibly tormented and beate by the diuell (which they call *Aignan*) and with such rigor, that when they see him come, sometimes in the shape of a beast, sometimes of a bird, or in some strange forme, they are as it were, in despaire. Which is not with the other Sauages, more hitherward, towards New-found-land, at least with such rigor. For *Iames Quartier* reporteth that he casteth earth in their eies, and they call him *Cudoñagni*: & there, where we were (where they call him *Aontem*) I haue sometimes heard that he had scratched *Membertou*, being then, as it were, a kinde of Soothsaier of the Country. When one tels the *Brasilians* that one must belecue in God, they like that aduice well enough, but by and by they forget their lesson and returne againe to their owne vomit, which is a strange brutishnes, not to be willing at the least to redeeme themselues from the diuels vexation, by religion: Which maketh them vnexcusable, seeing also they haue some memory remaining in them of the generall flood, and of the Gospell (if it be so that their report be true) for they make mention in their songs that the waters being once ouerflowne, did couer all the earth, and all men were drowned, except their Grandfathers, who saued themselues vpon the highest trees of their Country. And of this flood other Sauages, mentioned by me else where, haue also some tradition.

Ezech 8. ver.  
16.  
Brasilians.

In the first  
booke third  
Chapter.

As

maketh  
nd which  
n songs to  
spoken in  
standing  
from the  
loudie sa-  
ng them-  
es, where  
n the aire  
s fallen to  
umeth no  
f *Canada*,  
although  
*Quartier*  
e leather,  
they haue  
like to the  
ds of their  
vpin, or  
is vsuall

all the ho-  
on, I will  
ldenage,  
n, many  
nd of the  
gs in this  
due to the  
ded vnto  
e Sunne in  
f my heart  
t my hand:  
I had de-  
is a kind  
omages.  
Not

As concerning the Gospell, the said *de Leri* saith, that ha-  
 uing once found occasion to shew vnto them the begin-  
 ning of the world, and how it is meet to beleeue in God,  
 and their miserable condition, they gaue care vnto him  
 with great attention, being all amazed for that which they  
 had heard: and that thereupon, an ancient man, taking  
 vpon him to speake, said, that in truth he had recited won-  
 derful things vnto them, which made him to call to minde,  
 that which many times they had heard of their Grandfa-  
 thers, that of a long time sithence a *Mair* (that is to say, a  
 stranger, clothed and bearded like to the Frenchmen) had  
 bene there, thinking to bring them to the obedience of  
 the God which he declared vnto them, and had vsed the  
 like exhortatiō vnto them: but that they would not beleeue  
 him. And therefore there came another thither, who, in  
 signe of a curse, gaue them their armours, wherewith since  
 they haue killed one another: and that there was no like-  
 lihood they should forsake that maner of life, because that  
 all their neighbour Nations would mocke them for it.

But our *Souriquois*, *Canadians* and their neighbours are  
 not so hardened in their wicked life, no neither the *Virgini-  
 ans* nor *Floridians*, but will receiue the Christian doctrine  
 very easily, when it shall please God to stirre vp them that  
 be able to succour them, neither are they visibly tormen-  
 ted, beaten and torne by the Diuell, as this barbarous peo-  
 ple of *Brazil*, which is a strange malediction, more parti-  
 cular vnto them, than to other Nations of those parts.  
 Which maketh me beleeue that the voice of the Apostles  
 may haue reached so farre, according to the saying of the  
 said old ancient man, to which hauing stopped their eares,  
 they beare a particular punishment for it, not common to  
 others, which peradventure haue neuer heard the word of  
 God, since the vniuersall floud, whereof all those Nations,  
 in more than three thousand leagues of ground haue an ob-  
 scure knowledge, which hath bene giuen them by traditi-  
 on from father to sonne.

CHAP. VI.

*Of the Sooth-saiers and Masters of the Ceremonies  
among the Indians.*

I Will not call (as some haue done) by the name of Priests, them that make the ceremonies and inuocations of diuels among the West Indies, but in as much as they haue the vse of sacrifices and gifts that they offer to their Gods, for as much as (as the Apostle saith) euery Priest or Bishop is ordained to offer gifts and sacrifices: such as were them of *Mexico*, the greatest whereof was called *Papas*, who offered incense to their Idols, the chiefe of them was that of the god whom they did name *Vitzilipuztli*, although neuertheless, the generall name of him, whom they held for supream Lord and author of all things, was *Viracocha*, to whom they attributed excellent qualities, calling him *Pachacamac*, which is, Creator of Heauen and Earth: and *Vsapu*, which is, admirable, and other such like names. They had also sacrifices of men, as them of *Perou* haue yet, which they sacrificed in great number, as *Ioseph Acoſta* discourseth thereof at large. Those may be called Priests or Sacrificers: But in regard of them of *Virginia* and *Florida*, I doe not see any sacrifices they make, and therefore I will qualifie them with the name of *Wizards*, or Masters of the Ceremonies of their religion, which in *Florida* I finde to be called *Iaruars*, and *Ioanas*: in *Virginia*, *Vuiroances*: in *Brasill Caribes*: and among ours (I meane the *Soriquois*) *Aitmoins*. *Landonniere*, speaking of *Florida*: They haue (saith he) their Priests, vnto whom they giue great credit, because they be great Magicians, great Soothsaiers and callers on diuels. These Priests doe serue them for Physicians and Chirurgians, and carrie alwaies with them a bagge full of hearbes and drugges to physicke them that be sicke, which be, the most part, of the great pockes: for they loue women and maidens very much, whom they

Hebr. 8. vers.

3.

*Ioan. Acoſta,*  
*lib. 5. ch. 20.*

21.

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

call the daughters of the Sunne. If there be any thing to be treated, the King calleth the *Iarvans*, and the ancientest men, and demandeth their aduice. See moreouer what I haue written heeretofore in the sixt Chapter of the first booke. As for them of *Virginia*, they are no lesse suttle than them of *Florida*, and do procure credit to themselues, making them to be respected, by trickes or shew of religion, liketo them that we haue spoken of in the last chapter, speaking of some dead men risen vp againe. It is by such meanes, and vnder preteect of religion that the *Inguas* made themselues heeretofore the greatest Princes of *America*. And them of these parts that would deceiue and blinde the people haue likewise vsed of that suttelty, as *Numa Pompilius*, *Lisander*, *Sertorius*, and other more recent, doing (as saith *Plutarke*) as the plaiers of tragedies, who desirous to shew forth things, ouerreaching the humane strength, haue refuge to the superior power of the Gods.

The *Aoutmoins* of the last land of the *Indies* which is the neereest vnto vs, are not so blockish but that they can make the common people to attribute some credit vnto them. For by their impostures they liue and make themselues esteemed to be necessary, playing the part of Physicians and Chirurgions as well as the *Floridians*. Let the great *Sagamos Memberton* be an example thereof. If any body be sicke, he is sent for, he maketh inuocations on his diuell, he bloweth vpon the part griued, he maketh incisions, sucketh the bad blood from it: if it be a wound he healeth it by the same meanes, applying a round slice of the Beavers stones. Finally, some present is made vnto him, either of venison or skinnes. If it be question to haue newes of things absent, hauing first questioned with his spirit, he rendreth his oracles commonly doubtfull, very often false, but sometimes true: as when he was asked whether *Panniac* were dead, he said, that vnlesse he did returne within fifteene daies, they should not expect him any more, and that he was killed by the *Armonchiquois*. And for to haue  
this

*Virginia.*

*Acosta's 6. booke*  
*ch. 19.*

The Physi-  
cians and Chi-  
rurgions of  
the Sauages.



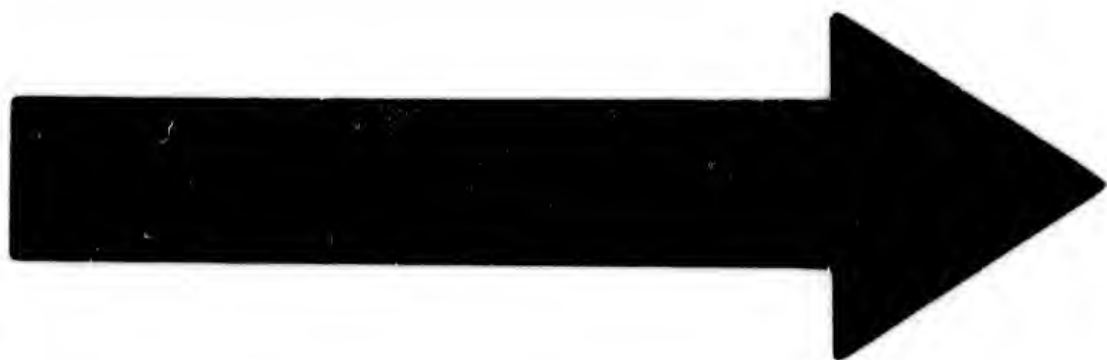
this answer he must be presented with some gift. For there is a triuiall prouerbe among the Greekes, which beareth, That without mony Phoebus Oracles are dumbe. The same *Membertou* rendered a true Oracle of our comming to *Monsieur du Pont*, when that he parted from Port Royall, for to returne into France, seeing the 15. daie of Iuly passed without hauing any newes. For he did maintaine still, and did affirme that there should come a ship, and that his diuell had told it him. Item when the Sauages be a hungred they consult with *Membertous* Oracle, and he saith vnto them, Go yee to such a place & you shal finde game. It happeneth sometimes that they finde some, and sometimes none. If it chance that none be found, the excuse is, that the beast is wandering and hath changed place: but so it comes to passe, that very often they finde some: And this is it which makes them beleue that this diuell is a god, and they know none other, to whom notwithstanding they yeeld not any seruice nor adoration in any forme of religion.

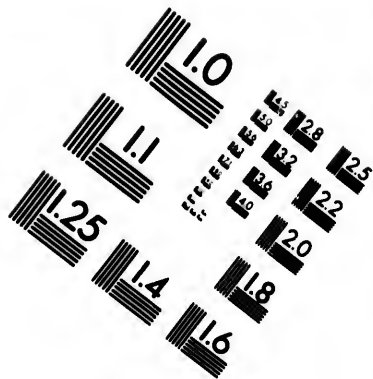
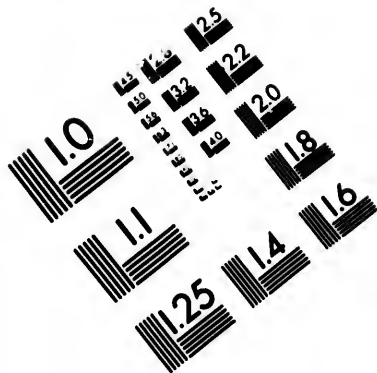
When that these *Aoutmoins* make their moyes and moppes, they fix a staffe in a pit, to which they tie a cord, and putting their head into this pit, they make inuocations or coniurations in a language vnknown to the others that are about, and this with beatings and howlings, vntill they sweat with very paine: yet I haue not heard that they some at the mouth as the Turkes doe. When this diuell is come, this master *Aoutmoin* makes them beleue that he holdeth him tied by his cord, and holdeth fast against him, forcing him to giue him an answer before he let him goe. By this is knowen the subtilty of this enemy of nature, who beguileth thus these miserable creatures, and his pride withall, in willing that they which doe call vpon him, yeeld vnto him more submission then euer the holy Patriarches and Prophets haue done to God, who haue onely praied with their faces towards the ground.

That done he beginneth to sing some thing (as I thinke)

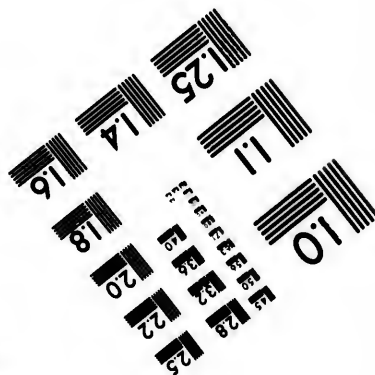
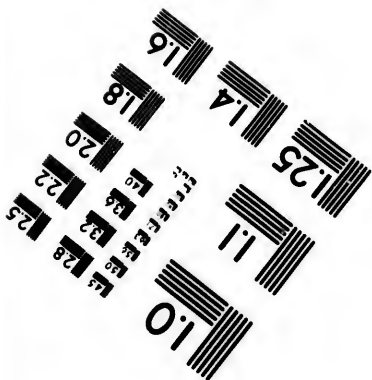
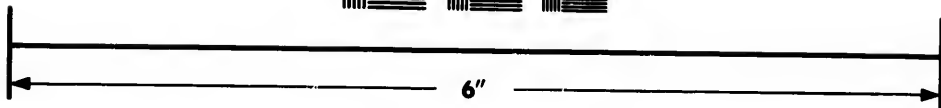
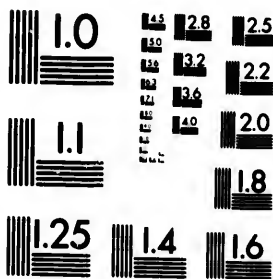
How the  
*Aoutmoins*  
inuocate the  
Diuell.

A song to the  
praise of the  
Diuell.





**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

0  
M  
E E E E E  
E 1.8  
E 2.0  
E 2.2  
E 2.5  
E 3.2  
E 4.8

11  
11  
01  
01

to the praise of the diuell, who hath discovered some game vnto them : and the other Sauages that are there doe answer, making some concordance of musicke among them. Then they dance after their maner, as we will heereafter say, with songs which I vnderstand not, neither those of ours that vnderstood their speech best. But one day going to walke in our Medowes along the riuer, I drew neere to *Membertons* cabine, and did write in my table booke part of that which I vnderstood, which is written there yet in these termes ; *haloet ho ho hé he ha ha haloet ho ho hé*, which they did repeat diuers times. The tune is in my said table booke in these notes : *re fa sol sol re sol sol fa fa re re sol sol fa fa*. One song being ended, they all made a great exclamation, saying *E!* Then began againe another song, saying : *Egrigna hau egrigna he he hu hu ho ho cgrigna hau hau hau*. The tune of this was, *fa fa fa sol sol fa fa re re sol sol fa fa re fa fa sol sol fa*. Hauing made the vsuall exclamation they began yet another song which was : *Tameia alleluia tameia dou veni hau hau hé hé*. The tune whereof was : *sol sol sol fa fa re re re fa fa sol fa sol fa fa re re*. I attentiuely harkned vpon this word *alleluia* repeated sundry times, and could neuer heare any other thing. Which maketh mee thinke that these songs are to the praises of the diuel, if notwithstanding this word signifie with them that which it signifieth in Hebrew, which is, *Praise ye the Lord*. All the other Nations of those Countries doe the like : but no body hath particularly described their songs, sauing *Iohn de Leri*, who saith that the *Brasilians* doe make as good agreements, in their Sabbaths. And being one day at their solemnity he doth report that they said, *Hè bè bè hè hè bè bè hè hè bè* ; with this note : *fa fa sol fa fa sol sol sol sol sol*. And that done they cried out and howled after a fearefull maner the space of a quarter of an houre, and the women did skip violently in the aire vntill they fomed at the mouth : then began againe their musike, saying : *Heu heüraüre heüra heüra ouech* : the note is, *fa mi re sol*  
sol

*sol sol fa mi re mi re mi ut re.* This authour saith that in this song, they bewailed their deceased fathers, which were so valiant, and neuertheless they comforted themselues for that after their death, they were assured to goe to them behinde the high Mountaines, where they should daunce and be merry with them. Likewise that they had, with all vehemency, threatned the *Ouetacas* their enemies to be in very short time taken and eaten by them, according as the *Caraibes* had promised them: and that they had also made mention of the flood spoken of in the former chapter. I leaue vnto them that doe write of *Demonomanie* to philosophize vpon that matter. But moreouer, I must say that whilest our Sauages do sing in that maner before said, there be some others which doe nothing else but say *Hè* or *Het* (like to a man that cleaueth wood) with a certaine motion of the armes: and daunce in round, not holding one another, nor moouing out of one place, striking with their feet against the ground, which is the forme of their daunces, like vnto those which the said *De Leri* reporteth of them of *Brasil*, which are aboute 1500. leagues from that place. After which things our Sauages make a fire and leape ouer it, as the ancient Cananites, Ammonites, and sometimes the Israelites did: but they are not so detestable, for they doe not sacrifice their Children to the diuell, thorow the fire. Besides all this, they put halfe a pole out of the top of the Cabin where they are, at the end whereof there is some *Matachias*, or some thing else tied, which the diuell carrieth away. Thus haue I heard the discourse of their maner of doing in this matter.

There may be heere considered a bad vse to leape ouer the fire, and to make the children to passe thorow the flame in the fire made vpon S. Iohn Baptists day; which custome indureth yet to this day among vs, and ought to be reformed. For the same commeth from the ancient abominations that God hath so much hated, whereof *Theodore* speaketh in this wise: *I haue seene* (saith he) *in some*

The daunces of the Sauages.

Leuit. 20. ve  
2. 30.  
Deuter. 12.  
vers. 31. and  
18. vers. 10.  
and 4. of Kin.  
17. vers. 17. 31.  
Psal. 106.

S. Iohns bonfire.

Theod. vpon the 16. chap. of the fourth booke of Kings.

*Townes piles of wood kindled once a yeare, and not onely children to leape over them, but also men, and the mothers bearing their children over the flame, which did seeme unto them to be as an expiation and purification. And this in my iudgement was the sinne of Achaz.*

*Can. 65. Synod.  
6. in Trullo.*

These fashions haue beene forbiddeen by an ancient Councell holden at Constantinople. Whereupon *Balsamon* doth note that the 23. daie of Iune (which is Saint Iohn Baptist eue) men and women did assemble themselves at the Sea shore and in houses, and the eldest daughter was dressed like a bride, and after they had made good cheare and well drunke, daunces were made, with exclamations and fires all the night, prognosticating of good and bad lucke. These fires haue beene continued among vs, vpon a better subiect. But the abuse must be taken away.

The diuell  
will be serued  
as God.

Now as the diuell hath alwaies beene willing to play the ape, and to haue a seruice like to that which is giuento God, so would hee that his officers should haue the marke of their trade, to the end to deceiue the simple people the better. And indeed *Memberton*, of whom we haue spoken, as a learned *Aoutmoin*, carieth hanged at his necke the marke of this profession, which is a purse trianglewise, couered with their imbrodery worke, that is to say with *Matachiaz*, within which there is I know not what as bigge as a small nut, which he saith to be his diuell called *Aoutem*, which they of *Canada* doe name *Cudouagni*, as saith *Iames Quartier*. I will not mingle sacred things with prophane, but according as I haue said that the diuell plaith the ape, this maketh me to remember of the *Rational* or *Pectoral* of iudgement, which the high Priest did carry before him in the ancient law, on the which *Moses* had put *Urim* and *Thummim*. Now *Rabbi David* saith that it is not knowen what these *Urim* and *Thummim* were, and it seemeth that they were stones. *Rabbi Selomoh* saith that it was the name of God *Iehonah*, an ineffable name, which he did put within the foldes of the *Pectoral*, whereby he made his

his word to shine. *Iosephus* doth thinke that they were Twelue pretious stones. *S. Hierome* doth interpret these two words to signifie *Doctrine* and *Truth*.

And as the Priestly office was successiue, not onely in the house of *Aron*, but also in the family of the great Priest of *Memphis*, whose office was assigned to his eldest sonne after him, as *Thyamis* saith in the *Ethiopian History* of *Heliodorus*: Euen so among these people this office is successiue; and by tradition they doe teach the secret thereof to their eldest sonnes. For *Membertous* eldest sonne (who was named *Iudas*, in iest, for which he was angry, vnderstanding it was a bad name) told vs, that after his father, he should be *Aoutmoin* in that precinct: which is a small matter: for euery *Sagamos* hath his *Aoutmoin*, if himselfe be not so, but yet they couet the same, for the profit that commeth thereof.

The *Brasilians* haue their *Caraibes*, who trauell thorow the villages, making the people belecue that they haue communication with spirits, through whose meanes they can, not onely giue them victory against their enemies, but also, that of them depends the fertility or sterility of the ground. They haue commonly a certaine kinde of belles or rattles in their hands, which they call *Maraca*, made with the fruit of a tree, as bigge as an *Estriches* egge, which they make hollow, as they doe heere the bottels of the Pilgrims that goe to *Saint Iames*: And hauing filled them with small stones, they make a noise with them, in their solemnities, like the bladders of hogges: and going from towne to towne they beguile the world, telling the people that their diuell is within the same. These *Maracas* or Rattles wel decked with faire feathers, they sticke in the ground the stafe that is thorow it, and doe place them all along and in the middest of the houses, commanding that meat and drinke be giuen to them. In such wise that these cogging mates, making the other poore idiots to belecue (as the Sacrificers of the idoll *Beldid* heeretofore, of whom

Those bottles, or rattles are made of Pompions.

The imposture of the *Caraibes*.

mention



mention is made in the History of *Daniel*) that those fruits doe eat and drinke in the night : euery housholder giuing credit thereto, doth not faile to set neere these *Maracas*, meale, flesh, fish, and drinke, which seruice they continue by the space of fifteene daies or three weekes : and during that time they are so foolish as to perswade themselues that in sounding with these *Maracas*, some spirit speaketh vnto them, and attribute diuinity vnto them, In such sort that they would esteeme it a great misdeed to take away the meat that is presented before those faire belles, with which meates those reuerend *Caraibes* doe meerey fatten themselues. And so vnder false pretexts, is the world deceiued.

CHAP. 7.

Of their Language.

Sundri languages.

**T**He effects of the confusion of *Babel* are come in as farre as to those people whereof we speake, as well as in the higher world. For I see that the *Patagons* doe speake another language than them of *Brasil*, and they otherwise than the *Peroüans*, and the *Peroüans* are distinct from the *Maxicans* : the *Iles* likewise haue their peculiar speech : they speake not in *Florida* as they doe in *Virginia* : Our *Souriquois* and *Etechemins* vnderstand not the *Ar-mouchiquois* : nor these the *Iroquois* : briefly, euery Nation is diuided by the language : yea in one and the selfe same Prouince there is difference in language, euen as in *Gallia* the *Fleming*, they of *Basse Bretaine*, the *Gascon* and the *Basque* doe not agree. For the Authour of the History of *Virginia* saith, that there euery *Wiroans*, or Lord, hath his peculiar speech. Let this be for example, that the chiefe man or Captaine of some precinct (whom our Historians *James Quartier* and *Landonniere*, doe call by the name of King) is called in *Canada*, *Agohanna*; among the *Souriquois*, *Sagamos*; in *Virginia*, *Wiroans*; in *Florida*, *Paracussi*; In the *Iles*

Iles of *Cuba*, *Cacique* : the Kings of *Perou*, *Inguas*, and so forth. I have left the *Armonchiquois* and others, which I know not. As for the *Brafilians* they have no Kings, but the old ancient men, whom they call *Peoreronpicheck*, because of the experience they have of things past, are they which doe governe, exhort and dispose of all things. The very tongues are changed, as we see, that with vs we have not the language of the ancient *Gaullois*, nor that which was in *Charolus Magnus* time (at least it doth differ very much) the Italians doe speake no more Latin, nor the Grecians the ancient Greeke, specially in the sea coasts, nor the Iewes the ancient Hebrew. In like maner *James Quartier* hath left vnto vs a kinde of Dictionary of the language of *Canada*, wherein our Frenchmen that haunt there, in these daies, vnderstand nothing : and therefore I would not insert it heere : onely I have there found *Caraconi* which signifieth bread, and now they say *Caracona*, which I esteem to be a word of *Basque*. For the satisfaction of some I will set heere some numbers of the ancient and new language of *Canada*.

The old.		The new.	
1	<i>Segada.</i>	1	<i>Begou.</i>
2	<i>Tigeni.</i>	2	<i>Nichou.</i>
3	<i>Asbe.</i>	3	<i>Nichtoa.</i>
4	<i>Homacou.</i>	4	<i>Rau.</i>
5	<i>Oniscon.</i>	5	<i>Apateta.</i>
6	<i>Indaic.</i>	6	<i>Contouachin.</i>
7	<i>Ayaga.</i>	7	<i>Neouachin.</i>
8	<i>Adægue.</i>	8	<i>Nestouachin.</i>
9.	<i>Madellon.</i>	9	<i>Pescouadet.</i>
10	<i>Assem.</i>	10	<i>Metren.</i>
The <i>Souriquois</i> doe say.		The <i>Etechemins</i> .	
1	<i>Negouu.</i>	1	<i>Bechkan.</i>
2	<i>Tabo.</i>	2	<i>Nich.</i>
3	<i>Chicht.</i>	3	<i>Nach.</i>
		γ	4 <i>Neon.</i>

4	<i>Neon.</i>	4	<i>Iau.</i>
5	<i>Nan.</i>	5	<i>Prenchk.</i>
6	<i>Kamachin.</i>	6	<i>Chachit.</i>
7	<i>Eroeguenik.</i>	7	<i>Contachit.</i>
8	<i>Meguemorchin.</i>	8	<i>Erouignen.</i>
9	<i>Echkonadek.</i>	9	<i>Pechcoquem.</i>
10	<i>Metren.</i>	10	<i>Peiock.</i>

Conformity  
of languages.

Sagamos  
doth also  
signifie a King  
in the East  
Indies.

For the conformity of languages, there are sometimes found words in these parts, which doe signifie some thing there, as *Iohn de Leri* saith, that *Leri* signifieth an *Oyster* in *Brasil*: but very few words are found which come in one and the selfesame signification. In *Maffeus* his *Oriental* History I haue read *Sagamos* in the same signification as our *Souriquois* doe take it, to wit, a King, a Duke, a Captaine. And they that haue beene in *Guinee* say, that this word *Babougie* signifieth there a little child, or a fawne of a beast, in that sense as the said *Souriquois* take that word, as this French word *Moustache*, which commeth of *Mistax*, and that which we say in French *boire a tire-larigot*, which I construe in English to drinke till ones eies be out, commeth of *Larygx Lariggos &c.* And the Greeke words *Paradeisos*, *Bosphoros*, come from the Hebrew פּרַדִּיז and כּספּר.

The cause of  
the change of  
languages.

But concerning the cause of the change of the language in *Canada*, whereof we haue spoken, I thinke that it hath happened by a destruction of people. For it is some eight yeeres, since the *Iroquois* did assemble themselues to the number of 8000. men, and discomfited all their enemies, whom they surpris'd in their inclosures. To this I adde the trafficke which they make from time to time for their skinnes, since the French men came to fetch them: for in the time of *James Quartier* Beuers were not cared for. The hats that be made of it are in vse but since that time: not that the inuention thereof is new: for in the ancient orders of the Hat-makers of Paris, it is said that they shall make hats.

Beuer-hats.

hats of fine Beuers (which is the Castor) but whether it be for the dearenesse, or otherwise, the vse thereof hath bene long since left off.

As for the Pronunciation, our *Souriquois* haue the Greeke (v) which we call (v), and their words doe commonly end in (a) as *Souriquois, Souriquoa: Capitaine, Capitaina: Normand, Normandia: Basque, Basquoa: vne Martre* (a Marten) *Martra: a banquet, Tabagua: &c.* But there are certaine letters which they cannot well pronounce, that is to say, an (v) consonant, and (f) in stead whereof they put (b) and (p) as for *fevre* (which is a smith) they will say (*pebre.*) And for (*Sauvago*, which signifieth *Sauage*) they say *Chabaia*, and so call they themselues, not knowing in what sense we take that word. And yet they pronounce the rest of the French tongue better than our Gascons, who, besides the turning of (v) into (b) and of the (b) into (v,) were yet discerned in the last troubles and badly handled in Prouence, by the pronouncing of the word (*Cabre*, in stead whereof they did say (*Crabe,*) as aforetime the *Ephraimites* hauing lost the battel against the *Galaadites*, thinking to scape away, were well knowen in passing the riuer *Jordan*, in pronouncing the word *Shibboleth*, which signifieth an are of Corne, in stead whereof they did say *Sibboleth*, which signifieth the foord of a riuer, asking if they might well passe. The Greekes had also a sundry pronunciation of the selfesame word, because they had foure distinct tongues, varying from the common speech. And in *Plautus* we read that the *Peanestins* not farre distant from Rome did pronounce *Konia*, in stead of *Ciconia*. Yea euen at this day the good wiues of Paris doe yet say, *mon Courin*, for *mon Cousin*, which is my Cozen: and *mon Mazi*, for *mon Mari*, which signifieth husband.

Now to returne to our Sauages: although that by reason of trafficke many of our Frenchmen doe vnderstand them, notwithstanding they haue a particular tongue, which is

Of the pronunciation.

In the booke of Iudges ch. 12. vers. 6.

The Sauages haue a particular tongue.

only knowen to them : which maketh me to doubt of that which I haue said, that the language which was in *Canada* in the time of *James Quartier* is no more in vse. For to accommodate themselves with vs, they speake vnto vs in the language which is to vs more familiar, wherein is much *Basque* mingled with it : not that they care greatly to speake our languages: for there be some of them which do sometimes say, that they come not to seeke after vs : but by long frequentation they cannot but retaine some word or other.

Their manner  
of number-  
ing.

I will farther say, that concerning the numbers (seeing we haue spoken of it) they doe not reckon distinctly as we doe, the daies, the weekes, the moneths, the yeares; but doe declare the yeares by number of summes, as for 100. yeares, they will say *Cachmetren achtek*, that is to say 100. Sonnes, *bitumetrenaguè achtek* 1000. Sonnes, that is to say 1000. yeares : *metren kwichkaminau*, tenne Moneths, *tabometren guenak* 20. daies. And for to shew an innumerable thing, as the people of Paris, they will take their haire or hands full of sand : And after that maner doth the holy Scripture likewise vse sometimes to number, comparing (*Hiperbolicallie*) armies to the sand that is on the Sea shore. They also signifie the seasons by their effects, as for to make a man to vnderstand that the *Sagamos Poutrincourt* will come at the spring time, they will say, *nibir betour*, *Sagmo* (for *Sagamos*, a word shortned) *Poutrincourt betour kedretch*; that is to say, the lease being come, then will the *Sagamos Poutrincourt* come certainly. Therefore as they haue no distinction neither of daies nor of yeares, so be not they persecuted, by the vngodlinesse of their Creditors, as in these parts : neither doe their *Aoutmoins* shorten, nor lengthen, the yeares for to gratifie the Brokers and Bankers, as did, in ancient time, the Idolatrous Priests of Rome, to whom was attributed the gouernment and disposing of times, of seasons and of yeares, as *Solin* writeth.

*Solin, Politi.  
bist. cap. 5.*

CHAP.

## CHAP. VIII.

## Of the use of letters.

IT is well knownen that these Westerne Nations haue no use of letters, and it is that, which all them that haue written of them doe say they haue most admired, to see that by a peece of paper I giue knowledge of my will from one end of the world to the other ; and they thought that there should be enchantment in this paper. But that is not so much to be wondred at, if we consider that in the time of the Romane Emperours, many Nations of these parts knew not the secrets of letters, amongst whom *Tacitus* putteth the *Germans* (who at this day doe swarme with men of learning) and he addeth a notable sentence, that good maners are in more credit there, then good lawes elsewhere.

As for our *Gaullois*, it was not so with them. For euen from the old time of the golden age they had the vse of letters, yea (by the leaue of those godly doctours who do call them Barbarous) before the Greekes and Latines. For *Xenophon* (who speaketh largely of them, and of their beginning in his *Equinoques*) doth witnesse vnto vs, that the letters which *Cadmus* brought to the Greekes were not so much like to the *Phanicien* letters, as the *Galatees* were, that is the *Gaullois*. Wherein *Cesar* did *Equiuocate* in saying that the *Druides* did vse of Greeke letters in priuate matters : for contrariwise the Greekes haue vsed of the *Gaullois* letters. And *Berosé* saith that the third King of the *Gaullois*, after the flood, named *Sorron*, did institute Vniuersities in these parts : and *Diodorus* doth adde that there was in the *Gaulles* *Philosophers* and *Diuines* called *Saronides* (much more ancient then the *Druides*) which were greatly reuerenced, and vnto whom all the people did obey. The same Authours doe say, that *Bardus*, first King of the *Gaullois* did inuent both rymes and musike,

Of letters.

Dutch men.

Gaullois.

See heereafter the 17. Chapter.

Diodor. lib. 6. Biblioth.

brought in Poets and Rethoricians , who were called *Bardes*, whereof *Cesar* and *Strabo* make mention. But the same *Diodore* writeth, that Poets were among them in such reuerence, that when two armies were ready to strike, hauing their swords drawn, and the iauelins in hand to giue the onfet, those Poets comming, euery one did surcease and put vp their weapons: so much doth wrath giue place to wisdome, yea among the wildest Barbarians , and so much doth *Mars* reuerence the *Muses*, saith the Authour. So I hope that our most Christian, most August, and most victorious king *Henry* the Fourth , after the thundring of besieging of townes and battels is ceased , reuerencing the *Muses*, and honoring them, as he hath already done, not onely he will reduce his eldest daughter to her ancient glory, and giue vnto her being a roiall daughter, the proprietie of that *Basilic*, fastened to the temple of *Apollo*, who , by an hidden vertue, did hinder that the Spiders should weaue their webbe along his walles : But will also establish his New France , and bring to the bosome of the Church so many poore soules which that countrey beareth, al starued for the want of the word of God, who are as a pray vnto hell: And that for to doe this hee will giue meanes to conduct thither, Christian *Sarronides* and *Bardes*, bearing the Flower-deluce in thair hearts, who will instruct and bring to ciuilitie those barbarous people, and will bring them to his obedience.

The Kings eldest Daughter is the Vniuersity of Paris. *Gesnerus* in the treatise of Serpents.

This French zeale should stirre vp the English courage for Virginia.

#### CHAP. IX.

*Of their clothing and wearing of their haire.*

**G**OD in the beginning did create man naked, and innocent, made all the parts of his body to bee of honest sight. But sin hath made the members of generation to become shamefull vnto vs, and not vnto beasts which haue no sinne. It is the cause why our first parents hauing

having knowen their nakednesse, destitute of clothes, did  
 sow figge leaues together for to hide their shame there-  
 with : But God made vnto them coates of skinnes, and  
 clothed them with it; and this before they went out of the  
 gardē of *Eden*. Clothing then is not only to defend vs from  
 cold, but also for decencie, and to couer our shame. And  
 neuerthelesse many nations haue anciently liued, and at  
 this day doe liue naked, without apprehension of this  
 shame, decencie, and honestie. And I maruell not of the  
*Braslien* Sauages that are such, as well men as women, nor  
 of the ancient *Picts* (a nation of great Britaine) who (*He-  
 rodotian* faith) had not any vse of clothes, in the time of *Se-  
 uerus* the Emperour : nor of a great number of other na-  
 tions that haue beene and yet are naked : for one may say  
 of them, that they be people fallen into a reprobate sense,  
 and forsaken of God : But of Christians which are in  
*Ethiopia* vnder the great *Negus*, whom we call *Prestes-  
 Ihon*; which, by the report of the *Portingals* that haue wri-  
 ten histories of them, haue not their parts which wee call  
 priuie members, any waies couered. But the Sauages of  
*New France* and of *Florida*, haue better learned and kept  
 in minde the lesson of honestie, than those of *Ethiopia*.  
 For they couer them with a skinnie tied to a latch or gir-  
 dle of leather, which passing between their buttocks, join-  
 eth the other end of the said latch behind. And for the rest  
 of their garments, they haue a cloake on their backs, made  
 with many skinnes, whether they be of *Otters* or of *Bea-  
 uers* : and one only skin, whether it be of *Ellan*, or *Stagges*  
 skinnie, *Beare*, or *Luferne*, which cloake is tied vpward  
 with a leather riband, and they thrust commonly one  
 arme out, but being in their cabins, they put it off, vn-  
 lesse it be cold : And I cannot better compare it than to  
 pictures that are made of *Hercules*, who killed a lion and  
 put the skinnie thereof on his backe. Norwithstanding  
 they haue more ciuilitie, in that they couer their priuie  
 members. As for the women, they differ onely in one  
 thing,

Nakednesse  
 of the *Ethio-  
 pians*.

The Wo-  
 men.



thing, that is, they haue a girdle ouer the skin they haue on: and doe resemble (without comparifon) the pictures that be made of Saint Iohn Baptift. But in Winter they make good Beuer fleeces, tied behind, which keepe them very warme. And after this maner were the ancient Germans clothed, by the report of *Cesar* and *Tacitus*, hauing the most part of the body naked.

As for the *Armonchiquois* and *Floridians* they haue no fures, but onely shamois: yea the said *Armonchiquois* haue very often but a peece of matte vpon their backe, for fashions sake, hauing neuerthelesse their priuie members couered. God hauing so wisely prouided for mans infirmitie, that in cold countries he hath giuen fures, and not in the hot, because that otherwise men would make no esteeme of them. And so for that which concerneth the body. Let vs come to the legges and feet, then we will end with the head.

Gods prouidence.

Of Hofing.

Our Sauages in the Winter, going to sea, or a hunting, doe vse great and high stockings, like to our boote-hofen, which they tie to their girdles, and at the sides outward, there is a great number of points without tagges. I doe not see that they of *Brazil* or *Florida*, doe vse of them, but seeing they haue leather, they may as well make of them, if they haue need as the others. Besides these long stockings, our Sauages doe vse shooes, which they call *Mekezin*, which they fashion very properly, but they cannot dure long, specially when they goe into warric places, because they be not curried, nor hardened, but onely made after the maner of Buffe, which is the hide of an *Ellan*. Howsoeuer it be, yet are they in better order then were the ancience Gottes, which were not throughly hofed, but with buskins or halfe bootes, which came somewhat higher than the ankle of the foote, where they made a knot, which they bound with horse haire, hauing the calfe of the legge, the knees and thighes naked. And for the rest of their garments they had leather

Shooing.

The Gottes clothing.

coates

coates pleated : as greasie as Lard, and the sleeues downe to the beginning of the arme. And on those Ierkins in stead of gold lace, they made red borders, as our Sauages doe. Behold the state of those that ransacked the Romane Empire, whom *Sidonius Apollinaris* Bishop of *Auuergne*, *Sidon. Carm. 7.* doth describe after this maner, going to the Councell of *Ep. 20. lib. 4.* *Anitus* the Emperour, for to treat of peace:

— *Squalent vestes, ac sordida macro*

*Lintea pinguescunt tergo, nec tangere possunt*

*Alata suram pelles, ac poplite nudo*

*Peronem pauper nudis suspendit equinum, &c.*

As for the head attire, none of the Sauages haue any, vnlesse it bee that some of the hether lands trucke his skinnes with Frenchmen for Hattes and Cappes: but rather both men and women weare their haire flittring ouer their shoulders, neither bound nor tied, except that the men doe trusse them vpon the crowne of the head, some foure fingers length, with a leather lace: which they let hang downe behinde. But for the *Armouchiquois* & *Floridians*, as well men as women, they haue their haire much longer, and they hang them downe lower than the girdle when they are vntrussed: for to auoide then the hindrance that they might bring to them, they trusse them vp as our horse-keepers doe a horses taile, and the men doe sticke in them some feather that like them, and the women a needle or bodkin with three points after the fashion of the french Ladies, who also weare their needles or bodkins that serue them partly for an ornament of the head. All the ancient had this custome to goe bareheaded, and the vse of hats is but lately come in. The faire *Abfalon* was hanged by his haire at an Oake, after he had lost the battell against his fathers army, and they did neuer couer their heads in those daies, but when they did mourne for some misfortune, as may be noted by the example of *Dauid*, who hauing vnderstood his sonnes conspiracy fled from *Ierusalem*, and went vp the Mountaine of *Oliues*

The Sauages head-attire.

The Saunge Women weare Bodkins.

2. Sam. 18. vers. 9.

Ibid. 15. ver. 30.

Z

weeping

Ester. 6. vers.  
12.

weeping and hauing his head couered, and all the people that was with him. The *Persians* did the like, as may be gathered by the Historie of *Aman*, who being commanded to honour him whom he would haue to be hanged, to wit *Mardochee*, went home to his house weeping, and his head couered, which was a thing extraordinary. The Romans at their beginning did the like, as I gather by the words which did command the hangman to doe his office, recited by *Cicero* and *Titus Linius* in these termes : *Vade liſtor, colliga manus, caput obnubito, arbori infelici ſuspendito.* And if we will come to our Weſterly and Northerly people, we ſhall finde that the moſt part did were long haire, like vnto them that we call *Sauages*. That cannot be denied of the *Trans-Alpin Gaullois*, who for that occasion gaue the name to *Gallia Comata*; whereof *Martiall* ſpeaking ſaith;

—— *Molleſque Flagellant Colla coma.*

Our French Kings haue beene ſurnamed hairy, becauſe they did weare their haire ſo long that they did beat downe to the backe and the ſhoulders, ſo that *Gregory* of *Tours* ſpeaking of King *Clouis* haire, he calleth it *Capillorum Flagella*. The *Gothes* did the like, and left to hang ouer their ſhoulders great flockes of haire curled, which the authours of that time doe call *granos*, which faſhion of haire was forbidden to Priests, alſo the ſecular apparell, in a Councell of the *Gothes*: and *Iornandes* in the *History* of the *Gothes* reciteth that King *Atalaric* would that the Priests ſhould were the *Thiare*, or hat, making two ſorts of people, ſome whom he called *Pileatos*, the others *Capillatos*, which theſe tooke for ſo great a fauour to be called hairy, that they made mention of this benefit in their ſongs: and notwithstanding they braided not their haire. But I finde by the teſtimony of *Tacitus* that the *Suenians* a Nation of Germany did wreath, knit, and tie their haire on the crowne of their heads, euen as we haue ſaid of the *Souriquois* and *Armonchiquois*. In one thing the *Armonchiquois* doe

Concil. Braccarenſ. 1. Can. 29.

doe differ from the *Souriquois* and other Sauages of New-found-land, which is, that they pull out their haire before, which the others doe not. Contrary to whom, *Pliny* reciteth that at the descent of the *Ripheen* Mountaines anciently was the region of the *Arimpheens*, whom we now call *Musconites*, who dwelt in forests, but they were all shaven as well men as women, and tooke it for a shamefull thing to weare any haire. Sowe see that one selfe same fashion of liuing is receiued in one place and rejected in another. Which is familiarly euident vnto vs in many other things in our regions of these parts, where we see manners and fashions of liuing, all contrary, yea sometimes vnder one and the same Prince.

Plin. 6 booke  
chap. 13.

CHAP. X.

*Of the forme, colour, stature, and actiuity of the Sauages:  
and incidently of the flies in those Westerne parts:  
and why the Americans be not  
blacke, &c.*

**A**Mongst all the formes of liuing and bodily creatures, that of man is the fairest and the most perfect. Which was very decent, both to the creature and to the Creator, seeing that man is placed in this world to command all that is heere beneath. But although that Nature indeuoureth herselfe alwaies to doe good, notwithstanding shee is sometimes short and forced in her actions, and thereof it commeth that we haue monsters and vgly things, contrary to the ordinary rule of others. Yea euen sometimes after that nature hath done her office, we helpe by our artes to render that which she hath made, ridiculous and misshapen: As for example, the *Brasilians* are borne as faire as the common sort of men, but coming out of the wombe, they are made deformed in squizing of their nose, which is the chiefest part wherein consisteth the beauty of man. True it is that as in certaine Countries

The Brasilians be short nosed.

they praise the long noses, in others the hawke noses, so among the *Brasilians* it is a faire thing to be flat nosed, as also among the Moeres of *Africa*, which we see to be all of the same sort. And with these large nostrils, the *Brasilians* are accustomed to make themselves yet more deformed by Art, making great holes in their cheekes, and vnder the lower lippe, for to put therein greene stones and of other colours, of the bignesse of a tester: so that those stones being taken away, it is a hideous thing to see those people. But in *Florida*, and euery where, on this side the *Tropique* of *Cancer*, our Sauages be generally goodly men, as they be in Europe: if there be any short nosed one it is a rare thing. They be of a good stature, and I haue seene no dwarfes there, nor any that drew neere to it. Notwithstanding (as I haue said elsewhere) in the Mountaines of the *Iroquois*, which are beyond the great fall of the great riuer of *Canada*, there is a certaine Nation of Sauages, little men, valiant and feared euery where, which are more often assailers than defenders. But although that where we dwelt the men be of a good height, neuertheless I haue seen none so tall as *Monsieur De Poutrincourt*, whose taleness becommeth him very well. I will not speake heere of the *Patagons*, a people which is beyond the riuer of *Plate*, whom *Pighafetta* in his voyage about the world, saith to be of such an height, that the tallest among vs could scarce reach to their girdle. The same is out of the limits of our New France. But I will willingly come to the other circumstances of body of our Sauages, seeing the subiect calleth vs thereunto.

The colour of the Sauages.  
The importunity of flies.

They are all of an Oliue colour, or rather tawny colour, like to the Spaniards, not that they be so borne, but being the most part of the time naked, they grease their bodies, and doe anoint them sometimes with oile, for to defend them from the flies, which are very troublesome, not onely, where we were, but also thorow all that new world and euen in *Brasil*; so that it is no wonder if *Belzebub* prince

prince of flies hath there a great Empire. These flies are of a colour drawing towards red, as of corrupted blood, which maketh me to beleue that their generation cometh but from the rottenesse of woods. And indeed we haue tried that the second yeare, being in a place somewhat more open, wee haue had fewer of them than at the first. They cannot endure great heat, nor winde: but otherwise (as in close darke weather) they are very noy some, by reason of their stings, which they haue, long for so small a body: & they be so tender that if one touch them neuer so little they are squised. They begin to come about the 15. of Iune, and doe retire themselves in the beginning of September. Being in the Port *De Campsean* in the moneth of August I haue not seene nor felt any one; whereof I did wonder, seeing that the nature of the soile and of the woods is all one. In September, after that this vermine is gone away, there grow other flies like vnto ours, but they are not troublesome, and become very bigge. Now our Sa- uages to saue themselves from the stinging of these crea- tures, rubbe themselves with certaine greases and oiles, as I haue said, which make them foule and of a tawnish colour. Besides that alwaies they lie on the ground, or be exposed to the heat and the wind.

But there is cause of wondering, wherefore the *Brasili- ans*, and other inhabitants of *America* betweene the two *Tropikes*, are not borne blacke as they of *Africa*; seeing that it seemeth it is the selfesame case, being vnder one and the selfesame parallell and like eleuation of the Sunne. If the Poets fables were sufficient reasons for to take away this scruple, one might say that *Phaeton* hauing done the foo- lish deed in conducting the Charet of the Sunne, onely *Africa* was burned, and the horses set againe in their right course, before they came to the New world. But I had rather say, that the heat of *Lybia*, being the cause of this blacknesse of men, is ingendred from the great lands ouer which the Sunne passeth before it come thither, from

The discripti- on of the flies of New France.

When the flies come in and when they goe out.

The Sauages remedies a- gainst the flies.

From whence cometh the burning of *Africa*.

From whence  
proceedeth  
the cooling  
of America.

whence the heat is still carried more abundantly by the swift motion of this great Heauenly torch. Whereunto the great sands of that Prouince doe also helpe, which are very capable of those heates, specially not being watered with store of riuers, as *America* is, which aboundeth in riuers and brookes as much as any Prouince in the World: which doe giue perpetuall refreshing vnto it, and makes the region much more temperate: the ground being also there more fat, and retaining better the dewes of Heauen, which are there abundantly, and raines also, for the reasons abovesaid. For the Sunne finding in the meeting of these lands those great moistnesses, he doth not faile to draw a good quantitie of them, and that so much the more plentifully, that his force is there great and maruelous: which makes there continuall raines, especially to them that haue him for their zenith. I adde one great reason, that the Sunne leauing the lands of *Africa*, giueth his beames vpon a moist element by so long a course, that he hath good meanes to sucke vp vapors, and to draw together with him great quantitie thereof into those parts: which maketh that the cause is much differing of the colour of these two people, and of the temperature of their lands.

Black haire.

Let vs come to other circumstances, and seeing that we are about colours, I will say, that all they which I haue seene haue blacke haire, some excepted which haue a-bram colour haire: but of flaxen colour I haue seene none, and lesse of red: and one must not thinke that they which are more Southerly be otherwise: for the *Floridians* and *Brasilians* are yet blacker than the Sauages of New found land: The beard of the chinne (which our Sauages call *migidoni*) is with them as blacke as their haire. They all take away the producing cause thereof, except the *Sagamos*, who for the most part haue but a little. *Memberton* hath more than all the others, and notwithstanding it is not thicke, as it is commonly with Frenchmen. If these  
people

people weare no beards on their chinne (at the least the most part) there is no cause of maruelling. For the ancient Romans themselues, esteeming that that was a hinderance vnto them, did weare none, vntill the time of *Adrian* the Emperour, who first began to weare a beard. Which they tooke for such an honour, that a man accused of any crime, had not that priuiledge to shauē his haire, as may be gathered by the testimonie of *Aulus Gellius*, speaking of *Scipio*, the sonne of *Paul*. As for the inferiour parts, our Sauages doe not hinder the growing or increasing of haire there. It is said that the women haue some there also. And according as they be curious, some of our men haue made them beleue, that the French women haue beards on their chinnes, and haue left them in that good opinion, so that they were very desirous to see some of them, & their maner of clothing. By these particularities one may vnderstand, that all these people haue generally lesser haire than we: for along the body they haue none at all: so farre is it then that they be hairie as some thinke. This belongeth to the inhabitants of the *Iles Gorgades*, from whence *Hanno* the Carthaginien captaine brought two womens skinnes, which he did set vp in the temple of *Iuno* for great singularitie: But heere is to bee noted what we haue said, that our sauage people haue almost all their haire blacke: for the Frenchmen in one and the selfesame degree are not commonly so. The ancient authors *Polybius*, *Cesar*, *Strabo*, *Diodore* the Cicilian, and particularly *Ammian Marcellin*, doe say, that the ancient *Gaullois* had almost all their haire as yellow as gold, were of high stature, and fearefull for their gastly lookes: besides quarelsome and readie to strike: a fearefull voice, neuer speaking but in threating. At this time those qualities are well changed. For there are not now so many yellow haire: nor so many men of high stature, but that other nations haue as tall: As for the fearefull lookes, the delicacies of this time haue moderated that: and as for

A. Gel. li. 3. c. 4.

The corporall qualities of the ancient Gaullois.



The beauty  
of the eies.

the threatenng voice, I haue scarce seene in all the *Gaules* but the *Gascons*, and them of *Languedoc*, which haue their maner of speech somewhat rude, which they retaine of the *Gotish* and of the *Spaniard*, by their neighbourhood. But as for the haire it is very farre from being so commonly blacke. The same author *Ammian* saith also, that the women of the *Gaules* (whom he noted to be good shrewes, and to bee too hard for their husbands, when they are in choler) haue blue eies: and consequently the men: and notwithstanding in that respect wee are much mingled: which maketh that one knoweth not what rarenesse to chuse for the beautie of eies. For many doe loue the blue eies, and others loue them greene: which were also in ancient time most praised. For among the *Sonnets* of *Monsieur de Conci*, (who was in old time so great a clerke in loue matters, that songs were made of it) greene eies are praised.

The  *Germans* haue kept better than we the qualities which *Tacitus* giueth them, likewise that which *Ammian* reciteth of the *Gaullois*: In so great a number of men (saith *Tacitus*) there is but one fashion of garments: They haue blue eies and fearefull, their haire shining as gold, and are very corpulent. *Pliny* giueth the same bodily qualities to the people of the *Taprobane*, saying that they haue redde haire, their eies blue, and the voice horrible and fearefull. Wherein I know not if I ought to beleue him, considering the climate, which is in the 8, 9. and 10. degrees onely, and that in the kingdome of *Calecute*, farther off than the *Equinoctial* line, the men are blacke. But as for our *Sauages*, concerning their eies, they haue them neither blue nor greene, but blacke for the most part, like to their haire: and neuerthelesse their eies are not small, as they of the ancient *Scythians*, but of a decent greatnesse. And I may say assuredly and truly, that I haue seene there as faire boies and girles, as any can be in France. For as for the mouth, they haue no bigge moorish lippes, as in *Africa*,

ca, and also in Spaine; they are well limmed, well boned, and well bodied, competently strong: and neuerthelesse we had many in our company who might haue wrestled well enough with the strongest of them: but being hardened, there would be made of them very good men for the warre, which is that wherein they most delight. Moreover, among them there is none of those prodigious men whereof *Pliny* maketh mention, which haue no noses in their faces, or no lips, or no tong: Item, which are without mouth, & without nose, hauing but two small holes, whereof one of them serueth for to breath, the other serueth in stead of a mouth: Item, which haue dogges' heads, and a dogge for king: Item, which haue their heads on the brest, or one onely eie in the midst of the forehead, or a flat broad foot to couer their heads when it raineth, and such like monsters. There is none also of them which our Saunge *Agohanna* told captaine *James Quartier* that hee had seene in *Saguenay*, whereof we haue spoken heeretofore. If there be any blinde with one eie, or lame (as it hapneth sometimes) it is a casuall thing, and commeth of hunting.

Being well composed, they cannot chuse but be nimble and swift in running. We haue spoken heeretofore of the nimbleness of the *Brasilians*, *Margaias* and *Ou-etacas*: but all nations haue not those bodily dispositions. They which liue in mountains haue more dexteritie than they of the vallies, because they breath a purer and cleerer aire, and that their food is better. In the vallies the aire is grosser, and the lands fatter, and consequently vnhealthfull. The nations that be between the *Tropikes*, haue also more agilitie than the others, participating more with the fire nature than they that are farther off. This is the cause why *Pliny* speaking of the *Gorgones* and *Iles Gorgonides* (which are those of *Cap Verd*) saith, that the men are there so light of foote, that scarce one may follow them by the eye-

A a

sight,

Monstrous bodies. *Plin. 6. booke, cap. 31.*

In this author his second booke, chap. 25.

Nimbleness of bodie, *lib. 1. cap. 25.*

Gorgones.

the *Gauls* which haue they retaine neighbour- m being so saith also, to be good nds, when uently the are much not what many doe ne: which among the old time so made of it)

the qualities h *Ammian* f men (saith They haue old, and are qualities to haue redde and feare- him, con- o. degrees farther off But as for em neither ke to their l, as they se. And I e there as For as for as in *Afri-* ca,

fight, in such maner, that *Hanno* the Carthaginian could not catch any one of them. He maketh the like relation of the *Troglodytes*, a nation of *Guinee*, whom hee saith are called *Therotohoens*, because they are as swift in hunting vpon the land, as the *Ichthyophages* are prompt in swimming in the sea, who almost are as seldome wearie therein as a fish. And *Maffeus* in his Histories of the Indies reporteth, that the *Naires* (so the nobles and warrours are called) of the kingdome of *Malabaris*, are so nimble and so swift, as it is almost incredible, and doe handle so well their bodies at will, that they seeme to haue no bones, in such sort, that it is hard to come to skirmish against such men, forasmuch as with this agilitie, they aduance and re-coile as they list. But for to make themselues such, they helpe nature, and their sinewes are stretched out euen from seuen yeeres of age, which afterward are anointed and rubbed with oile of *Sesamum*. That which I say, is knowen euen in beasts: for a Spanish Genet or a Barbe is more liuely and light in running, than a Roosin or German Curtall; an Italian horse more than a French horse. Now although that which I haue said be true, yet for all that there be nations out of the *Tropikes*, who by exercise and Art come to such agilitie. For the holy Scripture maketh mention of one *Hazael* an Israelite, of whom it witnesseth, that he was as light of foot as a Roe bucke of the fields. And for to come to the people of the North, the *Heruli* are renoued for being swift in running, by this verse of *Sidonius*:

*Cursu Herulus, iaculis Hunnus, Francusque natatu.*

And by this swiftnesse the Germans sometimes troubled very much *Iulius Caesar*. So our *Armonchiquois* are as swift as greyhounds, as we haue said heertofore, and the other Sauages are little inferior vnto them, and yet they do not force nature, neither doe they vse any Art to run well. But as the ancient *Gaulois*, being addicted to hunting (for  
it

*Sesame* a kind  
of corne, *Plini*  
*li. 18. ca. 10.*

*Hazael.*  
*2. Samuel 2.*

it is their life) and to warre, their bodies are nimble, and so little charged with fatte, that it doth not hinder them from running at their will.

Now the Sauages dexteritie is not knowen onely by running, but also in swimming; which they all can doe: but it seemes, that some more than others. As for the *Bra- silians* they are so naturall in that trade, that they would swimme eight daies in the sea, if hunger did not presse them, and they feare more that some fish should deuoure them, than to perish through wearinesse. The like is in *Florida*, where the men will follow a fish in the sea, and will take it vnlesse it be too bigge. *Ioseph Acoſta* saith so much of them of *Peru*. And as for that which concerneth breathing, they haue a certaine Art to suppe vp the water, and to cast it out againe, by which meanes they will remaine easily in it a long time. The women likewise haue a maruellous disposition to that exercise: for the History of *Florida* maketh mention that they can passe great riuers in swimming, holding their children with one arme: and they climbe very nimbly vp the highest trees of the countrey. I will affirme nothing of the *Armo- uichinois*, nor of our Sauages, because I tooke no heed to it: but it is very certaine that all can swim very cunningly. For the other parts of their bodies they haue them verie perfect, as likewise the naturall senses. For *Memberton* (who is about an hundred yeeres old) did see sooner a shaloupe or a Canow of the Sauages, to come as farre off vnto Port Royall, than any of vs: and it is said of the *Bra- silians* and other Sauages of *Peru* hidden in the moun- taines, that they haue the smelling so good, that in smel- ling of the hand, they know if a man be a Spaniard or a French man: And if he be a Spaniard, they kill him with- out remission, so much doe they hate him for the harmes that they haue receiued of them. Which the abouesaid *Acoſta* doth confesse when he speaketh of leauing the In- dians to liue according to their ancient policie, reproving

Their dexte-  
ritie in swim-  
ing.

*Acoſta. lib. 6.  
cap. 1.*

the Spaniards in that. And therefore (saith he) this is a thing preiudiciall vnto vs, because that they take occasion to abhor vs (note that he speaketh of them who doe obey them) as men who in all things, whether it be in good, whether it be in euill, haue alwayes bene, and still are, contrary vnto them.

CHAP. XI.

*Of the Paintings, Markes, Incisions, and  
Ornaments of their body.*

**I**T is no maruell if the Ladies of our time do paint themselves: for of a long time and in many places that trade hath had beginning. But it is reprooued in the holy bookes, and made a reproach by the voices of the Prophets, as when *Jeremy* threatneth the Citie of *Ierusalem*:  
 Jerem. 4. vers. 30. *When thou shalt be destroyed (saith he) what wilt thou doe? though thou clovest thy selfe with skarlet, though thou deckest thy selfe with Ornaments of gold, though thou paintest thy face with colours, yet shalt thou trim thy selfe in vaine: for thy louers will abhor thee, and seeke thy life.* The Prophet *Ezechiel* maketh the like reproach to the Cities of *Ierusalem* and *Samaria*, which he compareth to two leaud harlots, who hauing sent to seeke out men comming from far, and being come, they haue washed themselves, and painted their faces, and haue put on their faire ornaments. The Queene *Iesabel* doing the same, was for all that cast downe out of a window, and bare the punishment of her wicked life. The Romans did anciently paint their bodies with vermilion (as *Pliny* saith) when they entred in triumph into Rome, and he addeth, that the Princes & great Lords of *Ethiopia* made great account of that colour, wherewith they wholly painted themselves red: also both the one and the other did serue themselves therewith to make their god fairer: And that the first expence which was allowed of by the Censors and Masters of Accounts in Rome was

of

of the monies bestowed for to colour with vermilion the face of Iupiter. The same author reciteth in another place, that the *Anderes, Mathites, Mofagebes* and *Hipporeens*, people of *Libya*, did plaister all their bodies ouer with red chaulke. Briefely, this fashion did passe as farre as to the North. And thereof is come the name that was giuen to the *Pi&ts*, an ancient people of *Scythia*, neighbours to the *Gothes*, who in the year 87. after the Natiuity of our Lord *Iesus Christ*, vnder the Empire of *Domitian* made courses and spoiles thorow the Iles which lie Northward, where hauing found men who made them resistance, they returned backe without doing any thing, and liued yet naked in their cold Countrie vntill the year of our Lord 370. At which time vnder the Empire of *Valentinian* being ioyned with the Saxons and Scots they tormented very much them of Great Britan, as *Ammian Marcellin* reciteth: and being resolved to remaine there (as they did) they demanded of the Britons (which now are Englishmen) wiues in marriage. Whereupon being denied, they retired themselves to the Scots, of whom they were furnished, vpon condition that the masculinerace of the Kings comming to faile among them, that then the women should succeed in the Realme. Now these people were called *Pi&ts*, because of the paintings which they vsed vpon their naked bodies, which (saith *Herodian*) they would not couer with any clothing for feare to hide and darken the faire painting they had set vpon it, where were set out beasts of all sorts, and printed with Iron instruments, in such sort that it was vnpossible to take them off. Which they did (as *Solin* saith) euen from their infancy: in maner that as the child did grow, so did grow those fixed figures, euen as the marks that are graued vpon the yong pompions. The *Poet Claudian* doth also giue vs many witnessles of this in his *Panegyriques*, as when he speaketh of the Emperour *Honorius* his Grand-father:

*Ille Lenos Mauros, nec falso nomine Pi&tos*

A a 3

*Edomist*

*Plin. lib. 6.  
cap. 30.*

*Ammian lib.  
26. & 27.*

*Herod. 3.  
booke.*

...e) this is a  
...take occa-  
...m who doe  
...ther it be in  
...ne, and still

and

...paint them-  
...es that trade  
...n the holy  
...of the Pro-  
...Ierusalem:  
...t thou doe?  
...h thou deck-  
...paintest thy  
...vaine: for  
...he Prophet  
...es of Ierusa-  
...oleaud har-  
...ng from far,  
...and painted  
...ments. The  
...cast downe  
...her wicked  
...odies with  
...n triumph  
...great Lords  
...wherewith  
...he one and  
...make their  
...as allowed  
...Rome was  
...of

Edomuit ————— And in the Gothicke warre  
Ferroque notatas

*Perlegit exanimis Picto moriente figuras.*

This hath beene noted by *Monsieur de Belleforest*, and afterward by the learned *Sauaron* vpon the obseruation that *Sidoine de Polignac* maketh thereof. And albeit that our *Celtique Poiteuins*, called by the Latines *Pictones*, be not descended from the race of those (for they were ancient *Gaullois* euen in *Iulius Cæsars* time) neuerthelesse I may well beleue that this name hath beene giuen them for the same occasion as that of the *Picts*. And as customes once brought in among a people are not lost but by the length of many ages (as we see yet the follies of *Shroue-Tuesday* to continue) so the vses of painting, whereof we haue spoken remaineth in some Northerly Nations. For I haue heard sometimes *Monsieur Le Comte D' Egmond* tell, that he hath seene in his yong yeares them of *Brunzwich* come into his fathers house with their faces greased with painting, and their visage all blacked, from whence peradventure this word of *Bronzer* may be deriued, which signifieth in *Picardy* to blacke. And generally I beleue that all those Northerly people did vse painting, when they would make themselues braue. For the *Gelons* and *Agathyrses*, Nations of *Scythia* like the *Picts*, were of this fraternity, and with Iron instruments did colour their bodies. The Englishmen likewise, then called Britons, by the saying of *Tertullian*. The Gothes, besides the Iron instruments, did vse vermilion to make their faces and bodies red. Briefely, it was a sport in the old time to see so many *Antikes*, men and women: for there are found yet old Pictures, which he that hath made the History of the Englishmens voyage into *Virginia* hath cut in brasse, where the *Picts* of both sex are painted out, with their fair incisions, and swords hanging vpon the naked flesh, as *Herodian* describeth them.

*Tertul. de ve.  
land. virgin.  
Iornandes de  
bello Got.  
Isidor. lib. 16.  
cap. 23.*

The West  
Indians.

This humour of painting hauing beene so generall in these parts, there is no cause of mocking, if the people of the

the West Indies haue done, and yet do the like: which is vniuersall & without exception among those nations. For if any one of them maketh loue, he shall be painted with blue or red colour, and his Mistres also. If they haue venison in abundance, or be glad for any thing, they will doe the like generally. But when that they are sadde, or plot some treason, then they ouercast all their face with blacke, and are hideously deformed. Touching the body, our Sannages apply no painting to it, which the Brasilians and Floridians doe, the most part whereof are painted ouer the bodie, the armes and thighes with faire branches, whose painting can neuer be taken away, because they are prick-ed within the flesh. Notwithstanding many *Brasilians* doe paint onely their bodies (without incision) when they list: and this with the iuice of a certaine fruit which they call *Genipat*, which doth blacke so much, that though they wash themselues, they cannot bee cleane in ten or twelue daies after. They of *Virginia*, which are more of this side, haue markes vpon their backs, like to those that our marchants doe put vpon their packs, by the which (euen as the slaues) one may know vnder what Lord they liue: which is a faire forme of gouernment for this people: seeing that the ancient Roman Emperors haue vsed the like towards their souldiers, which were marked with the Imperiall marke, as *Saint Augustine*, *Saint Ambrose*, and others doe witness vnto vs. Which thing *Constantine* the Great did likewise, but his marke was the signe of the Crosse, which he made to be printed vpon the shoulders of his souldiers, as himselfe saith in an Epistle which hee wrote to the king of *Persia*, reported by *Theodoret* in the Ecclesiasticall historie. And the first Christians, as marching vnder the banner of *Iesus Christ*, did take the same marke, which they printed in their hand, or on the arme, to the end to know one another, specially in time of persecution, as *Procopius* saith, expounding this place of *Isaiab*: *One will say, I am the Lords, and the other will call himselfe*

Virginia.

*Aug. contra  
Parmen. lib. 2.  
cap. 13.  
Ambros. in the  
funerall ora-  
tion of Va-  
lentin.*

*Isai. 44. 5.*

himselfe



Galat. 6.

Leu. 19. 28.  
Deut. 14. 1.

himselfe with the name of *Iacob* : and the other will write with his hand, *I am the Lords*, and will surname himselfe with the name of *Israel*. The great Apostle *S. Paul* did beare the marks of the Lord *Iesus Christ* in his flesh, but it was yet after another maner, that is to say, by the bruses, which he had on his body of the stripes that he had receaued for his name. And the *Hebrewes* had for marke the Circumcision of the foreskinne, by the which they are sequestred from other nations, and knowen for Gods people. But as for other bodily incisions, such as anciently the *Picts* did make, and the Sauages doe yet make at this day, they haue beene anciently very exprefly forbidden in the Law of God giuen to *Moses*. For it is not lawfull for vs to disfigure the image and the forme that God hath giuen vnto vs. Yea the pictures and paintings haue beene blamed and reprooued by the Prophets, as wee haue noted elsewhere. And *Tertullian* saith, that the Angels which haue discouered and taught vnto men their paintings and counterfetted things, haue beene condemned of God : alleging for profe of his saying, the booke of *Enochs* prophetic. By these things aboue recited, wee know that this hether world hath anciently been as much deformed and sauage as they of the West Indies : but that which seemeth vnto mee most woorthie of wondering, is the nakednesse of those people in a cold countrie, wherein they delight, euen to harden their children in the snow, in the riuer, and among the Ice, as we touched heere tofore in an other chapter, speaking of the *Cimbres* and French-men. Which also hath beene their chiefeft strength in the conquests that they haue made.

(\* \*)

CHAP. XII.

*Of their outward ornaments of the body, bracelets, Carkenets, Eare-rings, &c.*

**W**E that doe liue in these parts vnder the authoritie of our Princes, and ciuilsed commonwealths, haue two great tyrants of our life, to whom the people of the New world haue not beene yet subiected, the excesses of the belly, and the ornament of body, and briefly all that which belongeth to brauerie, which if we should cast off, it would be a meane to recall the golden age, and to take away the calamitie which we see in most part of men. For hee which possesseth much, making small expence, would be liberall, & would succour the needie, whereunto he is hindred, willing not onely to maintaine, but also to augment his traine, and to make shew of himselfe, very often at the costs of the poore people, whose bloud hee sucketh, *Qui devorant plebem meam sicut escam panis*, saith the Psalmist. I leaue that which belongeth to food, not being my purpose to speake of it in this Chapter. I leaue also the excesses which consisteth in houshold implements, sending the reader backe to *Pliny*, who hath spoken amply of the Roman pompes and superfluitie, as of vessels after the *Furviene* and *Clo-dienne* fashion, of bed-steades after the *Deliaque* fashion, and of tables all wrought with gold and siluer imbossed; where also he setteth out a slaue *Drusillanus Rotundus*, who being Treasurer of the higher Spaine, caused a forge to be made for to worke a peece of Siluer-plate of five quintals weight, accompanied with eight other, all weighing halfe a quintall. I will onely speake of the *Matachias* of our Sa-uages, and say, that if we did content our selues with their simplicitie we should auoid many troubles that we put our selues vnto to haue superfluities, without which we might liue contentedly (because Nature is satisfied with little) and

*Psal. 14. ver. 4. and 53. vers. 5.*

*Plin. lib. 33. cap. 11.*

*Matuchias be bracelets, carkenets, and other iollities.*

the coueting whereof makes vs very oftentoe decline from the right way, and to stray from the path of iustice. The excesses of men doe consist the molt part in things which I haue said I will omit, which notwithstanding I will not leaue vntouched, if it come to purpose. But Ladies haue alwaies had this reputation, to loue excesses in that which concerneth the decking of their bodies: And all the Moralists who haue made profession to repressse vices haue mentioned them, wherethey haue found a large subiect to speake of. *Clement Alexandrine* making a long numeration of womens trinckets (which he hath the most part taken out of the Prophet *Isaiah*) saith in the end, that he is weary to speake so much of it, and that he maruelleth that they are not killed with so great a weight.

The first  
booke *Padag.*  
cap. 10.

Tert. in the  
booke of wo-  
mens orna-  
ments.

Aleffon for  
the women  
of our time.

That is called  
*Crecuphantia.*

*S. Cypr.* in the  
booke of the  
virgins clo-  
thing.  
*S. Hierom.* Epi.  
to *Lara.*

Let vs take them then by those parts wherein they be complained of. *Tertullian* maruelleth of the audaciouf- nesse of man, which setteth himselfe against the word of our Sauour, which said: *that it is not in vs to adde any thing to the measure or height that God hath given vnto vs: and notwithstanding Ladies endeuour themselves to doe to the contrary, adding vpon their heads cages made of haire, fashioned like to loanes of bread, to hats, to panniers, or to the hollownesse of scutchions. If they be not asbamed with this superfluous enormity, at least (saith he) let them be a shamed of the filth which they beare: and not to couer a holy and a Christian head with the leauings of another head, peradventure uncleane, or guilty of some crime, and ordained to a shamefull death.* And in the same place, speaking of them which do colour their haire: *I see some (saith he) who doe change the colour of their haire with saffron. They are asbamed of their Countrey, and would be Gauloise women, or German women, so much doe they disguise themselves.* Whereby is knowen how much red haire were esteemed in the old time. And indeed the holy Scripture praiseth that of *Dauid*, which was such. But to seeke it out by art, *S. Cyprian* and *S. Hierome*, with our *Tertullian* doe say, that the same doth preface the fire of hell.

hell. Now our Sauages, in that which consisteth in the borrowing of haire, are not reprobable: for their vanity stretcheth not so farre: but for the colouring of them, for as much as when they are merry, and paint their faces, be it with blue or with red, they paint also their haire with the same colour.

Now let vs come to the eares, to the necke, to the armes and to the hands, and there we shall finde wherewith to busie our selues: these are parts where iewels are easily seene: which Ladies haue learned very well to obserue. The first men which haue had piety in them haue made conscience to offer any violence to Nature, and to pierce the eares for to hang any precious thing at it: for none is Lord of his owne members to abuse them, so saith the Ciuilian *Ulpian*. And therefore when the seruant of *Abraham* went into *Mesopotamia* for to finde out a wife for *Isaac*, and had met with *Rebecca*, he put vpon her forehead a iewell of gold hanging downe betweene her eyes, and also bracelets of gold vpon her hands: for which reason it is said in the *Proverbs*, that *A faire woman which lacketh discretion is like a golden ring in a swines snout*. But men haue taken more licence than they ought, and haue defaced the workmanship of God in them, to please their owne fancies. Wherein I doe not wonder at the *Brasilians* (of whom we will heereafter speake) but of ciuilsed people, which haue called other nations barbarous, but much more of the Christians of this age. When *Seneca* did complaine of that which was in his time; *The follie of women* (saith he) *had not made men subiect enough, but it hath beene yet behouefull to hang two or three patrimonyes at their eares*. But what patrimonyes? *They carry* (saith *Tertullian*) *lands and Farme-houses vpon their neckes, and great registers in their eares containing the reuenues of a great rich man, and euery finger of the left hand hath a patrimony to play withall*. Finally, he cannot compare them better than to condemned men that are in the Caues of *Ethiopia*, which the more they are

Genf. 24. ver.  
22.

PROV. 11. ver.  
22.

Senec. 7. of be-  
nefits.

culpable, so much the richer are they, because that the fetters and bolts, wherewith they are tied, are of gold. But he exhorteth the Christian women not to be such, for as

Plin. lib. 9. cap. 35. “ much as those things are certaine markes of lasciuiousnes,  
 “ which doe belong to those mischieuous oblations of pub-  
 “ like vnchastity. *Pliny*, albeit he was an heathen, doth no  
 “ lesse abhor those excesses. For our Ladies (saith he) for to  
 “ be braue doe beare hanging at their fingers those great  
 “ pearles which are called *Elenchus*, in fashion of pearles, &  
 “ haue two of them, yea three at their eares. Yea they haue  
 “ inuented names to serue themselues therewith in their cur-  
 “ fed and troublesome superfluities. For they call *Belles*,  
 “ them which they carry in number at their eares, as if they  
 “ did take pleasure to heare pearles ginging at their eares.  
 “ And that which is more, the hufwisly women, yea the  
 “ poore women also, decke themselues therewith; saying,  
 “ that a woman ought to goe as seldome without pearles, as  
 “ a Consull without his *Vshers*. Finally, they are come so  
 “ farre as to adorne their shooes with them, and garters, yea  
 “ their buskins are yet full and garnished therewith. In  
 “ such sort that it is not now any more question to weare  
 “ pearles, but they must bee made to serue for paue-  
 Fol. 736. “ ment, to the end to tread but vpon pearles. The same  
 Authour doth recite that *Lollia Paulina* forsaken by  
*Caligula*, in the common feasts of meane men was so  
 ouerladen with Emeralds and with Pearles, on her  
 Plin. lib. 33. c. 3. head, her haire, her eares, her necke, her fingers and her  
 armes, as well in colars, necklaces, as bracelets, that all  
 did shine at it, and that she had of them to the woorth of  
 a million of gold. The same was excessiue: but shee was  
 the greatest Princesse of the world, and yet hee doth not  
 say that she did weare any on her shooes: as he doth yet  
 complaine in some other where that the Dames of Rome  
 did weare gold on their feete. *What disorder!* (saith hee)  
*Let vs permit the women to weare as much gold as they will  
 in bracelets, at their fingers, at their necks, at their eares, and*

*in karkenets and bridles, &c. must they for all that decke their feete with it? &c. I should neuer make an end, if I should continue this speech.*

The Spanish women in *Pern* do go beyond that, for their shooes are set ouer with nothing but plates of gold and siluer, and garnished with pearles. True it is that they are in a countrie which God hath blessed abundantly with all these riches. But if thou hast not so much of them, do not vex thy selfe at it, & be not tempted through enuy: such things are but earth, digged and purified with a thousand troubles, in the bottome of hell, by the incredible labor, & with the life of men like vnto thee: Pearles are but dew, receaued within the shell of a fish, which are fished by men that be forced to become fishes, that is to say, to be alwaies diuing in the depth of the sea. And for to haue these things, and to be clothed in silke, and for to haue robes with infinite foldes, we turmoile our selues, wee take cares which doe shorten our daies, gnaw our bones, sucke out our marrow, weaken our bodies, and consume our spirit. He that hath meat and drinke is as rich as all these, if he could consider it. And where those things doe abound, there delights doe abound, and consequently vices: and to conclude, behold what God saith by his Prophet: *They shall cast their siluer out into the streetes, and their gold shall be but dung, and shall not deliuer them in the day of my great wrath.* Hee that will haue further knowledge of the chastisements wherewith God doth threaten the woman that abuse carkenets and iewels, which haue no other care but to attire and decke themselues, goe with their breasts open, their eies wandring, and with a proud gate, let him reade the third chapter of the Prophet *Isaiab*. I will not for all that blame the Virgins which haue some golden things, or chaines of pearles, or other iewels, also some modest vesture: for that is comlineffe, and all things are made for the vse of man: but excesse is that which is to be blamed, because that vnder that, very

Pearles what they be.

Ezec. 7. 19.

often is lasciuiousnesse hidden. Happie are the people which not hauing the occasions to sinne, doe purely serue God, and possesse a land which furnissheth them of that which is necessarie for life. Happie are our Sauage people if they had the full knowledge of God: for in that case they be without ambition, vaine-glorie, enuie, auarice, & haue no care of these braueries, which wee haue now described: but rather doe content themselues to haue *Matachias*, hanging at their eares, and about their necks, bodies, armes, and legges. The *Brasilians*, *Floridians*, and *Arrouchiquois*, doe make carkenets and bracelets (called *bou-re* in *Brasill*, and by ours *Matachias*) of the shelles of those great sea cockles, which be called *Vignols*, like vnto snailles, which they break & gather vp in a thousand peeces, then doe smooth them vpon a hot stone, vntill they do make them very small, and hauing pierced them, they make them beads with them, like vnto that which wee call *Pourcelaine*. Among these beads they intermingle betweene spaces other beads, as blacke as those which I haue spoken of to be white, made with Iet, or certain hard and black wood which is like vnto it, which they smooth and make small as they list, and this hath a very good grace. And if things are to be esteemed for their fashion, as we see it practised in our merchandises, these colars, skarffes, and bracelets made of great periwinkles or pourcelaine, are richer than pearles, (notwithstanding none will belecue me heerein) so doe they esteeme them more than pearles, gold or siluer: And this is that which they of the great riuer of *Canada* in the time of *Iam. Quartier* did call *Esurgin* (wherof we haue made mention heertofore) a word which I haue had much ado to know, and which *Belleforest* the Cosinographer vnderstod not, when hee would speake of it. At this day they haue not any more of them, or else they haue lost the knowledge to make them: For they vse *Mattachias* very much, that are brought vnto them out of France. Now as with vs, so in that country,

women

Iet.

Beades much  
esteemed.

women doe decke themselves with such things, and will haue chaines that will goe twelue times about their necks, hanging downe vpon their breasts, and about their hand wrests, and about the elbow. They also hang long strings of them at their eares, which come downe as low as their shoulders. If the men wear any, it will be onely some yong man that is in loue. In the country of *Virginia* where some pearles be found, the women do weare carkenets, colars and bracelets of them, or else of peeces of copper (made round like small bullets) which is found in their mountaines, where some mines of it are. But in Port Royall, and in the confines thereof, and towards New-found land, and at *Tadoussac*, where they haue neither pearles nor vignols, the maides and women doe make *Mattachias*, with the quilles or bristles of the *Porc-epine*, which they die with blacke, white, and red colours, as liuely as possibly may be, for our skarlets haue no better lustre than their redde die: But they more esteeme the *Mattachias* which come vnto them from the *Armouchiquois* countrey, and they buy them very deare; and that because they can get no great quantitie of them, by reason of the warres that those nations haue continually one against another. There is brought vnto them from France *Mattachias* made with smal quilles of glasse mingled with tinne or lead, which are trucked with them, and measured by the fadam, for want of an ell: and this kind of Merchandise is in that country, that which the Latins doe call *Mundus muliebris*. They also make of them small squares of sundry colours, sowed together, which they tie behinde, on the little childrens haire. The men doe not much care for them, except that the *Brasilians* doe weare about their neckes halfe moones of bones very white, which they call *y-aci* of the Moones name: And our *Souriquois* doe likewise weare some iollities of like stufte, without excesse. And they which haue none of that, doe commonly carry a knife before their breasts, which they doe not for ornament: but  
for

Pearles in  
Virginia.  
Copper.

Excellent  
skarlet die.



for want of pocket, and because it is an implement which at all times is necessary vnto them. Some haue girdles made of *Matachias*, wherewith they serue themselves, only when they will set out themselves and make them braue. The *Autmeins* or Sooth-faiers do carry before their breasts some signe of their vocation, as we will heereafter say. But as for the men of the *Armonchiouois* they haue a fashion to weare at their hand-wrests, and about the ankle-bone of the foot, about their legs, plates of Copper, fetter-wise, and about their waists girdles, fashioned with Copper quills as long as the middle finger filed together the length of a girdle, euen iust of that fashion which *Herodiant* reciteth to haue bene in vse among the *Picts*, wherof we haue spoken, when he saith, that they girded their bodies and their necks with iron, esteeming that to be a great ornament vnto them, & a testimony of their great riches, euen as other Barbarians do to haue gold about them. And there are yet in Scotland Sauage men, which neither ages, nor yeeres, nor the abundance of men could yet reduce vnto ciuilitie. And although that (as we haue said) the men be not so desirous of *Matachias* as the women, notwithstanding the men of *Brasill*, not caring for clothing, take great pleasure to decke and garnish themselves with the feathers of birds, and doe vse those wherewith we vse to fill our beds whereon we lie, and chop them as smal as pie-meat, which they die in red, with their *Brasill*-wood, then hauing anointed their bodies with certaine gums, which serue them in stead of paste or glue, they couer themselves with those feathers, and make a garment at one clap, after the anticke fashion: which hath made (saith *Iohn de Leri* in his *Historie of America*) the first of our men that went thither to beleue that the men which be called Sauages were hairie ouer all their bodies, which is nothing so. For (as we haue already said) the Sauages in what part soeuer, haue lesse haire than we. They of *Florida* doe also vse this kinde of downe, but it is onely about their heads, to  
make

*Herodian* the  
3. booke.

Sauage Scots.

make themselves more vglie. Besides this that we have said, the *Brasilians* doe make frontlets of feathers, which they tie and fit in order of all colours: those frontlets being like in fashion to those rackets or periwigges, which Ladies vse in these parts, the invention whereof they seeme to have learned of those Sauages. As for them of our New France, in the daies that be of solemnitie and reioycing among them, and when they goe to the warres, they haue about their heads as it were a crowne made with long haire of an Ellan or Stagge, painted in redde, pasted, or otherwise fastned, to a fillet of leather of three fingers bredth, such as *James Quartier* saith he had seene with the King (so doth he call him) and Lord of the Sauages, which he found in the towne of *Hochelaga*. But they doe not vse so many ornaments of feathers as the *Brasilians*, which make gownes of them, cappes, bracelets, girdles, and ornaments for their cheekes, and targets vpon their loines, of all colours, which would bee more tedious than delightfull to specifie, since it is an easie matter for euery one to supplie the same, and to imagine what it is.

CHAP. XIII.

*Of Marriage.*

**H**Auing spoken of the Sauages garments, deckings, ornaments and paintings, it hath seemed good vnto me to marry them, to the end the generation of them be not lost, and that the cuntry remaine not desert. For the first ordinance that euer God made, was to increase and multiply, and euery creature capable of generation to bring forth fruit according to his kind. And to the end to encourage young folkes that doe marrie, the Iewes had a custome anciently to fill a trough with earth, in the which, a little before the wedding, they did sowe barley, and the same being sprung, they brought it to the Bridegroom and the Bride, saying: *Bring forth fruit*

This is in the  
glosse of the  
Talmud in  
the Treatie  
of Idolatrie.

fruit and multiply as this barley, which brings forth sooner than all other seeds.

Now to returne to our Sauages, many thinking (as I beleeue) that they be some logges of wood, or imagining a Common-wealth of *Plato*, doe demand if they haue any marriage, and if there be any Priests in *Canada* to marrie them. Wherin they seeme to be very raw and ignorant.

Canadians.

Captaine *James Quartier* speaking of the marriage of the *Canadians*, in his second relation saith thus: They obserue the order of marriage, sauing that the men take two or three wiues. And the husband being dead the women doe neuer marrie againe, but doe mourne for his death all their life long, and doe daube their face with coale beaten to powder and with greafe, the thicknesse of a knife, and thereby are knowen to be widowes. Then he goeth further: They haue another bad custome with their daughters: For being come to be marriageable, they are put all in a stewe house, abandoned to all commers, vntill they haue found out a match: And all this haue wee seene by experience. For we haue seene the houses as full of these maidens, as is a Schoole of boies in France. I would haue thought that the said *James Quartier* had (touching this prostituting of maides) added somewhat of his owne, but the discourse of *Monsieur Champlein*, which is but six yeres since, doth confirme the same thing vnto me, sauing that he speaketh not of assemblies: which keepeth me frō

The prostituting  
of Maidens.

Souriquois.

contrarying it. But among our *Souriquois* there is no such thing: not that these Sauages haue any great care of continencie and virginie, for they doe not think to doe euill in corrupting it: But whether it be by the frequentation of French-men or otherwise, the maides are ashamed to doe any vnchast thing publikely: and if it happen that they abandon themselues to any one; it is in secret. Moreouer, he that will marrie a Maid it behooueth him to demand her of her father, without whose consent shee shall be none of his, as we haue already said heeretofore,

The first  
booke, ch. 4.

and

foorth sooner

king (as I be-  
 imagining a  
 ey haue any  
 da to marrie  
 nd ignorant.  
 rriage of the  
 hey obserue  
 take two or  
 the women  
 his death all  
 coale beaten  
 a knife, and  
 e goeth fur-  
 their daugh-  
 y are put all  
 , vntill they  
 wee seene by  
 full of these  
 would haue  
 ouching this  
 is owne, but  
 h is but six  
 o me, sauing  
 peth me frō  
 re is no such  
 care of con-  
 to doe euill  
 equentation  
 ashamed to  
 appen that  
 s in secret.  
 uth him to  
 nsent thee  
 ecretore,  
 and

and brought foorth the example of one that had done otherwise. And if he will marry, he shall sometimes make loue, not after the manner of the *Esseens*, who (as *Iosephus* sayeth) did try the maidens by the space of three yeeres, before they married them, but by the space of six months or a yeere, without abusing of them: will paint his face that he may seeme the fairer, and will haue a new gowne of Beuers or Otters, or of some thing else, well garnished with *Matachias* garded and laid ouer in forme of parchment lace of gold and siluer, as the *Gothes* did vse heere-tofore. It is meete moreouer that he shew himselfe valiant in hunting, and that they know him able to doe some thing, for they doe not trust in a mans meanes, which are none other than that which he getteth by his daies labor, not caring any wise for other riches than hunting: vniesse our maners make them to haue a desire of it.

*Iosephus* of the  
 warres of the  
 Iewes, lib. 2.  
 cap. 12.

The Maidens of *Brasil* haue liberty to prostitute themselves allone as they are able for the same, euen as them of *Canada*. Yea the fathers do serue for *pandors* to their daughters, and they repute for an honour to communicate them to the men of these parts that goe thither, to the end to haue of their race. But to consent vnto it, would bee too damnable an abomination, and that would deserue rigorous punishment, as indeed for the slacknesse of men God hath punished this vice in such wise, that the sore hath been communicated in these parts, euen to them that haue been too much addicted after Christian wenches and women, by the sicknesse which is called the pox, which before the discouery of those lands was vnknownen in *Europe*: for these people are very much subiect to it, and euen they of *Florida*: but they haue the *Guayac*, the *Esquin*, and the *Sasafras*, trees very soueraign for the cure of that leprosie, and I beleue that the tree *Annedda*, whose wonders we haue recited, is one of these kinds.

The prostituting of the  
 Maidens in  
 Brasil.

The Poxe.

*Guayac.*  
*Esquin.*  
*Sasafras.*  
*Annedda.*

One might thinke that the nakednesse of this people would make them more lecherous, but it is not so. For as

The chastity  
of the ancient  
Germans,  
and of the Sa-  
uages of New  
France.

*It is phallos.*  
Tabacco  
contrary to  
*Venus.*

Great store of  
*Ambergris.*

*Cesar* giueth the *Germans* this commendation, that they had in their ancient *Sauages* life such a continency, as they reputed it a thing most vile for a yong-man to haue the company of a woman before he came to the age of 20. yeares: and in their owne disposition also, they were not mouued thereunto, although that pell mell, all together men and women, yongue and old did bathe themselues in riuers: So also may I say for our *Sauages*, that I neuer saw amongst them any vnseemely gesture or vnchaste looke, & I dare affirme that they belesser giuen to that vice than we in these parts. I attribute the cause thereof, partly to this their nakednesse, and chiefly to the keeping bare of their head, from whence the matter of generation hath his originall: partly to the want of hot spices, of wine, and of meats that doe prouoke to that which is primary signe of vncleane desires, and partly to the frequent vse which they haue of *Tabacco*, whose smoake dulleth the senses, and mounting vp to the braines hindereth the functions of *Venus*. *Iohn De Leri* praiseth the *Brasilians* for this continencie: neuertheless he addeth, that when they are angrie they call sometimes one another *Tuiré*, that is to say, *Sodomite*, whereby it may be coniectured that this sinne raigneth among them, as *Captaine Laudonniere* saith it doth in *Florida*: and that the *Floridians* loue the feminine sex very much. And indeed I haue heard, that for to please the women the more they busie themselues very much about that which is the primary signe of vncleane desires, whereof we spake euen now; and that they may the better doe it, they furnish themselues with *Ambergris*, whereof they haue great store, which first they melt at the fire, then iniect it (with such paine, that it maketh them to gnash their teeth) euen so farre as to the bone *Sacrum*, and with a whippe of nettles, or such like thing, make that idoll of *Maacha* to swell, which king *Afa* made to be consumed into ashes, and cast it into the brooke *Cedron*. On the other side the women vse certaine herbes, and endeavour them.

themselves as much as they can to make restrictions for the use of the said *Ityphalles*, and to giue either partie their due.

Let vs returne to our marriages, which are better than all these rogueries. The contracters do not giue their faith betweene the hands of Notaries, nor of their Sooth-saiers, but simply doe demand the consent of the parents: and so they doe euery where. But heere is to be noted, that they keepe (and in *Brafill* also) three degrees of consanguinity, in the which they are not vsed to contract marriage, that is to wit, of the sonne with the mother, of the father with his daughter, and of the brother with the sister. These excepted, all things are permitted. As for dowry, there is no mention of it. Also when any diuorce hapneth, the husband is bound to nothing. And although that (as it hath been said) there is no promise of loialtie giuen before any superior power, neuertheles in what part soeuer, the wiues keepe chasticie, and seldome is any found that breaketh it. Yea I haue heard oftentimes say, that in yeelding the dutie to the husband, they make themselves oftentimes to be constrained: which is rare in these parts. For the *Gaulloise* women are renowned by *Strabo* to be good Porters (I meane fruitfull) and breeders: and contrariwise I do not see that the people doe abound as in these parts, although that they all labour for generation, and that *Polygamie* is ordinarie with them, which was not among the ancient *Gariilois*, nor among the *Germans*, though they bee a more rustlike people. True it is that our Sauages doe kill one an other daily, and are alwaies in feare of their enemies, keeping watches vpon their frontiers.

This frigidity of *Venus* bringeth an admirable and incredible thing among these women, and which was not to be found euen among the wiues of the holy Patriarch *Iacob*, which is, that although they be many wiues to one husband (for *Polygamie* is receiued thorow all that New

Contract of marriage.

Degrees of consanguinity.

The Saugewomen in the venerious action.

The fruitfulness of the women of the *Gawles*.

Polygamie.

Numbers 5.  
vert. 12. and  
so following.  
S. Aug. against  
Manicheus the  
19. booke,  
chap 26.

See the Com-  
mentor of  
Ben-Sira.

world) notwithstanding there is no ieaousie among them: which is in *Brasill*, a hot Country as well as *Canada*: But as for the men, they are in many places very ieaous: and if the wife be found faulty she shall be put away, or in danger to be killed by her husband: And in that (as for the spirit of ieaousie) there needes not so many ceremonies as those that were done amongst the Iewes, recited in the booke of *Numbers*. And as for diuorcement, not hauing the vse of letters, they doe it not in writing, in giuing to the wife a bill signed by a publike notary, As *S. Augustin* doth note, speaking of the said Iewes: but are contented to tell to the parents, and vnto her, that she prouide for her selfe: and then she liueth in common with the others, vntill that some body doe seeke after her. This law of putting away hath beene receiued almost among all Nations, except among the Christians, which haue kept this precept of the Gspell, *that which God hath ioyned together, let no man put asunder*. Which is most expedient and lesse scandalous: And very wisely did *Ben-Sira* answer (who is said to haue beene nephew to the Prophet *Jeremy*) being asked of one, who had a leaud wife, how hee should doe by her: *Gnaw* (saith he) *that bone which is fallen to thee*.

As for the widows, I will not affirme that which *James Quartier* hath said of them in generall, but I will say, that where we haue beene, they staine their faces with blacke, when they please, and not alwaies: if their husband hath beene killed, they will not marry againe, nor eat flesh, vntill they haue seene the reuenge of his death. And so we haue seene the daughter of *Memberton* to practise it, who after the warre made to the *Armouchiquois*, heereafter described, did marrie againe. Except in that case, they make no other difficulty to marry againe, when they finde a fit match.

Sometimes our Sauages hauing many wiues will giue one of them to their friend, if he hath a desire to take her  
in

in marriage, and shall be thereby so much disburdened. Touching maidens that be loose, if any man hath abused of them, they will tell it at the first occasion, and therefore it is bad jesting with them: for the chastisement ought to be very rigorous against them that mingle the Christian blood with the Infidels, and for the keeping of this iustice *Monsieur de Ville-gagnon* is praised, euen by his enemies: And *Phinees* the Sonne of *Eleazar* the Sonne of *Aron* because he was zealous of the law of God and appeased his wrath, which was about to exterminate the people, for such a sinne; had the couenant of perpetuall Priest-hood, promised to him and to his posterity.

Abominable whoredome among the Infidels. A note for the English Magistrates in Virginia. Numb. 25. 11. 12. 13.

CHAP. XIII.

*The Tabagie.*

**T**He ancient haue said *Sine Cerere & Baccho friget Venus*, that is, without *Ceres* and *Bacchus Venus* is cold. Hauing then married our Sauages, it is meet to make dinner ready and to vse them after their owne manner. And for to doe it one must consider the times of the marriage. For if it be in Winter they will haue Venison from the woods, if it be in the Spring time or in Summer, they will make prouision of fish. As for bread there is no talke of it from the North of New-found-land, vntill one come to the country of the *Armonchiquois*, vnlesse it be in trucking with French-men, for whom they tarry vpon the sea shoares, sitting on their tailes like apes, as soone as the Spring time is come, and receiue in exchange for their skins (for they haue no other merchandise) basket, beanes, peasen and meale: The *Armonchiquois* and other Nations more remote, besides hunting and fishing haue wheat, called *Mais*, and beanes, which is a great comfort vnto them in time of necessity. They make no bread with it: for they haue neither Mill nor Ouen, and they cannot knead it otherwise than in stamping it in a mortar, and in gathering those

The Sauages doe say *Tabagie*, that is to say, a feast.

What Sa- uage coun- tries haue corne.

among them:  
*Canada*: But  
 zealous: and if  
 y, or in dan-  
 at (as for the  
 ceremonies as  
 ecited in the  
 , not hauing  
 in giuing to  
 S. *Augustin*  
 e contented  
 ouide for her  
 e others, vn-  
 w of putting  
 Nations, ex-  
 cept this pre-  
 together, let  
 ent and lesse  
 nswer (who  
 et *Jeremy*)  
 e, how hee  
 which is fallen  
 which *James*  
 will say, that  
 with blacke,  
 sband hath  
 at flesh, vn-  
 And so we  
 tise it, who  
 heereafter  
 case, they  
 they finde  
 es will giue  
 to take her  
 in



Plin. lib. 18.  
cap. 2. & 10.

those peeces the best they can they make small cakes with it, which they bake betweene two hot stones. Most often they drie this Corne at the fire, and parch it vpon the coales. And after that maner did the ancient *Italians* liue, as *Plinie* saith. And therefore one must not so much wonder at these people, seeing that they which haue called others barbarous, haue beene as barbarous as they.

If I had not recited heretofore the maner of the Sauages *Tabagi* (or banket) I would make here a larger description: But I will onely say that when we went to the Riuer Saint Iohn, being in the towne of *Ouigundi* (so may I well call a place enclosed replenished with people) we saw in a great thicket 80. Sauages all naked, except the middle parts, making *Tabagua* with meale they had of vs, whereof they had kettels full. Euery one had a dish made with the barke of a tree, and a spoone as deep as the palme of ones hand, or more: and with this they had venison besides. And here is to be noted, that he which entertaineth the others doth not dine, but serueth the company, as very often the Bridegroomes doe here in France.

The women  
do not eat  
with the  
men.

The good  
condition of  
the women  
among the  
*Gaullois*.  
See yet here-  
after in the  
16. chapter of  
the constan-  
cie of wo-  
men.

The women were in another place apart, and did not eat with the men. Wherein may be noted a bad vse among those people, which haue neuer beene vsed among the nations of these parts, specially the *Gaullois* and *Germainis*, which haue admitted the women, not onely in their banquets, but also in their publike counsels, (specially with the *Gaullois*) after they had pacified a great warre which arose betweene them, and did decide the controuersie with such equitie (as *Plutarch* saith) that thereby ensued a greater loue than euer before. And in the treaty that was made with *Annibal*, being entred into *Gallia*, to goe against the Romans, it was said, that if the *Carthaginienes* had any difference against the *Gaullois*, it should be decided by the aduice of the *Gaulloise* women. It was not so in Rome, where their condition was so base, that by the law *Vocouia*, the very father could not make them to inhe-

rite

rite more then of the one third part of his goods : And the Emperour *Iustinian* forbiddeth them in his decrees to accept the awardship which had beene deferred vnto them: which sheweth either a great seueritie against them, or an argument that in that countrie they haue a very weak spirit. And after this sort be the wiues of our Sauages, yea in woorse condition, in not eating with the men in their *Tabagies*: and notwithstanding it seemeth vnto mee that their fare is not in their feasts so delicate, which ought not to consist only in eating and drinking, but in the societie of that sex which God hath ordained vnto man for to helpe him and to keepe him companie.

It will seeme to many that our Sauages doe liue verie poorely, in not hauing any seasoning in those few messes that I haue named. But I will replie that it was not *Caligula* nor *Heliogabalus*, nor such like that haue raised the Romane Empire to his greatnesse: neither was it that Cooke who made an imperiall feast all with hogs flesh, disguised in a thousand sorts: nor those likerish companions, who after they haue destroyed the aire, the sea, and the land, now knowing what to finde more to assuage their gluttonie, goe seeking wormes from the trees, yea doe keepe them in mew, and doe fatten them, for to make thereof a delicate messe: But rather it was one *Curius Dentatus* who did eat in wooden dishes, and did scrape radishes by the fire side: Item those good husbandmen whom the Senate did send for, from the plough for to conduct the Romane armie: And in one word those Romans which did liue with sodden food, after the maner of our Sauages: for they had not the vse of bread but about 600. yeres after the foundation of the city, hauing learned in tract of time to make some cakes grossely dressed & baked vnder the embres, or in the ouen. *Pliny* author of this report, saith, inoreouer that the *Scythians*, now *Tartares*, doe also liue with sodden food and raw meale as the *Brasilians*.

And neuerthelesse they haue alwaies beene a warlike and

What men haue raised Rome to her greatnesse.

The maner of liuing of the ancient Romans and other nations.

*Plin. lib. 18. ca. 8. 10. 11.*

mightie nation. The same saith, that the *Arympeens* (which be the *Mosconites*) doe liue in forests (as our Sa- uages do) with graines and fruits which they gather from the trees, without mention neither of flesh nor of fish. And indeed the prophane Authors doe agree, that the first men did liue after that maner, to wit, of corne, graines, pulse, acornes, and mastes, from whence commeth the Greke worde *Phagein*, to wit, to eate: some particular nations (and not all) had fruits: as peares were in vse among the *Argines*, figges with the *Athenians*, almonds with the *Medes*, the fruite of *Cannes* with the *Ethiopians*, the *Cardamuin* with the *Persians*, the dates with the *Babilonians*, the *Trefle* or three leaued grasse with the *Egyptians*. They which haue had none of those fruits haue made war against the beasts of the woods and forests, as the *Getulians* and all the Northren men, yea also the ancient *Germans*, notwithstanding they had also meates made of milke: Others dwelling vpon the shores of the sea, or lakes and riuers, liued on fishes, and were called *Ichthyophages*: others li- uing of *Torteses*, were called *Chelonophages*. Part of the *E- thiopians* doe liue of *Grashoppers*, which they salt and har- den in the smoake in great quantitie for all seasons, and therein do the Historians of this day agree with *Plinie*. For there is sometimes clouds of them, that is to say, such infi- nite numbers, that they hide the clouds; and in the East likewise, which destroy all the fields, so that nothing re- maineth vnto them to eate but those grashoppers, which was the food of Saint Iohn Baptist in the desert, according to the opinion of *Saint Hierome* and *Augustine*: Although *Nicephorus* thinketh that they were the tender leaues of the toppes of trees, because that the Greeke word *achrides* signifieth both the one and the other. But let vs come to the Romane Emperour, best qualified. *Ammian Merce- lin* speaking of their maner of life, saith that *Scipio*, *Emi- lian*, *Metellus*, *Traian*, and *Adrian*, did content themselues ordinarily with the meate of the campe, that is to say, with

*Ichthyophages.*  
*Ethiopians*  
doe liue of  
*Grashoppers.*

The food of  
S. Iohn Bap-  
tist. S. Hie-  
roms 2. book  
against *Iouian*.  
S. Augstin  
vpon the 14.  
chap. to the  
Romans,  
vers. 15.  
*Niceph. li. 1.*  
cap. 14.  
*Ammian. l. 18.*

with Bacon, cheese, and bruvage. If then our Sauages haue venison and fish abundantly, I doe not thinke them ill furnished: for many times we haue receaued of them quantitie of Sturgeons, of Salmones and other fishes: besides their venison, and Beuers which liue in ponds, and liue partly on the land, partly in the water. At least one laudable thing is knowen in them, that they are not men eaters, as the *Scythians* haue beene aforesaid, and many other nations of these parts of the world; and as yet are at this day the *Brasilians*, *Canibals*, and others of the new world.

The inconuenience which is found in their maner of life is, that they haue no bread. Indeed bread is a food very naturall for man, but it is easier to liue with flesh, or with fish, then with bread onely. If they haue not the vse of salt, the most parte of the world doe vse none. It is not altogether necessary, and the principall profit thereof consisteth in preseruing, whereunto it is altogether proper. Notwithstanding if they had any to make some prouisions they would be more happie then vs. But for want of that they sometimes suffer some need: which hapneth when the winter is too milde, or the latter end of the same. For then they haue neither venison nor fish, as wee will declare in the chapter of hunting: and are then constrained to feed vpon the barkes of trees, and on the parings of skinnes, and on their dogges, which (vpon this extremitie) they do eate. And the historie of the *Floridians* saith, that in extremitie they eate a thousand filthes, euen to the swallowing downe of coales, and to put earth in their spoonemeate. True it is that in Port Royall there is alwaies shell fish, so that in all cases one cannot die there for hunger. But yet haue they one superstition that they will not feed on mussels, and they can alleage no reason for it, no more than our superstitious Christians which will not bee thirteene at a table, or which feare to pare their nailes on the Friday, or which haue other scrupulosities, true apish-toies, such as *Plinie* reciteth a good

Sturgeons,  
Salmons, and  
other fish.

*Antropophage.*

Bred.

What time is  
hard for the  
Sauages.

Superstition  
of the Saua-  
ges, and of  
the Christi-  
ans.  
*Plin. lib. 28.*  
*ca. 2.*

The Sauvages  
suspicious.

The sobriety  
and gluttony  
of the Saua-  
ges.

*Hercules, oxe  
eater.*

The meat of  
the *Brasilians*.

number of them in his naturall historie. Notwithstanding in our company seeing vs to eate of them they did the like: for we must say heere by the way, that they will eate no vnknown meat, but first they must see the triall of it by others. As for bealls of the woods they eate of all them, the wolfe excepted. They also eate egges, which they go gathering along the shoares of waters, and they doe lade their Canowes with them, when the Geese and Outardes haue done laying in the Springtime, and they vse all, as well them that be old as new. As for modestie they vse it being at table with vs, and eate very soberly: but at home in their owne houses. (as the *Brasilians*) they stretch out their bellies as much as they can, and doe not leaue eating as long as there is any meat: And if any of ours be at their *Tabagie*, they will bid him doe as they doe. Notwthstanding I see no gluttonie like to that of *Hercules*, who alone did eate whole oxen, and did deuoure one from a *Paisan* called *Diadas*, by reason whereof hee was called *Buthenes*, or *Buphagos*, Oxe-eater. And without going so far, wee see in the Countries of these parts greater gluttonies then that which one would impute to the Sauvages. For in the diet of *Ausbourg* was brought to the Emperor *Charles* the first, a great whoreson which had eaten a calfe and a sheepe, and yet was not full: And I doe not know that our Sauvages doe wax fatte, or that they haue great bellies, but that they are nimble and swift, like to our ancient *Gaullois* and high *Allemans* or *Germans*, who by their agilitie, did trouble very much the Roman armies.

The food of the *Brasilians* are serpents, crocodills, toads and great lizards, which they esteeme as much as wee doe capons, leverets, and conies. They also make meale of white rootes, which they call *Maniel*, hauing the leaues of *Peoniamas*, and the tree of the height of the Elder tree: Those rootes as bigge as the thigh of a Man, which the woman doe crumble very small, and eat them raw, or else they make them to seeth well in a great

great earthen vessell, stirring it alwaies as the comfit-makers doe make suger p'ummes. They are of very good taste, and of easie digestion, but they be not fitt to make bread, because they dry and burne themselves, and alwaies return into meale. They haue also with this *Mabis* or *Mais*, which groweth in two or three months after it is sowed: and that is a great succour vnto them. But they haue a cursed and an vnhumane costome to eat their prisoners, after they haue well fattened them. Yea (a most horrible thing) they giue them in marriage the fairest maidens they haue, putting about their necks as many halters as they will keep him moons. And when the time is expired they make wine of the said *Mais* and rootes, wherewith they make themselves drunke, calling all their friends. Then he that hath taken him knocketh him on the head with a clubbe, and deiderh him into peeces, and make carbonnadoes of him, which they eat with a singular pleasure aboue all meats in the world.

A strange  
prostitution.

Furthermore all Sauages generally doe liue euery where in common: the most perfect and most woorthy life of man, seeing that he is a sociable creature. The life of the ancient golden age, which the holy Apostles would haue restored againe: But being to establish the spirituall life, they could not execute that good desire. If it happens then that our Sauages haue venison, or other food, all the company haue part of it. They haue this mutuall charity which hath bene taken away from vs since that *Mine* and *Thine* haue come into the world. They haue also Hospitality, a vertue peculiar to the ancient *Gaulois* (according to the witnessse of *Parthenius* in his *Erotiques*, of *Cesar*, *Saluian* and others) who did constraîne trauellers and strangers to come into their houses and there to take their refreshing: A vertue which seemeth to haue conserued her selfe onely with the Nobility and gentry: for among the other sort we see her very weake and at the point of death. *Tacitus* giuerh the same praise to the *Germans*, saying that with them all

Commonalty  
of life.

Hospitality.

howles are opened to strangers, and there they are in such assurance that (as if they were sacred) none dare doe them any iniury: *Charity* and *Hospitality* which are mentioned in the law of God who said to his people: *The stranger which sojourneth among you; shall be unto you as he which is borne among you, and you shall love him as your selues: for you haue beene strangers in the land of Egypt.* So doe our Sauages, which, sturred vp with an humane nature, receiue all strangers (except their enemies) whom they accept in their commonalty of life.

Of drinking.

*Plin. lib. 18. cap. 4.*

*Strabo.*

*Cæsar.*

*Tacitus.*

Wine forbidden among the Germans.

*Psal. 104. vers. 16. 17.*

But we haue spoken enough of eating, let vs now speake of drinking. I know not whether I ought to place among the greatest blindneses of the West Indians to haue abundantly the most excellent fruit that God hath giuen vnto vs, and they know not the vse thereof. For I see that the ancient Romans were a long time (as *Pliny* saith) without either Vines or Vine-yards: And our *Gaulloas* did make beere, the vse whereof is yet frequent in all *Gallia Belgica*: And this kind of drinke did the *Egyptians* also vse in former times (as saith *Diodorus*) who attributeth the inuention thereof to *Oenotrus*. Notwithstanding after that the vse of wine was come among the Romans the *Guallois* tooke so good a taste in it, in the voyages that they made there with their Armies, that they continued afterwards the same way. And afterward the Italian Merchants did draw much money from the *Gaullois* with their wine that they brought thicher. But the *Germans* knowing their owne nature subiect to drinke more then is needfull would haue none brought to them, for feare that being drunke they might be a pray to their enemies: and contented themselves with beere: And notwithstanding because the continuall drinking of water ingendreth crudities in the stomacke, and thereby great indispositions, the nations haue commonly found better the moderate vse of wine which hath beene giuen of God to reioyce the heart, as bread for to strengthen him, as the *Psalmist* saith: And the Apostle

*S. Paul*

*S. Paul* himselfe doth counsell his Disciple *Timothy* to vse it by reason of his infirmity. For wine (saith *Oribasius*) re-createth and quickneth our heat: whereby, by consequence, the digestures are made better, and good bloud is engendred, and good nourishment thorow all the parts of the body where the wine hath force to pierce: and therefore they which be weakened by sicknesse doe recover by it a stronger being, and doe likewise renew by it an appetite to their meat. It breaketh the fleame, it purgeth collicke humours by the urine, and with his pleasant odour and lively substance gladdeth the heart of man, and giveth strength to the body. Wine taken moderately is the procurer of all those good effects, but if it be drunke unmeasurably it produceth effects quite contrary. And *Plato* willing to shew foorth in one word the nature and property of wine: That which warmeth (saith he) both body and soule, is that which is called wine. The Sauages which have no vse of wine nor of spices, haue found out another meanes to warme the same stomake, and in some sort to breake so many crudities proceeding from the fish that they eat, which otherwise would extinguish their naturall heat: it is the hearb which the *Brasilians* doe call *Petun*, that is to say, *Tabacco*, the smoake whereof they take almost euery houre, as we will declare more at large when we come heereafter to speake of that hearbe. Then as in these parts one drinketh to another, in presenting the glasse to him to whom one hath drunke (which is done in many places) so the Sauages willing to feast some body and to shew him signe of amity, after they haue well taken of that smoake, they present the *Tabacco* pipe to him that they like best. Which custome to drinke one to another is not new, nor particular to the *Flemings* and *Germans*: for *Heliodorus* in the *Ethiopian History* of *Chariclea* witnesseth that the same was a custome altogether vsed in the Countries whereof he speaketh to drinke one to the other in token of frindship. And because it was abused, and men were appointed to constraîne them that would not pledge, *Assuerus* King of the

*Oribasius*, in the first book of things comodious and ealie, ch. 12.

*Plato* in his *Timæo*.

*Tabacco*.

*Heliodor.* first booke 1. cha. and. 3. booke ch. 3.

ey are in such  
are doe them  
e mentioned  
The stranger  
as he which is  
er selues: for  
. So doe our  
ature, receiue  
they accept in

s now speake  
place among  
o haue abun-  
n giuen vnto  
I see that the  
ith) without  
as did make  
allia Belgica:  
so vse in for-  
the inuenti-  
at the vse of  
lois tooke so  
le there with  
ds the same  
s did draw  
ne that they  
their owne  
would haue  
drunke they  
nted them-  
use the con-  
s in the sto-  
ations haue  
wine which  
s bread for  
the Apostle  
*S. Paul*



the *Persians* at a banquet that he made to all the principall Lords and Governours of his Countries, did forbid by an expresse law to force any, and did command that euery one should be serued after his owne will. The *Egyptians* did vse no forcing, but not withstanding they drunke vp all, and that by great deuotion. For after they had found out the inuention to applye painting and *Matrich* vpon siluer they tooke great delight to see their God *Anubis* painted in the bottome of their cups, as *Pliny* saith.

*Plin. lib. 33.  
cap. 9.*

The *Floridians* drinke.

The drinke of the *Braſilians*.

Our Sauiages *Canadians*, *Souriquois* and others are far from these delights. and hauing nothing but the *Tabacco* spoken of by vs to warme their stomakes after the crudities of waters, and to giue some smatch to the mouth, hauing that in common with many other Nations, that they loue that which is biting, such as the said *Tabacco* is, which (euen as wine or strong beere) taken (as it is said) in smoake, maketh giddy the senses and in some sort, procureth sleep: So that this word drunkard is among them, by this word *Escorken*, as well as amongst vs. The *Floridians* haue a certaine sort of drinke called *Casine* which they drinke all hot, which they make of certaine leaues of trees. But it is not lawfull for euery one to drinke of it, but onely to the *Paraousti*, and to them that haue made prooffe of their valour in the warres. And this drinke hath such vertue that as soone as they haue drunken it, they become all in a sweat which being past, they be fedde for 24. houres by the nourishing force of the same. As for them of *Braſil* they make a certaine kinde of drinke which they call *Caouin*, with roots and a graine called *Mil* which they put to seeth and soften in great earthen vessels, made in the maner of a tub, ouer the fire, and being softened, it is the office of the women to chaw it all, and to set them againe to seeth in other vessels: then hauing left all to be settled and skimmed, they couer the vessell vntill that it must be drunken: and this drinke is as thicke as Ices, after the manner of the *defrutum* of the latins, and of the taste of sowre milke, white

white and red as our wine is : and they make it in euery season, because that the said rootes doe grow there at all times. Furthermore they drinke this *Coi-in* somewhat warme, but with such excesse that they neuer depart from the place where they make their feasts vntil that they haue drunke all out, though there were of the same a tun for euery one. So that the Flemings, high Duch-men, and Switzers are but yongue nouices in that trade in regard of them. I will not speak heere of the Ciders & Peries of *Normandy*, nor of the *Hidromels*, the vse whereof, by the report of *Plutarch*, was long before the inuention of wine : seeing our Sauages vse none of it. But I haue thought good to mention the fruit of the vine, by reason that New France is plentifully furnished therewith.

*Plutar. in the 4. of the Symposiaq. Cha. 5.*

CHAP. XV.

*Of their Dances and Songs.*

**W**Hen the belly is full then comes mirth (saith the Prouerb) it will not be then vsfit to speake of dancing after feasting. For it is also said of the people of *Israel* that after they had well filled their bellies they arose for to plaie and dance about their golden Calfe. Dancing is a thing very ancient among all people. But it was first made & instituted in diuine things, as we did now marke an example of it : and the *Cananites* who did worship the fire, did dance about it & sacrificed their children vnto it. Which maner of dancing was not inuented by the Idolaters, but rather by the people of God. For we read in the booke of *Judges* that there was a solemnity to God in *Silo* where the maidens came to dance at the sound of the fluit. And *Dauid* bringing backe the Arke of Couenant into *Hierusalem*, went before it in his shirt, dancing with all his strength.

*Exod. 31. ver. 6. 19.*  
Dances instituted in diuine things.

*Judges 21. v. 19. 21.*  
*2. King. 6. c.*

As for the Heathen they haue followed this fashion. For *Plutarch* in the life of *Nicias* sayth that the Townes

E c of

of Greece had a custome euery yeere to goe into *Dellos* for to celebrate the dances and songs in the honour of *Apollo*. And in the life of *Licurgus* the Orator, saith that he did ordaine a very solemne dance in the *Pyree* vnto the honour of *Neptune*, with a wager of a hundred crownes price to the best dancer, and to the second of 80. crownes, and to the third of 60. The *Muses*, daughters of *Iupiter* doe loue dancing: and all they that haue spoken of them make vs to goe seeke for them vpon the Mountaine *Parnassus*, where (say they) they dance, at the sound of *Apolloes* Harpe.

The muses  
Dances.

The Colledge  
of the *Saliens*.

As for the Latins, the same *Plutarch* sayth in the life of *Numa Pompilius* that he did institute the colledge of the *Saliens* (which were Priests dancing and gamboling, and singing songs in the honour of God *Mars*) when that a Buckler of brasse fell miraculously from Heauen, which was a gage from that God for the conseruation of the Empire. And that Buckler was called *Ancile*, but for feare that it should be stolen away he caused 12. others to be made a like named *Ancilia*, which were carried in the warres, as wee did heertofore our *Orisflamme*, and as the Emperour Constantine did the *Labarum*. Now the foremost of those *Saliens* that did lead the others in the dance was called *Præsul*, that is to say, first dancer, *præ alijs Saliens*, sayth *Festus*, who taketh from that the name of the French-people, which were called *Saliens* because they did loue to dance, to skippe and to gambole: and of these *Saliens* are come the lawes which wee call *Saliques*, that is to say Lawes of dances.

*Ancyle*.

*Orisflamme*.  
*Labarum*.

*Præsul*.  
*Festus lib. 16.*

*Salique Lawe*.

*Arrian* of the  
gells of *Alexander*.  
Dances profi-  
table for  
health.

So then to come againe to our purpose, the dances haue bene first instituted for holy things. Whereto I will adde the testimony of *Arrian*, who sayth that the Indians which did worship the Sunne rising, did not thinke to haue duely saluted him, vnlesse their songs and prayers were accompanied with dances.

This kinde of exercise was since applied to another vse,  
that

that is to say, for the gouernment of health, as *Plutarche* sayth in the treatie for the same. So that *Socrates* himself (howsoeuer precise and reformed) tooke pleasure therein, for which cause he desired to haue a house large and spacious, as *Xenophon* writeth in his banquet, and the *Persians* did expressly vse the same, as *Duris* writeth in the seuenth of his histories.

*Xenophon.*  
*Duris.*

But the delights, laciuioussnesse, and disorders did conuert them since to their owne vse, and the dances haue serued for *proxenetes* and broakers of vnchastity, as wee find it but too much, whereof wee haue testimonies in the Gospell, where wee finde that it cost the life of the greatest that euer arose amongst men, which is *Saint Iohn Baptist*. And *Arcefilaus* sayd very well, that dances are venoms, sharper then all the poisons that the Earth bringeth foorth, for as much as by a certaine incitement they insinuate into the Soule, wherein they communicate and imprint voluptuousnesse and delectation, which the bodies properly doe affect.

*Plutar.* in the  
7. of the *Sym-*  
*pose. quest. 5.*

Our Sauages, and generally all the people of the west Indies, haue time out of minde the vse of dances. But lasciuious Pleasure hath not yet so farre preuailed against them as to make them dance at the pleasure thereof, a thing which ought to serue as a lesson to the Christians. The vse then of their dances is for foure ends, either to please their gods (let who will call them diuels it is all one to me) as wee haue marked in two places before, or to cheare vp some body, or to reioyce themselues of some victory or to preuent sickeneses. In all these dances they sing, and make no dombe shewes, as in those dances whereof the *Pythienne* Oracle speaketh, when hee saith: It behooueth that the beholder vnderstand the dancing stage plaier, although he be dombe: and that hee heare him though hee doth not speake: But as in *Delos* they did sing to the honour of *Apollo*, the *Salians* to the honour of *Mars*, likewise the *Floridians* doe sing to the honour of the Sunne, to

All Sauages  
doe dance.

Dombe ge-  
stures.

A foolish filthy song to Jupiter.

whom they attribute all their victories: not, for all that so filthily as *Orpheus*, inuentor of the heathenish diuelishnesses, of whom *Saint Gregorie Nazianze* mocketh himselfe in an oration, because that among other follies, in an himme he speaketh of *Jupiter* in this wise: *O glorious Jupiter! the greatest of all the gods, which art resident in all sorts of dung, as well of sheepe as of horses and mules, &c.* And in another himme that he maketh to *Ceres*, he saith, that she discouereth her thighes for to submit her body to her Paramours; and to make hir selfe to be tilled.

The Songs of the Christians to God.

Our *Souriquois* doe make also dances and songs to the honour of the diuell, which sheweth them their game, and that they thinke to gratifie him: wherof one needeth not to maruell, because that we our selues, that be better instructed, doe sing Psalmes and Songs of praise to our God, for that he giueth vs our daily food: And I doe not see that a man who is a hungred haue any great lust either in singing or dancing: *Nemo enim saltat feré sobrius.* saith *Cicero*.

*Cicero* in the Oration for *Murena*.

The Dances and songs of the *Souriquois* Sauages.

Also when they will feast any body, they haue no fairer gesture, in many places then dancing: as in like maner if any one maketh them a feast, for all thanks giuing, they betake themselues to dancing, as it hath beene seene sometimes when *Monsieur de Poutrincourt* did giue them their dinner, they did sing songs of praises vnto him, saying, that he was a braue *Sagamos*, who had made them good cheere, and which was their good friend: which they did comprehend very mystically vnder these three words, *Epigico iaton edico*: I say mystically: for I could neuer know the proper signification of euery of these words. I beleue that it is of the ancient language of their forefathers which is out of vse, like as the old Hebrew is not the Iewes language at this day, and was alreadie changed in the time of the Apostles. ¶

Praises of the braue Captaines.

They sing also in their common *Tabagies*, the praises of the braue captaines and *Sagamos* that haue killed many of their  
their

their enemies. Which was practised anciently in manie nations, and is practised yet amongst vs at this day; and is found to be approoued and of decencie, in the holie Scripture, in the Canticle of *Debora*, after the ouerthrow of king *Sifara*. And when yoong *Dauid* had killed the great *Goliath*, as the king did returne victorious into *Ierusalem*, the women came out of al the towns, and met him with tabrets, rebecks, and timbrels, dancing and singing merily, saying by course and answering one another, *Saul hath slaine his thousand, and Dauid his ten thousand.* *Athenens* saith, that the *Gaullois* had Poets named *Bardes*, whom they reuerenced very much: and those Poets did sing *Vma voce* the deeds of vertuous and famous men: but they did write nothing in publike, because that writing maketh men slothfull and negligent in learning. Notwithstanding *Charolus Magnus* was of an other opinion: For he caused songs to be made in the vulgar tongue, containing the deeds and acts of the ancient, and commanded that the children should be made to learne them by heart, and that they should sing them, to the end, that their memorie should remaine from father to sonne, and from race to race, and by this meanes others should be stirred vp to doe good, and to write the actions and deeds of valiant men. I will further say heere by the way, that the *Lacedemonians* had a certaine maner of dancing which they vsed in all their feasts and solemnities, which did represent the three ages: to wit, the time past, by the old men which did say in singing this burthen; *We were heeretofore valorous*: the present, by the yoong men in the flower of their youth saying: *We be so now at this time*: the future, by the children, who did say, *We shall be so too, when our turne comes.*

I will not busie my selfe in describing all the fashions of the gambols of their ancient predecessors, but it sufficeth me to say that the dances of our Sauages are made without remoouing from one place, and notwithstanding they

Judges cha. 5.

1. Of Samuel,  
18. ver. 6. 7.

*Gaullois Diodo. Athenens* in the 6. booke of the banquet of the wife.

The Songs of the Frenchmen.

*Plutar.* in the life of *Lycorgus. Lacedemonians*

What are the Sauages dances.

they are all in a round (or very neere) and doe dance with vehemencie, striking with their feet vpon the ground, and lifting themselues vp as in halfe a leape: And as for their hands they hold them close, and their armes in the aire, in forme of a man that threatneth, with a motion of them. As for the voice, there is but one that singeth, bee it man or woman: all the rest do & say, *Het, het*, as some that breatheth out with vehemencie: And at the end of euery song, they all make a loud and long exclamation, saying *Héee*. For to be more nimble, they commonly put themselues starke naked, because that their gownes made of skinnes doe hinder them: And if they haue any of their enemies heads or armes, they will carrie them about their necks, dancing with this faire iewell, which they will sometimes bite, so great is their hatred euen against the dead. And for to end this chapter as we began it, they neuer make any *Tabagie* or feast, but that there is a dance after it: And afterward if the *Sagamos* be disposed, according to the state of their affaires, he will make an oration of one, two, or three houres continuance, and at euery demonstration asking the aduice of the companie: if they approue his proposition, euery one will crie out aloud *Héee* in signe of allowing and ratifying of the same. Wherein they giue him very attentiué audience, as wee haue seene many times: And also when that *Monfieur De Pontrincourt* did feast our Sauages, *Memberton*, after dancing made an oration with such vehemencie that he made the world to woonder, shewing the curtesies and witnesses of friendship that they receaued of the Frenchmen, what they might hope of them heereafter; and how much their presence was profitable, yea necessarie vnto them, because that they did sleepe in securitie: and had no feare of their enemies,

&c.

The orations  
of the *Sagamos*  
of one 2.  
or 3. houres  
continuance.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the disposition of their bodies : and of  
their Physike and Chir-  
rurgie.

**W**E have said in the last Chapter that dancing is profitable for the preservation of health. Also it is one of the causes why our Sauvages do delight so much in it : But they have yet some other preservations which they vse very often, that is to say, sweates, whereby they prevent sicknesses. For they be sometimes touched with this *Phthisie* wherewith the men of Captain *James Quartier* and *Monsieur De Monts* were annoied, which notwithstanding is but seldome. But when it happeneth they haue in *Canada* the tree called *Annedda*, which I terme the tree of life for the excellencie thereof, wherewith they heale themselues ; and in the countrie of the *Ar-mouchiquois* they haue *Sassafras*, and in *Florida* *Esquine*. The *Souviqnois* which haue none of these kinds of woods, doe vse sweats, as we haue said, and they haue their *Aout-moins* for *Phistions*, who for that purpose doe digge in the ground, and make a pit which they couer with wood and bigge flatte stones ouer it : then they put fire to it by a hole, and the wood being burned they make a raft with poles, which they couer with all the skinnes and other coverings which they haue, so as no aire entereth therein, they cast water vpon the said stones, which are fallen in the pit, and doe couer them : then they put themselues vnder the same raft, and with motions the *Aoutmoin* singing, and the others saying, ( as in their dances ) *Het, bet, bet*, they put themselues into a sweat. If they happen to fall into sicknesse ( for one must die in the end ) the *Aoutmoin* doth blow, with exercisings, vpon the member grieued, doth licke it and sucke it : and if that be not sufficient, he leecheth the patient bloud, scotching his flesh with the point

*Phthisie* first booke chap. 16.

*Annedda*.

*Sassafras*.  
*Esquine*.

The Sauvages stowes or hot houses.



point of a knife, or something else. If they doe not heale them alwaies, one must consider that our *Physicians* doe not alwaies cure their patients neither.

The Physiti-  
ons in *Florida*.

In *Florida* they haue their *Iaruars*, who continually carry a bagge full of hearbs and drugges hanging about their necks to cure the sicke, which are for the most part sicke of the Pox: and they blowe vpon the parts affected, vntill they draw the very bloud from it.

The *Brasilians*  
Physicians.

The *Brasilians* Phisitons are named among them *Pagés* (they be not their *Caraibes* or Southsaiers) who in sucking as aforesaid, they endeouour themselues to heale diseases. But they haue one sickenesse which is vncureable, which they call *Pians*, proceeding of lecherie, which notwithstanding little children sometimes haue, euen as them in these our parts that be full of pock-holes, which commeth vnto them (as I thinke) from the corruption of their Parents. This contagion doth conuert it selfe into boiles broader then the thombe, which disperse themselues throughout all the bodie, and euen as farre as the face, and being touched therewith they beare the marks thereof all their life time, fowler then lepers, as well *Brasilians* as other nations. As for the sicke bodie his diet, they giue him not any thing, vnlesse he asketh for it: and without taking any other care of them, they cease not to make their noise and hurly burlies before them, drinking, skipping and singing, according to their custome.

The *Souriquois*  
cheirurgens.

As for the wounds, *Aoutmos* of our *Souriquois*, and their neighbours, doe licke and sucke them, vsing the Beuers kidney, whereof they put a slice vpon the wound, and so doth heale it selfe with that. The ancient *Germans* (saith *Tacitus*) not hauing yet the Art of Cheirurgie did the like: *They bring* (saith he) *their wounds to their Mothers and to their Wines*, who are not afraid neither to numbr them, nor to sucke them: yea they bring them vittails to the campe, and exhort them to fight valiantly: so that sometimes armies readie to runne away, haue beene restored by the pray-

*ers of the women, opening their breasts to their husbands. And afterwards they willingly used the womens advices and counsels, wherein they esteeme some holy thing to be.*

And among the Christians, many (not caring for God no longer then they receive good gifts of him) doe seeke for the healing of their diseases by charmes and helpe of Witches: So among our Sauvages the *Aoutmois* hauing some sore in cure, inquireth often of his diuell to know whether he shall heale or no: and hath neuer no answer but doubtfully, by *if*, or *and*. There bee some of them which sometimes doe make incredible cures, as to heale one that hath his armes cut off. Which notwithstanding I know not, why I should finde it strange, when I consider what *Monsieur de Busbeque* writeth in his discourse of his Embassie into Turkie the fourth Epistle.

Comming neere vnto *Buda*, the Basha sent some of his household Seruants to meete vs, with many Haraldes and officers: But among the rest a faire troupe of yong men on horse-backe, remarkable for the nouelty of their order. They had their heads bare and shauen, vpon the which they had made a long bloudie slash, and thrust diuers feathers of birds within the wound, from whence the very pure blood did trickle downe: but instead of shrinking at it, they went lifting vp their heads with a laughing countenance. Before me marched some foote men, one of them had his armes naked and hanging down on his sides: both which armes about the Elbowe was thrust quite through with a knife that stucke fast in them. Another was naked from his head to the nauell, hauing the skinne of his backe so jagged vp and downe in two places, athwart which he had made to passe, an hatchet of armes, which he did carry in scarffe wise as we would doe a cuttleaxe. I saw another of them who had fixed vpon the crowne of his head a horse shooe with many nailes, and of so long continuance that the nailes were so fixed and fast in the flesh, that they stirred not. Wee entered

“ into Buda in this pompe, and were brought into the Basha's house, with whom I treated of my affaires. All this youthly company little caring for their wounds were in the lower court of the house; And as I was a looking on them the Basha asked of me what I thought of it: All well said I, except that these men doe with the skinne of their bodies, that which I would not doe with my coat: For I would seeke to keepe it whole. The Basha laughed, and we tooke our leaue.

The triall of  
the Sauages  
constancy.

Our Sauages doe very well sometimes make triall of their constancie, but we must confesse that it is nothing in regard of the things aboue rehearsed. For all that they do is to put burning coales vpon their armes, and to suffer their skinnes to burne, so that the marks thereof doe remaine therefor euer: which thing they doe also on other parts of the body, and shew these marks to say that they haue a great courage. But the ancient *Mutius Scenola* did much more then that, burning courageously his arme in the fire, after he had missed the killing of king *Porfenna*. If this were of my purpose I would declare the customes of the *Lacedemonians*, who did make euery yeare a feast to the honour of *Diana*, where the yong boies did shew their triall by whipping of themselues: Item the custome of the ancient *Persians*, who worshiping the Sunne, which they called *Mithra*, none could be receiued to that fraternity vntill he had giuen his constancy to be knowen, by fourescore kindes of torments, of fire, of water, of fasting, of solitarinesse, and other things.

Romans.

*Lacedemonians*.

*Persians*.

Healthfull  
Country.

But let vs return to our Sauages Physicians & Chierurgeons. Although the number of them be but small, yet so it is that the hope of their liuing doth not consist wholly in that trade. For as concerning the ordinary sickneses they are so rare in those parts, that the verse of *Ouid* may be very well applied vnto them:

*Si valeant homines ars tua Phabe iacet:*

In saying *Si, pro Quia*. For these doe also liue a great age,

age, which is commonly seven score or eight score yeare. And if they had our commodities to liue by forecast, and industry to gather vp in summer for the Winter, I beleue they would liue about three hundred yeares. Which may be coniectured by the report that we haue made heretofore of an old man in *Florida*, who had liued that great age. In such sort that it is no particular miracle of that which *Pliny* saith that the *Pandorians* doe liue 200. yeares or that they of *Taprobane* are liuely and nimble at a 100. yeares old. For *Memberton* is about a 100. yeares old, and yet hath not one white haire on his head, and so ordinarily be the others. And that which is more in euery age they haue all their teeth, and go bareheaded, not caring at least to make any hats of their skinnes, as the first did that vsed them in these parts of the world. For they of *Peloponnesus* the *Lacedemonians* did call a hat *Cynen*, which *Iulius Pollux* saith to signifie a dogges skinne. And of these hats doe yet the Northerly people vse at this day, but they are well furred.

Long liues.

The first originall of hats.

That which also procureth the health of our Sauages, is the concord which they haue among them, and the small care they take for the commodities of this life, for the which we torment and vex our selues. They haue not that ambition, which in these parts gnaweth and fretteth the mindes and spirits, and filleth them with cares, making blinded men to goe to the graue in the very flower of their age, and sometimes to serue for a shamefull spectacle to a publike death.

Concord is a cause of long life.

I dare also, and that very well, attribute the cause of this disposition and long health of our Sauages, to their maner of life, which is after the ancient fashion, without curiosity. For euery one doth grant that *Sobriety* is the mother of health. And although they sometimes exceed in their *Tabagies* or feasts, they diet themselves afterwards well enough, liuing very often eight daies more or lesse with the smoake of *Tabacco*, not returning to hunting vntil they

Sobriety.

Multitude of  
officers is the  
signe of a cor-  
rupted estate.

Ecclesiast. 30.  
at the end of  
the chapter.

Bowes and  
arrowes.

be a hungry. And that besides being nimble they want no exercise, some way or other. Briefely there is no mention amongst them of those short ages which doe not out passe fourty yeares, which is the life of certaine people of *Aethiopia* (as *Pliny* saith) which doe liue of *Locustes* (or grasshoppers) salted in the smoake. Also corruption is not among them, which is the fostering mother of *Physitions* and of *Magistrates*, and of the multiplicity of officers, and of publike extortioners, which are created and instituted for to giue order vnto it, and to cut off the abuses. They haue no sutes in law (the plague of our lues) to the prosecuting whereof we must consume both our yeares & our meanes, and very often one cannot obtaine iustice, be it either by the ignorance of the Iudge, to whom the case is disguised, or by his owne malice, or by the wickednesse of an Atturney that will sell his Clyant. And from such afflictions do proceed the teares, fretfulnesse, and desolations, which bring vs to the graue before our time. *For sorrow* (saith the wise man) *bath killed many, and there is no profit in it. Envy and wrath shorten the life, and care bringeth old age before the time. But the ioy of the heart is the life of man: and a mans gladnesse prolongeth his daies.*

## CHAP. XVII.

### *The exercises of the Men.*

**A**fter health, let vs speake of exercises which be the maintainers and protectors thereof. Our Sauages haue no base exercise, all their sport being either the wars, or hunting (whereof we will speake seuerally) or in making implements fit for the same (as *Cesar* witnesseth of the ancient *Germans*) or a dancing (and of that we haue already spoken) or in passing the time in play. They make then Bowes and Arrowes, bowes which be strong and without finenesse. As for the arrowes it is an admirable thing, how they can make them so long and so straight  
with

with a knife, yea with a stone onely, where they haue no kniues. They feather them with the feathers of an Eagles taile, becaue they are firme, and carry themselues well in the aire: And when they want them they will giue a Beauers skinne, yea twaine for one of those tailes. For the head, the Sauages that haue traffike with French-men doe head them with iron heads which are brought to them. But the *Armoichiquois* & others more remot haue nothing but bones, made like Serpents tongues, or with the tailes of a certaine fish called *Sicnan*, the which fish is also found in *Virginia* by the same name (at least the English Historian doth write it *Seekanauk*.) This fish is like to a Crauise lodged within a very hard shell, which shell is of the greatnesse of a dish, a long taile, likewise hard (for it is shell and sharpe). His eies are vpon his backe, and is very good meate.

No wife trade to sell any weapens to them.

*Sicnan*, or *Seekanauk*, a fish in *Virginia*.

They also make wooden mases or clubbes, in the fashion of an Abbots stafe, for the warre, and shields which couer all their bodies, as did our ancient *Gaullois*. As for the *Quiuers* that is the womens trade.

Mases, or clubs, shields.

For fishing. The *Armoichiquois* which haue hempe doe make fishing lines with it, but ours that haue not any manuring of the ground, doe trucke for them with French-men, as also for fishing hookes to baite for fishes: onely they make with guttes bow-strings, and rackets, which they tie at their feet to goe vpon the snow a hunting.

Fishing lines. Hempe.

Bowe-strings made with guts. Rackets.

And for as much as the necessity of life doth constraîne them to change place often, whether it be for fishing (for euery place hath his particular fishes, which come thither in certaine season) they haue neede of horses in their remooue for to carry their stuffe. Those horses be *Canoes* and small boates made of barks of trees, which go as swiftly as may be without sailes. When they remooue they put all that they haue into them, wiues, children, dogges, kettles, hatchets, *Matachiaz*, bowes, arrowes, quiuers, skinnes,

*Canoes*, or boats.

skinner, and the coverings of their houses. They are made in such sort that one must not sturre, nor stand vp when he is in them, but crouching or sitting in the bottome, otherwise the marchandize would ouerturne. They are fower foot broad or thereabouts, in the middest, and are sharpe towards the ends : and the nose is made rising, for to passe commodiously vpon the waues. I haue said that they make them of the barkes of trees, for the keeping whereof in measure, they garnish them within, with halfe circles of Ceder wood, a wood very souple and pliable, whereof *Noahs* Arke was made. And to the end they leake not, they couer the seames (which ioyn the said barkes together, which they make of rootes) with the gumme of firre-trees. They also make some with willowes very properly, which they couer with the said gumme of Firre-trees : a thing which witnesseth that they lacke no wit, where necessity presseth them.

Many nations of these parts haue had the like in times past. If wee seeke in the holy Scripture, wee shall finde that *Moses* mother, seeing shee could hide her child no longer, she did put him in a little Chest (that is to say in a little *Canowe* : (for *Noahs* Arke, and this same small chest is one same word *קנה* in Hebrew, made of reede, and daubed it with slime and pitch : then put the childe in it, and laid it among the bulrushes by the shoare of the River. And the Prophet *Isaiah* threatning the *Ethiopians* and *Assyrians* : *Woe* (saith he) unto the Countrie which sendeth by sea Ambassadors in paper vessels (or rushes) vpon the waters, saying : Messengers goe yoe quickly, &c. The *Egyptians*, neighbours to the *Ethiopians* had in the time of *Iulius Caesar*, the same vessels, that is to say, of paper, which is a rinde of a barke of a tree : witnesse *Lucan* in these verses :

*Lucani*. 4.  
booke.

*Plin*. lib. 4. ca.  
16.

*Conferitur bibula Memphitis cymba papyro.*

But let vs come from the East and South to the North : *Pliny* saith, that anciently the Englishmen & Scottishmen, fetched

fetch'd Tinne in the land of *Mictis*, with *Canowes* of Willows sewed in leather. *Solin* saith as much, and *Isidore*, which calleth this fashion of *Canowes*, *Carabus*, made of Willows, and enuironed with oxe hides all raw, which (saith he) the Saxon Pirats doe vse, who with those instruments are swift in flight. *Sidonius de Polignac*, speaking of the same Saxons, saith,

— *Cui pelle salam fulcare Britannum*

*Ludus, & assuto glaucum mare findere Lembo.*

The Sauages of the North towards *Labrador*, haue certaine small *Canowes* of thirteene or foureteene foote long, and two foot broad, made of this fashion, all couered with leather, yea ouer head, and there is but one hole in the midst, where the man putteth himselfe on his knees, hauiing halfe his body out, so that he cannot perish, furnishing his vessels with victuales before he commeth in it. I dare belecue that the fables of the *Sirenes* or Marmaidens come from that, the dunces esteeming that they were fishes, halfemen or women, as they haue fained *Centaures* by seeing men on horsebacke.

The *Armouchiquois*, *Virginians*, *Floridians*, and *Brasilians*, doe make another fashion of *Canowes*, for hauing neither hatchets nor kniues, (except some copper ones) they burne a great tree very straight, at the foot, and fall it downe, then they take such length as they will, and vse to burne it in steed of sawing it, scraping the burnt part of the tree with stones: and for the hollowing of the vessell, they doe continue the same. In one of those boats six men will faile with some stuffe, and will make long voiajes. But these kinde of *Canowes* are heauier than the others.

They also make long voyages by land, as well as by sea, and they will vndertake (a thing vncredible) to goe twentie or thirtie yea fortie leagues through the woodes, without meeting with any path or Inne, and without carrying any victuales but Tabacco, and a tinder box, with their bow in hand, and their quiuer at their backs. And we

*Isidor. li. 19.  
cap. 1.*

*Sidon. Carm. 7.*

The original  
of the *Sirens*  
fables.

*Canowes* of  
hollowed  
trees.

Long voiajes  
in the woods.



in France are much troubled when we haue neuer so little lost our way in some great forrest. If they be pressed with thirst, they haue the skill to sucke the trees, from whence doe trickle downe a sweet and very pleasant liquor, as my selfe haue tried it sometimes.

They are  
commonly  
Birch trees.

In the countries where they vse tillage, as in that of the *Armonchiouis*, and farther off, the men doe make an infinite quantitie of Earthen pots, like in fashion to night caps, in which they seeth their meats, flesh, fish, beanes, corne, pompions &c. Our *Souriquois* did so anciently and did till the ground, but since that French-men doe bring vnto them kettles, beanes, peason, bisket and other foode they are become slouthfull, and make no more accompt of those exercises. But as for the *Armonchiouis* which haue yet no commerce with vs, and them that are further of, they till the ground, doe fatten it with shells of fish, they haue their families distinct, and their plots of ground about them; contrary to the ancient *Germans* which (as *Cesar* saith) had not any field proper, neither did they dwell about a yeere in one place, hauing almost no other living then milke, flesh, and cheese, thinking it too tedious a thing for them to tary a whole yeere of purpose, for to reape a haruest. Which is also the humor of our *Souriquois* and *Canadians*, who, and all others (as wee must needs confesse) are nothing laborious but in hunting. For, the manuring of the ground, the women doe take the greatest paines in it, who amongst them doe not command at home, and doe not make their husbands to go to the Market, as they doe in many provinces in these our parts, and especially in the Country of *Iealoufie*.

Potterie of  
earth.

The tilling  
of the ground.  
*Germans*.

The Sauages  
be not laborious.

The Floridians  
tillage.  
Sowing  
twise a yeere.

As for the tillage of the *Floridians*, heare what *Laxdomniere* saith of it: They sow their corne twise a yeere, that is to say, in March and in Iune, and all in one and the selfe same lande. The said Mill from the time that it is sowed vntill it be ready to be reaped, is not about three

months

monthes in the ground. The six other monthes they suffer the ground to rest. They also gather faire Pompions and very good beanes. They do not dung their land: onely when they will sow, they set the weeds on fire which are growen during the six monthes, and burne them all. They till their land with an Instrument of wood, which is made like to a broad pickaxe, wherewith they digg their vines in France: They put two graines of mill together. When the lands are to be sowed, the king commandeth one of his men to call his subiects together euery day to come to labour, during the which, the king causeth great store of that drinke whereof we haue spoken to bee made. In the season that the Corne is gathered, it is all carried into the common store-house, where it is distributed to euery one according to his qualitie. They sowe but so much as they thinke will serue them for six moneths, and that very hardly: for during the winter they retire themselves three or foure moneths of the yeere into the woods: where they make little houses of Palme leaues, to lodge themselves in, and there doe liue of acornes, of fish which they take, of oysters, of Stagges, Turkie hennes, and other beasts that they take.

And seeing they haue townes and houses, or Cibanes, I may yet well put this among their exercises. As for the Towns, they be multitudes of Cabins, made somewhat Piramide wise, others in forme of a cottage, others like garden bowres, compast as it were with high pales of trees ioined one neere the other, euen as I haue set out the town of *Hochelaga*, in my mappe of the great riuer of *Canada*. Furthermore, one must not maruel of this shape of a town, which might seeme simple: seeing that the fairest townes of Moscouie haue no better inclosure. The ancient *Lacedemonians* would haue no other walles then their courage and valour. Before the generall flood *Cain* did builde a town, which he named *Henoah* (I belecue it was no otherwise made then those of our Sauages) but he did feele the

Plowing.

Their living during the Winter.

The townes of the Sauages.

The beginning of townes.

Gen. 4. 20.

The first builder in the Gaules.

The Gaullois Philotophers. *Diog. Laert.* in the beginning of the lues of Philotophers. Games of the Sauages.

wrath of God which pursued him, and had lost all assurance. Men had but Cabins and Pauillions, and as it is written of *Iabal* the sonne of *Hada*; that he was the father of the dwellers in *Tabernacles* and of *Shepherds*. After the flood they builded the tower of *Babel*, but this was folly. *Tacitus* writing of the maners of the *Germans*, saith that in his time they had not any vse neither of lime nor stones. The English Britons much lesse. Our *Gaullois* were then, from many ages before, come to ciuility. But yet were they along time in the beginning without any other habitations than Cabins: and the first *Gaullois* king that built townes and houses, was *Magus*, who succeeded his father the wise *Samothes*, three hundred yeeres after the flood, eight yeeres after the natiuitie of *Abraham*, and the one and fiftie yeere of the raigne of *Ninus*, as *Berosius* the Chaldean doth say. And although they had buildings, they lay notwithstanding on the ground vpon skinned, like to our Sauages. And as in the ancient times the names were giuen which contained the qualities and acts of persons, *Magus* was so called, because hee was the first builder. For in the *Scythian* and *Armenian* language (from whence our *Gaullois* came shortly after the flood) and in the ancient *Gaullois* toong, *Magus* signifieth a builder, saith the same Author, and so hath *John Annius* of *Viterbe* very well marked: from whence came our names of the Townes of *Rothomagus*, *Neomagus*, *Neuomagus*. So likewise *Samothes* signifieth wise, and the old *Gaullois* Philosophers were (before the *Druides*) called *Samotheans*, as *Diogenes Laertius* reporteth, who confesseth that Philosophie did begin from them whom the Greeke vanitie did call *Barbarous*.

I will adde heere for an exercise of our Sauages, their play at hazard, wherunto they are so addicted that sometimes they play out all that they haue: And *James Quartier* writeth the same of them of *Canada*, in the time that hee was there. I haue scene a kind of game that they haue

haue, but not thinking then to write this treatie, I tooke no heede to it. They put some number of beanes coloured and painted of the one side in a platter: and hauing stretched out a skinne on the ground, they play there vpon, striking with the dish vpon this skinne, and by that meanes the beanes doe skippe in the aire, and doe not all fall on that parte that they be coloured: and in that consisteth the chance and hazard: and according to their chance they haue a certaine number of quils made of rushes, which they distribute to him that winneth for to keepe there reckoning.

CHAP. XVIII.

*Of the Womens exercises.*

**T**He woman was giuen in the beginning vnto Man, not onely for to aide aud assist him, but also to be the store house of generation. Their first exercise then that I will attribute vnto her, after that she is married is to bring foorth goodly children, and to assist her husband in this worke: for this is the end of marriage. And therefore is she very wel and fitly called in *hebrew* **נִקְבָּה** that is to say *pierced*, because it is meete that she be pierced, if shee will imitate our common mother the Earth, which in the Spring time, desirous to bring forth, openeth her bosome for to receaue the raine and dewes which the heauen powreth vpon her. Now I find that this exercise shalbe requisite for them that will inhabite New France to bring foorth there store of creatures, which shall sing the praises of God. There is land enough to nourish them, so that they be willing to worke: and their condition shall not be so miserable as it is with many in these partes, which doe seeke to emploie themselues and doe not find wherein: and albeit they find it, yet very often is their labour vnrewarded and vnfruitfull. But in that cuntry he that will take pleasure, and as it were sport himselfe

The woman is called *Pierced*.

Marriage requisite for planters in a new possessed Land. Great encouragement for the honestly minded that goe to inhabite in those parts.

1. Tim. 2. 15.

with sweete labour, he shall be assured to live out of bondage, and that his children shall yet be in better state then himselfe was. The first exercise then of the woman is to worke in generation, which is a labour so faire and so meritorious, that the great Apostle *S. Paul*, to consoleate them in the paines they take in that labour hath said: *that the woman shall be saved through bearing of children, if they remaine in faith, and loue, and holinesse with modesty.* That isto say, If she instruct them in such sort that the godlinesse of the mother may be knowen by the good institution of the children.

Leuit. 12.  
purification.

This first and chiefest article being mentioned, let vs cometo the others. Our Sauage women after they haue brought forth the fruite of this exercise, by I know not what practise, doe obserue without law that which was commanded in the lawe of *Moses* touching purification. For they shut vp themselues a parte, and know not their husbands for thirty yea fourty daies: during which time they doe not leaue for all that from going here and there, where they haue businesse, carrying their children with them, and taking care for them.

Heere about  
chap. 14.

I haue said in the chapter of the *Tabagie* that among the Sauages, the women are not in as good a condition as they were anciently among the *Gaullois* and *Germans*. For (by the report of *Iames Quartier* himselfe) they labour more then the men, saith he, whether it be in fishing, be it in tilling or in any thing else. And notwithstanding they are neither forced, nor tormented: but they are neither in their *Tabagies* nor in their counsels, and doe the seruile busineses, for want of seruants. If there be any venison killed, they goe to slay it and to fetch it, yea were it three leagues off: and they must finde it out by the onely circumstance that shall be described to them by words. They that haue prisoners doe also employ them to that, and to other labours, as to goe fetch wood with their wiues: which is folly in them to goe fetch drie and rotten wood very farre

off

off for to warme them, although they be in the middest of a forrest. True it is that the smoake is very irkesome to them : which it may be is the cause thereof.

Touching their smaller exercises ; when the winter doth approach they prepare that which is necessary to oppose themselves against this rigorous aduersary, and make mattes of rushes, wherewith they garnish their Cabins, and others to sit vpon, and all very artificially, yea also colouring their rushes, they make partitions in their workes, like to them that our gardeners doe make in their garden knots, with such meature and proportion as nothing is found amisse therein. And because that the body must also be clothed, they curry and supple the skinnes of Beuers, Stagges and others, as well as can be done heere. If they be little they sew many together, and make cloakes, sleeues, stockens, and shooes, vpon all which things they make workes which haue a very good grace. Item they make Panniers of rushes and rootes, for to put their necessities in, as corne, beanes, peason, flesh, fish and other things. They make also purses of leather, vpon which they make workes woorthy of admiration, with the haire of Porckepines, coloured with red, black, white and blew, which be the colours that they make, so liuely that oures seeme in nothing to be comparable to them. They also exercise themselves in making dishes of barke to drinke, and put their meates in, which are very faire according to the stuffe. Item skarfes, necklaces and bracelets which they and the men doe weare (which they call *Matachia*) are of their making. When the barkes of trees must be taken off in the Spring-time, or in Summer, therewith to couer their howses, it is they which doe that worke : As likewise they labour in the making of *Canowes* and small boates, when they are to be made : And as for the tilling of the ground (in the countries where they vse it) they take therein more paines then the men, who doe play the gentlemen, and haue no care but in hunting, or of warres. And notwithstanding

Mattes.

The currying  
and dressing  
of skinnes.

Panniers.

Purses.

Dies.

Dishes.

Matachia.

Canowes.

The womens  
loue to their  
husbands.

Faire obser-  
uation vpon  
the names of  
the Man and  
the woman.  
*Aben Hezra*  
on the 2. cha.  
of the Prouer.  
17. vers.

standing all their labours, yet commonly they loue their husbands more then the women of these our parts. For none of them are seene to marry againe vpon their graues, that is to say presently after their decease, but rather doe tarry a long time. And if he hath beene killed, they will eat no flesh nor will condescend to second marriage vntill they haue seene the reuenge thereof made: A testimony both of true loue (which is scarce found among vs) and also of chastity. Also it happeneth very seldome that they haue any diuorcements, but such as are voluntary. And if they were Christians they would be families with whom God would dwell and be well pleased, as it is meet it should be so, for to haue perfect contentment: for otherwise marriage is but torment and tribulation. Which the *Hebrewes* great speculators and searchers into holy things, by a suttle animaduersion, haue very well noted, for *Aben Hezra* saith, that in the name of the man **אדם** and of the woman **אשה** the name of God, *Iah*, is contained: And if the two letters which doe make this name of God be taken away, there shall remaine these two words **אש** **אש** which do signifie *fire* and *fire*, that is to say, that God being taken away it is but anguish, tribulation, bitterness and griefe.

## CHAP. XIX.

### *Of their Ciuility.*

Math. 15. v. 2.

**O**ne must not hope to finde in our Sauages that ciuility which the Scribes and Pharisees did require in the Disciples of our Lord. For which their ouer great curiosity he made them such answer as they deserued. For they had brought in ceremonies and customes which were repugnant to Gods commandement, which they would haue straightly to be obserued, reaching vngodlinesse vnder the name of *Piety*. For if a wicked child did giue and put into the common box of the temple that which

which appertained to his father, or to his mother, they (for to draw this profit) did iustifie this wicked Sonne, against the commandement of God, who hath about all things commended & commanded the childrens obedience and reuerence towards them that haue brought them into the world, which are the image of God, who hath no need of our goodes, and doth not accept the oblation that is made vnto him of the goods of another. The same Scribes and Pharisees did also bring in, a ciuility to wash hands, which our Lord doth not blame but in as much as they made the not obseruing of it, to be a great sinne.

God wil haue no oblation made of another bodies goods.

I haue no cause to praise our Sauages in those kind of ciuilities, for they wash not themselues at meales, vnlesse they be monstrously fowle: and not hauing any vse of linnen, when their hands be greasie they are constrained to wipe them on their haire, or vpon their dogges haire. They make no curiosity of belching, being at meales: which the Germans and others in these parts do as well as they. Not hauing the art of ioyners worke they dine vpon the broad table of the world, spreading a skinn where they eat their meat, and sit on the ground. The Turkes also doe the same. Our ancient *Gaullois* were no better then they, who (*Diodorus* saith) did vse the same, spreading on the ground dogges skinnes, or woolues skinnes, vpon which they did dine and suppe, making themselues to be serued by yongue boies. The *Germans* were more rude. For they had not learning, Phylosophy, nor so much delicatenesse as our Nation, which *Cesar* saith to haue had the vse of a thousand things by the meanes of their Navigations on the seas, whereby they helped the bordering people of *Germany*, who vsed some small ciuilitie, and more humanity then the others of their Nation, by reason of the communication they had with our people.

Sauages.

*Gaullois.*

*Germans.*

As for the complements that they vse one towards another coming from farre they may very briefly be recited. For we haue many times seene Sauage strangers to

Sauages arriving in some place.

arrive



The Sauvages  
salutations.

arriue in Port Royall, who being landed, without any discourse, went straight to *Membertous* cabin, where they sat downe, taking Tabacco, and hauing well drunken of it, did giue the Tabacco-pipe to him that seemed to be the worthiest person, and after consequently to the others: Then some halfe an howre after they did begin to speake. When they arriued at our lodgings, their salutation was, *Ho, ho, ho*, and so they doe ordinarily: but for making of curtesies and kissing of hands they haue no skill: except some particulars which induoured themselues to be conformable vnto vs, and seldome came they to see vs without a hat, to the end they might salute vs with a more solemne action.

The Floridians  
Salutations.

The *Floridians* doe make no enterprise, before they assemble their Counsell diuers times: and in these assemblies when they arriue they salute one another. The *Paraousti* (whom *Landonniere* calleth king) placeth himself alone vpon a seate which is higher then the others: where, one after another, they come to salute him, and the eldest beginne their salutation, lifting vp twise both their hands as high as their faces, saying *Ha, he, ya, ha, ha*, and the others doe answer *Ha, ha*. And they sit euery one vpon seats which are about the Counsell chamber.

The Greekes  
salutations.  
Plato in *Charmide*.

The salutations of the Latins and Hebrewes.

Now whether the salutation *Ho, ho*, doe signifie any thing or no (for I know no particular signification in it) yet notwithstanding it is a salutation of Ioy, and the onely voice *Ho, ho*, cannot be made but almost in laughing, testifying thereby that they are glad to see their friends. The Greeks haue neuer had any thing else in their salutations, but a witnessing of Ioy by their word *Chaire*, which signifieth, *be ye merry*: which *Plato* disliking was of aduice that it were better to say *Sophrony*, *be ye wise*. The Latins haue had their *Aue*, which is a wish of happinesse: sometimes also *Salue*, which is a wishing of health to him whom one saluteth. The Hebrewes had the verbe *shalum* which is a word of peace and of health.

health. According vnto which Our Sauour did command his Apostles to salute the houses where they should enter in, that is to say (according to the interpretation of the common translation) to pronounce peace vnto them : which salutation of peace was from the first ages amongst the people of God. For it is written that *Iethro, Moses* father in law, comming to reioice with him for the graces that God had done vnto him and vnto his people, by the deliuering of them from the land of *Egypt, Moses went out to meet his father in law, and hauing bowed himselfe kissed him : and they saluted one another with words of peace.* Wee Frenchmen doe say, *Dieu vous gard'*, that is, God keepe you, *Dieu vous doint le bon Iour*, God giue you good morrow ; Item *Le bon Soir*, good Euening. Notwithstanding there be many, who ignorantly doe say, *Je vous donne, Le bon Iour, Le bon Soir*, that is to say, I giue (or bid) you good morrow, good euening : A maner of speech which would be more decent, by desiring and praying to God that it be so. Angels haue sometimes saluted men, as he who did say to *Gedeon: Most strong and valiant man, the Lord is with thee.* But God saluteth no body : for it belongeth to him to giue saluation, and not to wish it by praier.

Math. 10. 12.

Exod. 18. 7.

Iudg. 6. 12.

The Heathen had yet a ciuilitie in saluting them which did sneeze, which custome we haue kept of them. And the Emperour *Tiberius*, the saddest man in the world (saith *Pliny*) would be saluted in sneezing, although he were in his Coach &c. All those ceremonies and institutions (saith the same Authour) are come from the opinion of them which think that the gods will assist our affaires. Out of these words may be easily coniectured that the salutations of the Heathen were praier and vowes for health, or other felicity, that they made to the gods.

Saluration in Sneezing.

And as they did such things in meetings, so did they vse the word *Vale* (be ye well, be ye in health, as wee vse to say in English fare you well) at the departure : yea in letters and Epistles ; which also they began alwaies

The ancient fashion in the beginning of letters.

H h

with

out any dis-  
ere they fat  
unken of it,  
ed to be the  
the others :  
a to speake.  
tation was,  
r making of  
ill : except  
s to be con-  
see vs with-  
n a more so-

before they  
these assem-  
er. The Pa-  
ceth himself  
hers: where,  
and the el-  
e both their  
ha, ha, and  
ery one vp-  
r.

signifie any  
cation in it)  
y, and the  
st in laugh-  
to see their  
hing else in  
their word  
a *Plato* dis-  
*Sophroney*,  
which is a  
which is a  
he *Hebrews*  
pace and of  
health.

Senec. ep. 15.

Of *Adieu*,  
God be with  
you.The Sauges  
obedient to  
their parents.Tit Lib. 1.  
Deed. 1.  
Deut. 27. 16.

with these words: *If you be in health, it is well: I am in health.* But *Seneca* saith that this good custome was broken in his time: As at this day among vs it is to write clownish like to put in the beginning of a letter, *God keepe you in health*: which was in times past a holy and christi-an maner of writing. In stead of this *Vale*, which is often found in the holy Scriptures, we say in our language *ADieu* God be with you, wishing not onely health to our friend, but also that God doe keepe him.

But our Sauges haue not any salutation at the departure, but onely the *ADieu* which they haue learned of vs. And to finish this discourse where wee began, they are to be commended for their obedience that they yeeld to their fathers and mothers, to whose commandements they obey, doe nourish them in their old age, and defend them against their enemies. And heere with vs (oh miserable thing!) there is often seene the childrens sutes in law against their parents: books of the fatherly power are seene published, concerning the childrens withdrawing from their obedience. An vnworthy act for children that be Christians, to whom may be applied the speeches of *Turnus Herdonius*, recited in *Titus Linius*, saying, that there is no speedier deciding and taking up of any matter, then betweene the father and the sonne; a thing that might be dispatched in few words: for if he would not obey and giue place to his father, undoubtedly euill should come to him. And the word of God which is a thunder bolt saith: *Cursed be he who honoureth not his Father and his Mother, and all the people shall say Amen.*

## CHAP. XX.

*Of the Vertues and Vices of the Sauges.*

**V**ertue like vnto wisdom, disdaineth not to be lodged vnder a meane roose. The Northerly nations are the last that haue beene brought to ciuilitie:  
And

And notwithstanding, before that civility, they haue done great actions. Our Sauages, although they bee naked, are not void of those vertues, that are found in men of ciuilitie, For every one (saith Aristotle) hath in him, euen from his birth, the principles and seedes of vertue. Taking then the fowre vertues by their springs, we shall finde that they participate much of them. For first concerning fortitude and courage, they haue thereof as much as any nation of the Sauages ( I speake of our *Souriquois* and of their allied) in such sort, that ten of them will alwaies aduenture themselves against twentie *Arrouchiquois*: not that they be altogether without feare (a thing which the fore alleaged Aristotle doth reproch to the ancient *Celtien-Gaullois*, who feared nothing, neither the motions of the earth, nor the tempests of the sea, saying, that this was the property of an hairebraine fellow) but with that courage they haue, they esteeme that wisdome giueth vnto them much advantage. They feare then, but it is that which all wise men doe feare, and that is death, which is terrible and dreadfull, as she that riseth all, through which shee passeth. They feare shame and reproch, but this feare is cosen germane to vertue. They are stirred to doe good by honour, for as much as he, amongst them, is alwaies honored, and getteth renoune to himselfe that hath done some faire exploit. Hauing these things proper vnto them, they are in a mediocritie, which is the very seate of vertue. One point maketh this vertue of force and courage vnperfect in them, that is, they are too reuengefull, and in that they put their soueraing contentment, which inclineth to brutishnesse. But they are not alone, for all those nations how farre soeuer they may stretch themselves from one Pole to the other, are infected with this vice. The Christian Religion onely may bring them to reason, as in some sort she doth with vs (I say in some sort) because that wee haue men very vnperfect, as well as the Sauages.

*Arist. 6 Ethic. chap. 13.*

The ancient Gaullois were without feare.

What it is that the Sauages doe

Sauages reuengefull.

Temperance is another vertue, consisting in the mediocritie

critie in things that concerne the pleasures of the body : for as for that which concerneth the minde he is not called temperate or vntemperate, who is moued with ambition, or with desire to learne, or that emploiet his time in toies. And for that which concerneth the body, temperance or vntemperance, is not applied to all things that might be subiect to our senses, vnlesse it be by accident, as to colour, to a picture: Item to flowers and good sences: Item to songs and hearing of orations, or comedies: but rather to that which is subiect to feeling, and to that which smelling seeketh by arts, as in eating and drinking, in perfumes, in the vnerian act, to tenise play, to wrestling, to running, and such like. Now all these things do depend of the will; which being so, it is the part of a man to know how to bridle his appetites.

Our Sauages haue not all the qualities requisite for the perfection of this vertue. For as for meates we must acknowledge their vntemperance, when they haue wherewith, and they doe eat perpetually, yea so farre as to rise in the night to banquet. But seeing that in these our parts many are as vicious as they, I will not be to rigorous a Censurer of them. As for the other actions there is no more to be reprooued in them then in vs: yea I will say lesse, in that which concerneth the *Venerian* action, whereto they are little addicted: not comprehending heere, for all that, them of *Florida*, and in hotter countries, of whom wee haue spoken heeretofore.

Heeretofore  
chap. 13.

Liberality.

Liberalitie is a vertue as worthy praise, as avarice and prodigalitie, her opposites are blame worthy. It consisteth in giuing and receauing, but rather in giuing in time and place, and according to occasion, without excesse. This vertue is proper and befitting great personages, which be as it were Stewards of the goods of the earth, which God hath put into their hands, for to vse them liberally, that is to say to distribute them to him that hath none, not being excessiue in needlesse expences, nor too sparing

sparing where magnificencie is to bee shewed.

Our Sauages are praise worthy in the exercise of this vertue, according to their pouerty. For as we haue said before, when they visit one another, they giue mutuall presents one to the other. And when some French *Sagamos* commeth to them, they doe the like with him, casting at his feete some bundle of Beuers, or other fures, which be all their riches: And so did they to *Monsieur de Pontreincourt*, but he tooke them not to his owne proper vse, but rather put them into *Monsieur de Monts* his storehouse, because he would not goe against the priuiledge giuen vnto him. This custome of the said Sauages proceedeth but from a liberall minde, and which hath some generositie. And although they bee very glad when the like is done vnto them, yet so it falleth out, that they begin the venture, and put themselues in hazard to loose their merchandise. And who is hee amongst vs that doth more than they, that is to say, which giueth but with intention to receaue? the Poet saith,

*Nemo suas gratis perdere vellet opes.*

There is no body that giueth, intending to loose. If a great personage giueth to a meane man, that is for to draw some seruice from him. Euen that which is giuen to the poore, is to receiue the hundred fold; according to the promise of the Gospel. And for to shew the galantnesse of our said Sauages: they doe not willingly cheapen, and do content themselues with that which is giuen them honestly with a willing minde, disdaining and blaming the fashions of our petie merchants, which bee an houre a cheapning for to buy a Beuer skinne: as I saw being at the riuer Saint Iohn, whereof I haue spoken heeretofore, that they called a yong merchant of Saint *Maloes Mercatoria*, which is a word of reproch among them, borrowed of the Baskes, signifying as it were, a hagling fellow. Finally, they haue nothing in them but franknesse and liberalitie in their exchanging. And seeing the base maners

Heeretofore  
1. booke  
chap. 17.

of some of our men, they demanded sometimes, what they came to seeke for in their countrey, saying, that they came not into ours: and seeing that wee are richer than they, we should giue them liberally that which we haue,

Out of this vertue, there groweth in them a magnificence which cannot appeare, and remaineth hidden, but for all that they are prouoked by it, doing all they can for to welcome their friends. And *Memberton* was very desirous that so much honour should be done vnto him as to shoot off our Canons when he did arriue, because he saw that the same was done to the French Captaines in such a case, saying that it was due vnto him, seeing that he was a *Sagamos*.

Page 224.

The pietie of  
the Sauiages  
towards their  
parents.

Heere Hospitality may be mentioned, but hauing spoken thereof heeretofore, I will refer the Reader to the chapter of the *Tabagi*, where I giue them the praise attributed to the *Gaullois* and ancient French-men for this respect. True it is that in some places there be some which be friends for the time, and take their aduantage in necessitie, as hath beene noted in *Laudonniere* his voyage. But we cannot accuse them in that, least we also accuse our selues, which doe the like. One thing I will say that belongeth to fatherly *Pietie*, that the children are not so cursed as to dispise their parents in old age, but doe provide for them with venison, as the *Storkes* doe towards them that haue ingendred them. A thing which is the shame of many Christians, who being weary of their Parents long life, doe oftentimes strip them before they goe to bed, and so doe leaue them naked.

They vse also humanity and mercy towards their enemies wiues and litle children, whose liues they spare, but they remaine their prisoners for to serue them, according to the ancient right of seruitude, brought in amongst all the nations of the other world, against the naturall liberty. But as for the men of defence they spare none, but kill as many of them as they can catch.

As for iustice, they haue not any Law neither deuine nor humane, but that which Nature teacheth them, that one must not offend another. So haue they quarels very seldome. And if any such thing doe chance to happen, the *Sagamos* quieteth all, and doth iustice to him that is offended, giuing some bastanadoes to the wrong doer, or condemning him to make some presents to the other, for to pacifie him, which is some forme of dominion. If it be one of their prisoners that hath offended, he is in danger to goe to the pot. For after he is killed no body will reuenge his death. The same consideration is in these parts of the world. There is no account made of a mans life that hath no support.

One day there was an *Armouchiquois* woman prisoner, who had caused a country-man of hers, prisoner, to escape away: & to the end to trauel and passe on the way she had stollen from *Membersous* cabin a tinder-box (for without that they can doe nothing) and a hatchet. Which being come to the knowledge of the Sauages, they would not proceed on the execution thereof neere vnto vs, but they went to Cabin themselues fower or fiue leagues from Port Royall, where she was killed. And because she was a woman, our Sauages wiues and daughters did execute her. *Kinibeck-coech* a yong maide of eightene yeares of age, faire and well spotted with colours, gaue her the first stroake in the throat, which was with a knife: Another maide of the same age, handsome enough, called *Metembroech*, followed on, and the daughter of *Membersous* which we cailed *Membersous-ech-coech* made an end. We reprooued them sharply for this cruelty, whereof they were all ashamed, and durst not shew themselues any more. This is their forme of Iustice.

Another time a man and a women, prisoners, went cleane away, without tinder-box or any prouision of meat. Which was hard to be performed, as well for the great distance of way, which was aboue 300. leagues by land because

Execution of  
iustice made  
by the Saua-  
ges.



cause it behooved them to goe secretly, and to take heed from meeting with any Sauages. Neuerthelesse those poore soules pulled off the barke of certaine trees, and made a little boat, with the barke of them, wherein they crossed the *Bay Françoise*, and got to the other shoare ouer against Port Royall, shortning their way aboue one hundred and fifty leagues: and got home into their Country of the *Arrouchiquois*.

Wherein the  
Sauages are  
diligent and  
slothfull.

I haue said in some place that they are not laborious, but in hunting and fishing, louing also the labour taken by sea: sloathfull at all other painefull exercise, as in the manuring of the ground, and in our mechanicall trades: also to grinde Corne for their owne vse. For sometimes they will rather seeth it in graines, then to grinde it by handy strength. Yet notwithstanding they will not be vnprofitable. For there will be some meanes to employ them, to that whereunto they be inclined by nature: without forcing it, as heeretofore did the *Lacedemonians* to the yongue men of their Common-wealth. As for the children, hauing yet taken no byas, it will be easier to keepe them at home and to employ them in those things that shall be thought fit. Howsoeuer it be, hunting is no bad thing, nor fishing neither. Let vs see then how they behaue themselves therein.

## CHAP. XXL

### *Of their Hunting.*

Genf. i. v. 29. **G**OD, before sin, gaue for food vnto man euery hearbe bearing seed vpon all the earth, and euery tree wherein is the fruit of a tree bearing seed: without making mention of the spilling of the bloud of beasts: And notwithstanding after the banishment from the Garden of pleasure, the labour ordained for the punishment of the said sinne required a stronger and more substantiall food then the former: so man full of carnality accustomed himselfe

himselfe to feed vpon flesh, and did tame certaine number of beasts for to serue him to that effect: though some would say that before the flood no flesh was eaten: for in vaine had *Abel* been a shepheard, and *Iabel* father of shephards. But after the flood, God renewing his couenant with man: *The feare and dread of you* (saith the Lord) *shall be vpon euery beast of the Earth, and vpon euery fowle of the Heauen, with all that moueth on the earth, and vpon all the fishes of the Sea: they are giuen into your hands: all that moueth hauing life shall be vnto you for meat.* Vpon this priuiledge is formed the right of hunting: the noblest right of all rights that be in the vse of man, seeing that God is the Authour of it. And therefore no maruell if kings and their Nobilitie haue referued it vnto them, by a wel concluding reason, that if they command vnto men with farre better reason may they command vnto beasts. And if they haue the administration of Iustice to Iudge malefactors, to overcome Rebels, and to bring to humane societie wild and Sauage men: with farre better reason shall they haue it for to doe the same towards the creatures of the aire, of the Forrests, and of the fields. As for them of the sea wee will speake of them in another place. And seeing that kings haue beene in the beginning chosen by the people for to keep & defend them from their enemies, whilst that they are at their necessary works, and to make warre as much as need is for the reparation of iniury, and recouery of that which hath been wrongfully vsurped, or taken away: it is very reasonable and decent that as well them as the nobility that doe assist and serue them in those things, haue the exercise of hunting, which is an Image of warre, to the end to rowse vp the mind and to be alwaies nimble, ready to take horse, for to goe to encounter with the enemy, to ly in ambush, to assaile him, to chase him, to trample him vnder feete. There is another and first aime in hunting, it is the food of Man, whereunto it is destinated, as is knowen by the place of Scripture afore allead-

Genes. 4. vers 4. 20.

Genes. 9. Vers. 2. 3.

The beginning of the right of hunting.

Why it appertaineth to kings and to their nobility.

For what end kings haue beene chosen.

The first end of hunting.

Interpretation.

ged: yea, I say, so destinated that in the holy language it is but one and the selfe same word ציד for to signifie hunting (or venison) & meat: As amonga hundred places this of the one hundred thirtie two Psalme. Where our God hauing chosen *Sion* for his habitation and perpetuall rest, promiset h vnto her that he will abundantly blesse her victuals, and will satisfie her poore with bread. Vpon which place *Saint Hierome* tearmeth *Venison*, that which the other translators doe call *Victuals*, better to the purpose then *Widow* in the common translation.

Hunting then hauing beene granted vnto man by a heauenly priuledge, the Sauages throughout all the West Indies doe exercise themselues therein without distinction of persons, not hauing that faire order established in these parts, whereby some are borne for the gouernment of the people and the defence of the Country, others for the exercising of arts and the tillage of the ground, in such sort, that by this faire *æconomie* euery one liueth in safety.

The winter dwelling.

This hunting is made amongst them chiefly in the winter. For all the Spring and Sommer time, and part of Autumne, hauing fish abundantly for them and their friends, without taking any paines, they doe not much seeke for other food. But in winter when that fish goeth away, feeling the cold, they forsake the sea shoars and cabinne themselues within the woods, where they know to haue any pray: which is done as farre as the Countries that approach neer to the *Tropique of Cancer*. In the countries where Beuers are, as throughout all the great Riuer of *Canada*, and vpon the coasts of the *Ocean*, as farre as the Country of the *Armonchiquois*, they doe winter vpon the shoars of lakes, for the fishing of the said Beuers, whereof wee will speake in due place: but first let vs speake of the *Ellan*, which they call *Aptapton*, and our *Basques Orignac*.

The description of the Ellan or Stag.

It is the tallest creature that is, next vnto the *Dromadaire*

*daire* and *Camell*, for it is higher then the horse. His haire be commonly of gray colour, and sometimes of dunne or fallow, almost as long as the fingers of ones hand. His head is very long and hath almost an infinite order of teeth. He beareth his hornes double like the Stagge, but as broad as a plancke, and three foot long, garnished with sprigges growing vponward all along vpon one side. His feet be forked as the Stagges but much more flat. His flesh is short and very delicate. He feedeth in the medowes, and liueth also of the tender cropes of trees. It is the plentifullest thing that the Sauages haue, next to fish.

Wee may say then that the best and fittest time for the said Sauages, to all hunting by land is the Winter season, when that the Forrests be hoarie, and the snow deepe, and especially if vpon the snow there comes a hard frost which doth harden it. Then being well clothed with a cloake furred with Beuers, and sleeuces on the armes tyed together with a latch: Item stockens made with the leather of *El-lans* like to Buffe (which they tie at their girdles) and shooes on their feet of the same leather, very finely made, they goe with their Bow in hand, and the Quiuer on their backs, that way that their *Aboutmoin* hath shewed them (for we haue said heeretofore that they consult with the *Oracle* when they are a hungry) or some where else, where they thinke they shal not loose their time and labour. They haue dogges or hounds, almost like to foxes in forme and bignesse, and of haire of all colours, which follow them, and although they doe not spend nor call neuertheless they can very well finde the haunt of the beast which they seeke for, which being found they pursue her couragiously, and they neuer giue her ouer vntill they haue her downe: And for to follow the game more easily, they tie rackets (thrise as great as oures) vnder their feet, with the which they runne swiftly vpon that hard snow without sincking. If it be not hard enough, yet they giue not ouer hunting, but will follow the chase three daies together, if

Fit time to hunt.

Rackets at their feet.

Their con-  
stancy in hun-  
ting.

The Sauages  
doe carry  
Tinder-box  
in the woods.

Faire inuenti-  
on of a Sa-  
uage for the  
kitchin.

The womans  
dutie.

neede be. Finally, hauing wounded her to death they so tire her with their hounds, that she is forced to fall downe. Then they cut and rip her belly, giue releefe to the hunters, and take their share of it. One must not thinke that they eat the flesh raw, as some doe imagine, and as *James Quartier* himselfe doth write, for they carry alwaies, going through the woods, a Tinder-boxe before their breasts, for to make fire when hunting is done, where the night doth force them to tarrie.

Wee went once to the spoile of an *Ellan* left dead vpon the brinck of a great brooke about two leagues and an halfe within the lands: where we passed the night, hauing taken the snowes for to lodge vs. Wee made there a very dainty feaste with this venison, more tender then any other kind of flesh: and after the rost wee had sodden meat, and broth abundantly, made ready at an instant by a Sauage, who did frame with his hatchet a tubbe or trough of the body of a tree, in which he boiled his flesh. A thing which I haue admired, and hauing propounded it to many, who thought themselues to haue good wits, could not finde out the inuention of, which notwithstanding is but brieft, which is, to put stones made red hot in the fire in the said trough, and to renew them vntill the meat be sodde. *Ioseph Accosta* reciteth that the Sauages of *Perou* doe the same.

The chiefe hunter being returned to the cabines telleth the women what hee hath done, and that in such a place which he nameth to them, they shall finde the venison. It is the said womens dutie to goe and flae the *Ellan*, the Deare, Stagge, Beare, or other game, and to bring it home. Then they make good cheere as long as there is any prouision: And he that hath hunted, is he that hath the lesser share: for their custome is, that hee must serue the others, and eateth none of his owne purchase. As long as the winter continueth, they lacke none of it: and there hath beene some one Sauage that in a hard season hath  
killed

killed fifty of them for his part, as I haue sometimes heard.

As for the hunting of the Beuer, it is also in Winter that chiefly they vse it, for two reasons, one of them we haue alleaged heeretofore, the other because that after Winter this beast sheddeth her haire, & hath no furre in Summer. Besides that when in such a season they would seeke out for Beuers, hardly should they meet with any, because this creature is *Amphibie*, that is to say, earthly and waterish, and more waterish then otherwise: And hauing no inuention to take her in the water, they might be in danger to loose their paines. Notwithstanding if by chance they meet any in Summer time, Spring time, or Autumne, they faile not to eat it.

Behold then how they catch them in Winter time, and with most profit. The Beuer is a beast very neere as bigge as a shorne sheepe, the young ones be lesser, the colour of his haire is of a chest-nut colour. His feet be short, the forefeet haue claws, and the hinder feet with fins, like geese; the taile is as it were, skailed, almost of the forme of a solefish, notwithstanding the skaile goeth not off. It is the best and delicatest part of the beast. As for the head it is short and almost round, hauing two ranckes of iawes at the sides, and before fower great sharpe teeth one by another, two aboue and two beneath. With these teeth he cutteth small trees, and powies in sundry peeces, wherewith he buildeth his house. That which I say is an admirable and incredible thing. This creature lodgeth himselfe vpon the brinckes of lakes, and there he first maketh his couch with straw or other things fit to lie vpon, as well for him as for his female: raiseth a vault with his wood, cut and prepared, which he couereth with turffe, in such sort that no winde enters therein, for as much as all is couered and shut vp, except one hole which leadeth vnder the water, and by that way he goeth foorth to walke where he listeth. And because the waters of the lakes doe sometimes rise, he ma-

Why the Beuer is not taken in Summer.

Amphibie.

The description and fishing of the Beuer.

The Beuers cabin or denne.

keth a chamber about the lower dwelling, for to retire himselfe in, if in case any inundation should happen: In such sort that some Beuers cabin is about eight foot high, all made with wood, piramide wise, and dawbed with mudde. Moreouer it is held that being *amphibie*, as we haue said, he must alwaies participate with water, and that his taile be dipped in it: which is the cause why he lodgeth himselfe so neere a lake. But being suttle he contenteth not himselfe with that which we haue said, but hath moreouer an issue into another place out of the lake, without any cabin, by which way he goeth on the land and beguileth the hunter. But our Sauages being aware of it, take order for the same, and stop this passage.

How the Beuer is taken.

When they will, then, take the Beuer, they pierce through the ice of the frozen lake, about his cabin, then one of the Sauages thrusteth his arme into the hole, tarying the coming of the said Beuer, whilest that another goeth vpon this ice, striking with a staffe vpon it for to astonish him, and make him to returne into his lodging. Then one must be nimble for to seaze on his necke, for if one catch him by any part where hee may bite, hee will bite very sore. The flesh thereof is very good, almost as if it were mutton.

And as euery Nation hath commonly something peculiar that it bringeth foorth, which is not so common with others; So auiently the Realme of *Pontus* had the fame for the producing of Beuers, as I learne it out of *Virgil*, where he saiech.

—— *Viro saque Pontus Castorea.*

*Sidon. Apol. in  
carm 5.*

And after him of *Sidonis de Polignac* Bishop of *Auvergne* in these verses,

—— *Fert Indus ebur, Chaldaeus amomum,  
Assirius gemmas, Seruelleria, thura Sabens,  
Attis mel, Phœnix palmas, Lacedæmon olivum,  
Argos equos, Epirus equas, pecuaria Gallus,  
Arma Calybs, frumentalibes, Campanus iacchum,*

*Aurum*

*Aurum Lydus, Arabs guttam, Panchaia myrrham,  
Pontus castorea, blattam Tyrus, ara Corinthus, &c.*

But at this day the land of *Canada* beareth the bell away for that respect, although that some of them are brought out of *Moscovy*, but they are not so good as ours.

Our Sauages haue also made vs to eat of Beuers flesh, which was very good and tender, and like to beefe: Item, of Leopards, resembling much the wilde cat; and of a beast which they call *Nibathes*, which hath his pawes almost like to the apes pawes, by meanes whereof he climeth easily vpon the trees, yea he laieth his young ones there. He is of graiesh haire, and his head like to a foxes. But he is so fat that it is almost incredible. Hauing described the principall game, I will not stand to speake of woolues (for they haue some, and yet eat none of them) nor of Lucerns, Otters, Conies, and others which I haue mentioned in my farwell to *New France*, whereto I referre the reader, and to the recitall of Captaine *James Cartier*.

Neuerthelesse it is good to shew heere that our French cattell profiteeth very well in those parts. We had hogges which haue multiplied very much. And although they had a stigh, they did lie a broad, euen in the snow and during the frost. We had but one weather, which prooued very well, although he was not taken in by night, but was in the middest of our yard in Winter time. *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* made him twice to be shorne, and the woll of the second yeare hath beene esteemed in France better by two sous in the pound, than that of the first. Wee had no other houshold-cattell, but hennes and pigions, which failed not to yeelde the accustomed tribute, and to multiply abundantly. The said *Monsieur de Poutrincourt* tooke comming out of the shell small *Outards* which hee did very will breed, and gaue them to the King at his returne. When the country is once stored with those creatures and others, they will encrease so much that

*Nibathes.*

Hogges;

A Weather.

Five Soufe  
make six  
pence Eng-  
lish.  
Outards a  
kinde of wild  
geese.

one

to retire  
ppen: In  
oot hight,  
bed with  
as we haue  
nd that his  
ne lodgeth  
enteth not  
moreouer  
out any ca-  
quileth the  
e order for

ey pierce  
abin, then  
le, tarying  
ther goeth  
to astonish  
Then one  
one catch  
bite very  
if it were

g peculiar  
on with o-  
e fame for  
gil, where

*Auvergne*

*chum,  
Aurum*



Marvellous  
multiplicati-  
on of beasts.

one shall not know what to doe with them, like as in *Perou*, where are at this day, and long since, such quantity of Oxen, kine, swine, horses and dogges, that they haue no more owners, but doe appertaine to the first that doe kill them. Being killed they carry away the hides to trafficke withall, and the carkases are left there: which I haue many times heard of them that haue beene there, besides the witnessing of *Ioseph Acosta*.

The beafts of  
*Florida* and  
*Virginia*.

Comming into the Country of the *Armouchiquois*, and going farther towards *Virginia* and *Florida*, they haue no more *Ellans* nor *Beuers*, but onely *Stagges*, *Hindes*, *Roe-buckes*, *Deeres*, *Beares*, *Leopards*, *Lucernes*, *Onces*, *woolues*, *wilde-dogges*, *Hares* and *Conies*, with whose skinnes they couer their bodies, making *Chamois* of them of the biggest beasts. But as the heat is there greater then in the Countries more Northernly, so they do not vse fures, but plucke out the haire from their skinnes, and very often for all garment they haue but halfe bretches, or a small cushion made with their mattes, which they weare on that side that the winde doth blow.

Lions.

But they haue in *Florida* *Crocodils* also, which doe as-  
saile them oftentimes in swimming. They kill some of them  
sometimes, and eat them. The flesh whereof is very faire  
and white, but it smelleth of muske. They haue also a cer-  
taine kinde of *Lions* which little differ from them of  
*Africa*.

Brasilians.

*Tapirousson*.

As for the *Brasilians* they are so far from *New France*,  
that being as it were, in another world, their beasts are quit  
differing from those that we haue named, as the *Tapirous-  
son*, which if one desireth to see, he must imagine a beast  
halfe an *Ass* and halfe a *Cow*, sauing that her taile is very  
short. His haire draw towards redde, no hornes, eares  
hanging, and an asses foot. The flesh therof is like to beefe.

Stagges.

They haue a certaine kinde of small *Stagges* and *hindes*,  
which they call *Seon-assois*, whose haire be as long as  
*Goates* haire.

But

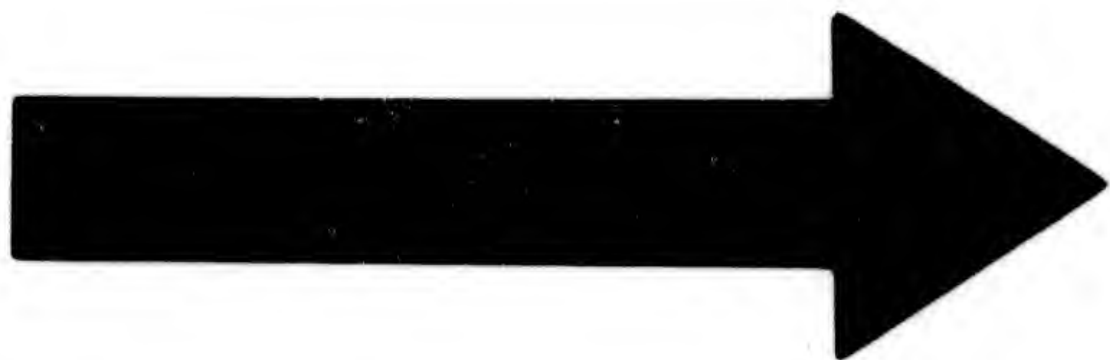
But they are persecuted with an euill beast which they call *Ianou-are*, almost as tall and swift as a Gray-hound, much like to the *Once*. Shee is cruell, and doth not spare them if she can catch them. They take sometimes some of them in snares, and do kill them with long torments. As for their Crocodils they be not dangerous.

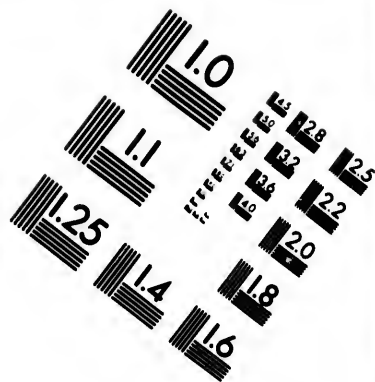
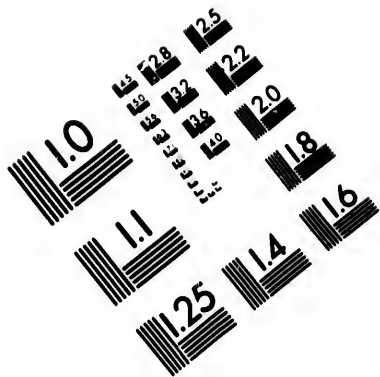
Their wilde-boares are very leane and vnleshie, and they haue a fearefull grunting and crie. But there is in them a strange deformity, which is, that they haue a hole vpon the backe, through which they blow and breath. Those three be the biggest beasts of Brasill. As for small ones they haue seuen or eight sorts of them, by the taking whereof they liue, and also of mans flesh: and are better and more prouident husbands then ours. For one cannot find them vnprouided, but rather hauing alwaies vpon the *Boucan* (that is to say a wooden grate somewhat high built vpon foure forks) some venison or fish, or mans flesh: and with that they liue merrily and without care.

Wilde-boares.

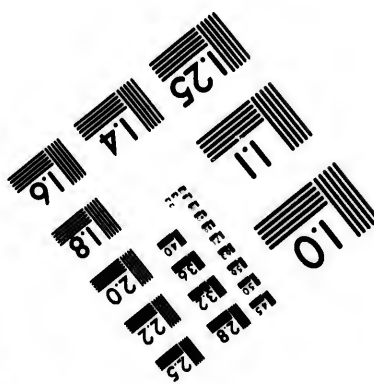
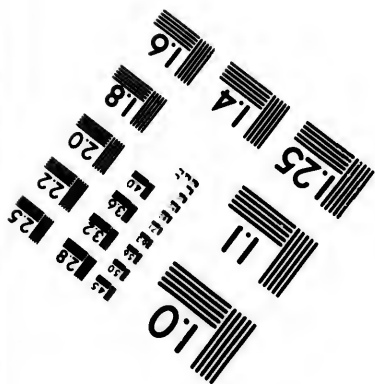
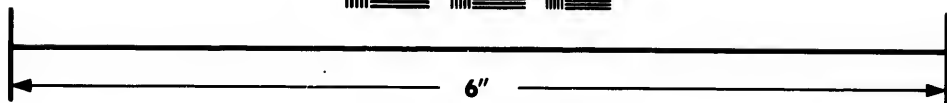
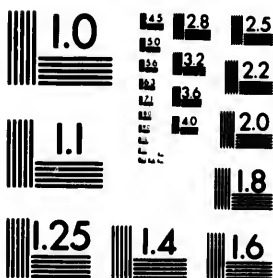
Now leauing there those *Anthropophages* Brasilians, let vs returne to our New France, where the Men there are more humane, and liue but with that which God hath giuen to Man, not deuouring their like. Also wee must say of them that they are truly noble, not hauing any action but is generose, whether we consider their hunting, or their employment in the warrs, or that one search out their domesticall actions, wherein the women doe exercise themselues, in that which is proper vnto them, and the men in that which belongeth to armes, and other things befitting them, such as we haue said, or will speake of in due place. But heere one must consider that the most parte of the world haue liued so from the beginning, and by degrees men haue beene ciuilized, when that they haue assembled themselues, and haue formed common-wealths for to liue vnder certaine lawes, rule and policie.

*Anthropophages* men eaters. The Sauages of New France be truly noble.





**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14590  
(716) 872-4503

18  
20  
22  
25

10  
11

## C H A P. XXII.

## Of Hawking.

Prou. 1. 17.

Plin. second  
Epist. 6. ofthe 1. booke.  
Psal. 8. 9.

A sport  
they haue in  
France to  
shoote at the  
picture of a  
bird, set at a  
stake.

Seeing that wee hunt on the land let vs not ouerstray our selues, least if wee take the sea, wee lose our fowles: for the wise man saith, *that in vaine the net is spread before the eies of all that haue wings*. If hunting then be a noble exercise, wherein the very Muses themselues take delight, by reason of silence and solitarinesse, which brings foorth faire conceits in the minde: in such sort that *Diana* (saith *Pliny*) *doth not more frequent the mountaines then Minerva*. If, I say, hunting be a noble exercise, hauing is farre more noble, because it aymeth at an higher subiect, which doth participate of Heauen, seeing, that the inhabitants of the aire are called in the sacred Scripture, *Volucres celi*, the fowles of the aire. Moreouer, the exercise therof doth belong but to kings, & to the nobles, about which their brightnesse shineth, as the Sunnes brightnesse doth about the starres. And our Sauages being of a noble heart, which maketh no account but of hunting and martiall affaires, may very certainly haue right of vsage, ouer the birds that their land doth affoord them. Which they doe likewise, but with much difficulties, because they haue not (as we haue) the vse of guns. They haue enough, and too many birds of pray, as Eagles, Laynards, Faulcons, Tiercelets, Sparrow-haukes, and others, which I haue specified in my farewell to New France, but they haue neither the vse nor industrie to bring them to seruice, as the French Gentlemen: and therefore they loose much good fowle, hauing no other meanes to seeke after them, or to take them but onely with the Bowe and arrowes, with which instruments they doe like vnto them who in France shoote at the *Geay* in time of middle-lent: or creepe along the grasse, and go to assaile the *Outardes*, or wild Geese, which doe graze in  
the

the Spring time, and in Summer along the meadowes. Sometimes also they carrie themselues softly and without making any noise in their canowes and light vessels made with barkes of trees, euen to the shores where the Mallards and other water fowle are, and there strike them downe. But the greatest abundance they haue, come from certaine Ilands, where such quantitie of them are, to wit, of Mallards, Margaux, Roquettes, Outards, or wilde Geese, Curlies, Cormorants, and others, that it is a woonderfull thing, yea that which captaine *James Quartier* reciteth, will seeme to some altogether vncredible. When we were vpon our returne into France, being yet beyond *Campseau*, wee passed by some of those Ilands, where in the space of a quarter of an houre, we laded our barke with them, wee had no need but to strike downe with staues, and not to go about to gather vntill one were wearie a striking. If any man doth aske why they flie not away, one must consider that they be birds onely of two three, or fower moneths old, which haue beene there hatched in the spring time, and haue not yet wings great enough to take flight, though they be well fleshie and in good plight. As for the dwelling of Port Royall we had many of our men that furnished vs with them, and particularie one of *Monsieur de Monts* his houshold seruants, called *François Addeni*, whose name I insert heere to the end he be had in memorie, beccause he alwaies prouided for vs abundantly with it. During the winter he made vs to liue onely of Mallards, Cranes, Hernes, Woodcocks, Partridges, Blackbirds, & some other kinds of that country birds. But in the spring time it was a sport to see the gray Geese and the bigge Outardes (a kinde of wilde Geese) to keepe their Empire and dominion in our meddowes: and in Autumne the white Geese, of which some did alwaies remaine for a pawne: then the sea Larks flying in great flocks vpon the shores of the waters, which also very often were pained home.

Great abundance of water fowle.

The fowle of Port Royall.

Touching the birds of pray, some of our men tooke from the nest an Eagle, from the top of a Pine-apple tree, of the monstrousest height that euer I saw any tree, which Eagle *Monsieur de Pourrin-court* did breed for to present her to the king, but she brake her ties, seeking to take her flight, and lost her selfe in the sea comming home. The Sauages of *Campseau* had six of them perched neere to their cabins, at our comming thither, which wee would not trucke for, because they had pulled off their tailes to feather their arrowes. There bee such a quantitie of them in those parts, that often they did eat our pigeons, and it did behoone vs to looke narrowly to them.

The birds that were knowen vnto vs, I haue enrowled them (as I haue said) in my farwell to New France, but I haue omitted many of them, because I knew not their names. There also may be seene the description of a little small bird, which the Sauages doe call *Niridau*, which liueth but with flowers, and she did come noising in my eares, passing inuifibly (so small is shee) when in the morning I went to take a walke in my garden. There will be seene also the discription of certaine flies, shining in the euening, in the spring time, which doe flie vp and downe the woods in such a multitude that it is woonder. For the birds of *Canada*, I also refer the Reader to the report of *Captaine Iames Quartier*.

*Niridau*, an  
admirable  
little small  
bird.  
Flies,

A wonderfull  
foule.

The *Armonchiquois* haue the same birdes, whereof there are many which are not knowen vnto vs in these parts. And particularly there is one kinde of water foule which haue their bills made like two kniues, hauing the two edges one vpon another: and that which is worth the wondering at, the vppermost part of the said bill is shorter by the one halfe then the lower-most: in such wise that it is hard to thinke how this bird taketh her food. But in the Spring time the cockes and hennes, which we call *Indien* or *Turkie* cockes doe flie thether as wandring birdes, and soiorne there without passing further hetherward. They come from

Turkie-  
cockes.



from the parts of *Virginia* and *Florida*. There be yet, besides these, Partridges, Parrats, Pigeons, Stocke-doues, Turtle-doues, Blacke-birds, Crows, Tiercelets, Faulcons, Laniers, Hernes, Cranes, Storckes, Wilde-geese, Mallards, Cormorans, white *Agrets*, red, blacke, and gray ones, and infinite sorts of foule.

Come from *Virginia*.  
Birds and foules of *Virginia* and *Florida*.

As for the *Brasilians* they also haue store of *Turkie*-cockes and hennes, which they name *Arignan-ousson*, of whom they make no account, nor of their egges: In such maner that the said *Turkie*-hennes breede their young ones as they can, without so much a doe as in these parts. They haue also duckes but because they goe heauily they eat none of them, saying that they would hinder them from running swiftly. Item a kinde of *Pheasants* which they call *Iacous*: Other foules which they name *Mouton* as bigge as peacocks: some kindes of Partridges as bigge as Geese, called *Mocacoia*: Parrats of sundry sorts, and many other kindes altogether vnlike vnto ours.

CHAP. XXIII.

*Of their Fishing.*

**O***ppian*, in the booke that he hath made vpon this subiect, saith, that in the hunting of beasts and of birdes, besides the facility, there is more contentment and delight then in fishing, because that a man hath many retreats, one may get himselfe into the shadow, one may meet with brookes to quench his thirst, one may lie downe on the grasse, one may take his repast vnder some shelter. As for birdes one may take them in the nest and with bird-lime, yea of themselues very often they fall into the nets. But poore fisher-men cast their baite vpon an vncertainty; yea, double vncertaintie, as well because they know not what aduventure shall happen vnto them, as because they are vpon an vnconstant and vntameable Element, whose very sight onely is fearefull: They are alwaies wandering from place to place, subiects

Comparison betweene hunting, hauking, and fishing.

An Emperour  
delighting in  
fishing.

jects to tempests, and beaten with stormes and winds. But yet in the end he concludeth that they are not destitute of all pleasure, but rather that they haue enough, when they are in a Shippe well built, well tight, well closed, and swift in sailing. Then cutting the waues they goe to sea, where the great skulls of deuouring fishes are, and casting into the sea a line well twisted, the weight of it is no sooner in the bottome, but that as soone the baite is snatched vp, and suddenly the fish is drawn vp with great pleasure. And in this exercise did *Marc Antonin*, the Sonne of the Emperour *Seuerus* delight himselfe very much: notwithstanding *Platoes* reason, who forming his common-wealth hath forbidden his Citizens the exercise of fishing, as vnnoble, and iliberall, and fosterer of idlenesse. Wherein he did grossely *equivocate*, specially when he chargeth fisher-men with idlenesse. Which is so euident that I will not vouchsafe to refute him. But I maruel not of that which he saith of fishing, seeing that with the same he also reiecteth hauking, vpon the same reasons. *Plutarch* saith that it is more laudable to take either a Hart, a Roebuck, or a Hare, then to buy them: but he wadeth not so farre as the other. Howsoeuer it be, the Church, which is the first order in humane society, whose Priesthood is called Royall by the great Apostle Saint Peter, hath permitted fishing to church-men, and forbidden hunting and hauking. And indeed, to say that which is most probable, the food of fish is the best and soundest of all, for as much (as Aristotle saith) that it is not subiect to any sicknesse: from whence commeth the common prouerb: *Sounder then a fish*. So that in the ancient *hieroglyphickes* a fish is the simbole of health. Which notwithstanding I would meane, eaten whilest it is new. for otherwise (as *Plautus* saith) *Piscis nisi recens nequam est*, it is nothing woorth.

Aristotle 8. of  
the History  
of beasts. c. 9.

Now our Sauages doe eat it new enough, as long as it lasteth: which I belecue to bee one of the best Instruments

ments of their health and long life. When winter com-  
meth, all fishes are astonished, and shunne the stormes  
and tempests, euery one where he may: some doe hide  
themselves in the sand of the sea, others vnder the Rocks,  
others doe seeke a milder country where they may be bet-  
ter at rest. But as soone as the mildnesse of the Spring  
time doth returne, and the Sea doth calme it selfe, as af-  
ter a long siege of a Towne, Truce being made, the peo-  
ple being before a prisoner, issueth forth by troupes to  
goe and take the aire of the fields and to reioice them-  
selves: So those Citizens of the Sea, after the gusts and  
furious stormes be past, they come to enlarge themselves  
through the salted fields, they skippe, they trample,  
they make loue, they approach to the shoare and come  
to seeke the refreshing of fresh water. And then our said  
Sauages that know the Rendez-vous of euery one, and  
the time of their returne, goe to waite for them in good  
deuotion to bidde them welcome. The Smelt is the first  
fish of all that present himselfe in the Spring. And to the  
end wee goe no further to seeke out examples then at our  
Port Royall, there be certaine brooks where such skulls  
of these Smelts doe come, that for the space of fise or six  
weeks one might take of them sufficient to feed a whole  
Citie. There be other brooks, where after the Smelt  
commeth the Herring, with like multitude, as we haue al-  
ready marked else where. Item the Pilchers doe come in  
their season, in such aboundance that sometimes willing  
to haue some thing more for our supper then ordinary, in  
lesse then the space of an houre, wee had taken enough  
of them to serue vs for three daies. The Dolphins, Stur-  
geons and Salmons doe get to the head of the Riuer in the  
said Port Royall, where such quantitie of them are, that  
they carried away the nets which we had laid for them,  
by reason of the multitude of them that we saw there. In  
all places fish aboundeth there in like maner, as wee our  
selves haue seene. The Sauages doe make a hurdle, or  
weare,

Fishes doe  
retire them-  
selves in  
Winter.

The fishes  
rendez-vous.

Smelts  
in great  
quantity.

Herrings.

Pilchers.

Dolphins,  
Sturgions,  
Salmons.

Fishing of the  
Sauages.

d winds.  
not desti-  
enough,  
he, well  
ues they  
fishes are,  
weight of  
the baite  
n vp with  
*Antonin,*  
selfe very  
forming  
ns the ex-  
d fosterer  
specially  
hich is so  
But I mar-  
that with  
e reasons.  
er a Hart,  
e waderth  
e Church,  
se Priest-  
int Peter,  
forbidden  
t which is  
oundest of  
not subiect  
e common  
ient *hiero-*  
a notwith-  
ew. for o-  
*uam est*, it  
as long as  
est Instru-  
ments

*Nova Francia.*

weare, that crosseth the brooke, which they hold almost  
vp straight, propped against wooden barres, archwise, &  
leauē there a space for the fishes to passe, which space  
they stop when the tide doth retire, and all the fish is found  
staied in such a multitude that they suffer it to be lost. And  
as for the Dolphins, Sturgions and salmons, they take them  
after that maner, or doe strike them with harping irons, so  
that these people are happie. For there is nothing in the  
world so good as these fresh meats. And I find by my  
reckening that *Pythagoras* was very ignorant, forbidding  
in his faire goulden sentences the vse of fishes without di-  
stinction. One may excuse him, in that fish being dumbe  
hath some conformity with his feet, wherein dumbnesse  
(or silence) was much commended. It is also said that he  
did it because that fish is nourished in an Element enemy  
to mankinde. Item that it is a great sinne to kill and to eat  
a creature that doth not hurt vs. Item that it is a delicious  
& luxurious meat, not of necessity (as indeed in the *Hiero-  
glyphiques* of *Orus Apollo*, fish is put for a marke of delica-  
cie and voluptuousnesse) Item that he (the said *Pythagoras*)  
did eat but meats that might be offered to the gods: which  
is not done with fishes: and other such toies recited by  
*Plutarch* in his *Convivial* questions. But all those supersti-  
ons be foolish: and I would faine demand of such a man  
if being in *Canada* he had rather die for hunger then to eat  
fish. So many anciently to follow their owne fancies, and  
to say these be we, haue forbidden their followers the vse  
of meats that God hath giuen to man, and sometimes laied  
yoakes vpon men that they themselues would not beare.  
Now whatsoever the Philosophy of *Pythagoras* is, I am  
none of his. I finde better the rule of our good religious  
men, which please themselues in eating of flesh, which I  
liked well in New France, neither am I yet displeased  
when I meet with such fare. If this Philosopher did liue  
with *Ambrosia* and of the food of the Gods, and not of  
fishes, of which none are sacrificed vnto them. Our said  
good.

good religious, as the Cordeliers, or Franciscans of Saint Maloes, and others of the maritime townes, together with the Priests, may say that in eating sometimes fish, they eat of the meat consecrated to God. For when the New found land men doe meet with some woonderfull faire Codde, they make of it a *Sanctorum*, (so doe they call it) and doe vow and consecrate it to Saint Frances, Saint Nicholas, Saint Leonard and others, head and all, whereas in their fishing they cast the heads into the sea.

I should be forced to make a whole booke if I would discourse of all the fishes that are comon to the *Brasilians*, *Floridians*, *Arrouchiquois*, *Canadians*, & *Souriquois*. But I will restrain my selfe to two or three, having first told that in Port Royall there is great beds of Muscles, wherewith we did fill our Shallops, when that sometimes wee went into those parts. There be also Scallops twise as bigge as Oysters in quantitie. Item Cockles, which haue neuer failed vs: As also there is *Chatagnes de mer*, sea Chestnuts, the most delicious fish that is possible to bee: Item Crabbes and Lobstarts: those be the shell fishes. But one must take the pleasure to fetch them, and are not all in one place. Now the said Port being eight leagues compasse, there is (by the abovesaid Philosophers leaue) good sport to row in it for so pleasant a fishing.

And seeing wee are in the Countrie where the Coddies are taken, I will not yet leaue off worke, vntill I haue spoken something thereof. For so many people and in so great number goe to fetch them out of all the parts of Europe euery yeere, that I know not from whence such a swarme may come. The Coddies that bee brought into these parts are either drie or wet: The fishing of the wet fish is on the banke in the open sea, on this side New found land, as may be noted by my *Geographicall* mappe. Fifteene or twentie (more or lesse) mariners haue euery one a lyne (it is a corde) of fortie or fiftie fathams long, at the end whereof is a hooke baited, and a lead of three pounds

The French men that goe there a fishing. *Sanctorum.*

Muscles:

Scalloppes.

Cockles.  
Sea Chestnuts.

Crabbes.  
Lobstarts.  
A Port of eight leagues compasse.

The fishing of Codde.

Banc: See heeretofore in the 1. book chap. 12.

waight to bring it to the bottome : with this implement they fish their Coddes, which are so greedie, that no sooner let downe, but as soone caught, where good fishing is. The fish being drawn a shippe-board, there are boords in forme of narrow tables along the ship where the fish is dressed. There is one that cutteth off their heads and casteth them commonly in the sea : Another cutteth their bellies and garbelleth them, and sendeth backe to his fellow the biggest part of the backe-bone which hee cutteth away. That done, they are put into the salting tubbe for fower and twentie houres : then they are laid vp : And in this sort doe they worke continually ( without respecting the Sunday, which is the Lords day) for the space of almost three moneths, their sailes downe, vntill the lading be fully made. And because the poore mariners doe endure there some cold among the fogges, specially them that be most hastie, which begin their voiage in Februaire : from thence commeth the saying, that it is cold in *Canada*.

Drying of the  
Codde.

As for the drie Codde one must goe a land. There is in New-found-land and in Bacaillos great number of Ports, where Ships lie at Ancker for three months. At the very breake of day the Mariners doe goe two or three leagues off in the sea to take their lading. They haue euery one filled their shaloupe by one or two a clock in the afternoone, and do returne into the Port, where being, there is a great Scaffold built one the sea shoare, whereon the fish is cast, as one cast sheaues of corne through a barne window. There is a great table whereon the fish cast, is dressed as aboue said. After six houres they are turned, and so sundry times. Then all is gathered, and piled together; and againe at the end of eight daies put to the aire. In the end being dried it is laid vp. But there must be no fogges when it is a drying, for then it will rot : nor too much heat, for it would become red : but a temperate and windy weather.

They

They doe not fish by night because then the Cod will not bite. I durst beleue that they be of the fishes which suffer themselves to be taken sleeping, although that *Oppian* is of opinion that fishes, warring and deuouring one another, as doe the Brasilians and Canibals, are alwaies watchfull and sleepe not: excepting neuerthelesse the *Sargot* onely, which he saith putteth himselfe in certaine caues to take his sleepe. Which I might well beleue, and this fish deserueth not to be warred vpon, seeing he maketh warrs vpon none others, and liueth of weeds: by reason whereof all the Authours doe say that he chaweth his cudde like the Sheepe. But as the same *Oppian* saith that this fish onely in chawing his cudde doth render a moist voice, and in that he is deceaued, because that my selfe haue heard many times the Seales, or Sea woolues, in open sea, as I haue said elsewhere: He might also haue *acquiuocated* in this.

The same Cod leaueth biting after the month of September is passed, but retireth himselfe to the bottome of the broad sea, or else goeth to a hotter country vntill the Spring time. Whereupon I will heere aleadge what *Pliny* noteth; that fishes which haue stones on their heads doe feare winter, and retire themselves betimes, of whose number is the Cod, which hath within her braines two white stones made gundole wise and jagged about: which haue not those that be taken towards Scorland, as some learned and curious man hath tould me. This fish is wonderfully greedy, and deuoueth others, almost as bigg as himselfe yea euen lobsters, which are like bigge *Langoustes*, and I maruelt how he may digest those bigge and hard shells. Of the liuers of Cods our New-found-land-men doe make oiles, casting those liuers into barels set in the Sunne, where they melt of themselves.

There is great trafficke made in Europe of the oile of the fish of New-found-land. And for this only cause many go to the fishing of the whale, and of the *Hippopotames*,

Whether the  
Codde doth  
sleepe.

Why fishes  
sleepe not.

Heere tofore  
first booke,  
chap. 17.

*Plin. lib. 9. c. 16.*

Stones in the  
Cods head.

Fish oile or  
trainc.

which they call the beast with the great tooth or the *Morses*: of whom something we must say.

Fishing of  
the Whale.  
*Plin li. 9. ca. 3.*

*Oppian* of fish-  
ing the 5.  
booke.  
*S. Basil* 10 *Ho.*  
vpon the 6.  
daies of crea-  
tion.  
The riu-  
er where the  
Whale is  
fished.

The Almighty, willing to shew vnto *Job* how wonderfull are his works: wilt thou draw (saith he) *Leuiathan* with a booke, and his tongue with a string which thou hast cast in the water? By this *Leuiathan* is the whale meant, and all fishes of that reach, whose hugeness (and chiefly of the whale) is so great, that it is a dreadfull thing, as wee haue shewed elsewhere, speaking of one that was cast on the Coast of Brasill by the tide: And *Plinie* saith that there be some found in the Indies which haue fower acres of ground in length. This is the cause why man is to be admired (yea rather God, who hath giuen him the courage to assaile so fearefull a monster, which hath not his equall on the land.) I leaue the maner of taking of her, described by *Oppian*, and *S. Basil* for to come to our French-men, and chiefly the *Basques*, who doe goe euery yeare to the great riu-er of *Canada* for the Whale. Commonly the fishing thereof is made in the riu-er called *Lesquemin* towards *Tadoussac*. And for to doe it they goe by skowtes to make watch vpon the tops of rockes, to see if they may haue the sight of some one: and when they haue discovered any, forthwith they goe with fower shaloupes after it, and ha-ving cunningly borded her, they strike her with a harping iron to the depth of her sard, and to the quicke of the flesh. Then this creature feeling herselfe rudely pricked, with a dreadfull boisterousnesse casteth herselfe into the depth of the sea. The men in the meane while are in their shirts, which vere out the cord wheremto the harping iron is tied, which the whale carrieth away. But at the sha'oupe side that hath giuenthe blow there is a man redy with a hatchet in hand to cut the said cord, least perchance some accident should happen that it were mingled, or that the Whales force should be too violent: which notwithstanding hauing found the bottome, and being able to goe no further, she mounteth vp againe leasurly aboute the wa-  
ter:



ter : and then againe she is set vpon with glaue-staves, or pertuisanes, very sharp, so hotly that the salt-water piercing within her flesh she looseth her force, and remaineth there. Then one tieth her to a cable at whose end is an anker which is cast into the sea, then at the end of six or eight daies they goe to fetch her. when time and opportunity permits it they cut her in peeces, and in great kettles doe seeth the fat which meltech it selfe into oile, wherewith they may fill 400. Hogf-heads, sometimes more, and sometimes lesse, according to the greatnesse of the beast, and of the tongue commonly they draw five, yea six hogf-heads full of traine.

If this be admirable in vs, that haue industry, it is more admirable in the Indian people, naked and without artificiall instruments : and neuerthelesse they execute the same thing, which is recited by *Ioseph Acofta*, saying that for to take those great monsters they put themselues in a Canow or Barke, made of the barkes of trees, and bording the Whale they leape nimble on her necke, and there doe stand, as it were on horse-backe, attending the fit meanes to take her, and seeing their opportunity, the boldest of them putteth a strong and sharpe stafe, which he carrieth with him, into the gap of the Whales nostrils (I call nostrill the condit, or hole thorow which they breath) soorth with hethrust it in far with another very strong stafe, and maketh it to enter in as deepe as he can. In the meane while the Whale beateth the sea furiously, and raiseth vp mountaines of water, diuing downe with great violence, then mounteth vp againe not knowing what to do through very rage. The Indian notwithstanding remaineth still sitting fast, and for to pay her home for this trouble, fixeth yet another like stalke in the other nostrill, making it to enter in, in such wise that it stoppeth her winde quite, and taketh away her breath, and he commeth againe into his Canow, which he holderh tied at the side of the Whale with a cord, then retireth himselfe on land hauing first tied

How the Indians doe take the Whale.  
*Ioseph Acofta.*  
s. c. 15.

his cord to the Whale, which he vereth out on her ; which whilest she findeth much water, skippeth heere and there, as touched with grieffe, and in the end draweth to land, where soothwith, for the huge enormity of her body, she remaineth on the shore, not being able to mooue or stir herselfe any more. And then a great number of Indians doe cometo finde out the Conquerer for to reape the fruit of his conquest, and for that purpose they make an end of killing of her, cutting her and making morsels of her flesh (which is bad enough) which they drie and stampe to make powder of it, which they vse for meat, that serueth them a long time.

*Morses.*

*Ile de Brion.*

*Hippopotame,  
or riuier  
Horffe.*

As for the *Hippopotames*, or *Morses*, we haue said in the voiajes of *Iames Quartier* that there be great number of them in the Gulfe of *Canada*, and specially in the *Ile of Brion*, and in the seuen *Iles*, which is the riuier of *Chischédec*. It is a creature which is more like to a Cow then to a horse. But we haue named it *Hippopotamus* that is to say the horse of the riuier, because *Pliny* doth so call them that be in the riuier *Nilus*, which notwithstanding do not altogether resemble the horse, but doth participate also of an oxe or a cow. He is of haire like to the scale, that is to say, duple graie, and somewhat towards the redde, the skinne very hard, a small head like to a Barbarie Cowe, hauing two ranks of teeth on ech side betweene which there is two of them of ech part hanging from the vpper iaw downward, of the forme of a young Elephants tooth, wherewith this creature helpeth her selfe to climbe on the rocks. Because of those teeth, our Mariners doe call it *La beste a La grand' dent*, the beast with the great teeth. His eares be short and his taile also, he loweth as an Oxe, and hath wings or finnes at his feete, and the female calleth her young ones on the land. And because that he is a fish of the whales kind and very fatte, our Basques and other Mariners doe make oile thereof, as they doe with the whale and they doe surprise him on the land.

Those

Those of *Nil* (saith *Pliny*) are clouen footed, the maine, the back, and the neighing of a horse, the teeth issuing forth as to a wild Boare. And he addeth, that when this creature hath beene in the corne for to feed, he goeth away backwards, vpon his returne for feare hee should be followed by his traces.

*Plin. li. 8. c. 25.*

I doe not purpose to discourse heere of all the sorts of fishes that are in those parts, the same being too spacious a subiect for my historie, because also that I haue specified a good number of them in my farewell to New France. I will say onely that by maner of pastime on the coasts of New France, I will take in one day fish enough for to serue as foode for a longer time then six weeks, in the places where the abundance of Codde is: for that kinde of fish is there most frequent. And hee that hath the industry to take Mackrels at sea, may there take so many that he shall not know what to doe with them, for in many places I haue seene infinite numbers of them close together, which did occupie more space there three times then the market hals of Paris doe containe. And notwithstanding I see a number of people in our countrie of France, so rechesse, and so idle in these daies, that they had rather die for hunger, or liue in slauerie, at the least to languish vpon their miserable dunghill, then to endeauour to get out of the mire, and to change their fortune by some generous action, or to die in it.

Infinite multitude of *Mackrels.*

The idleness of people in these daies.

CHAP. XXIII.

*Of the qualitie of the Soile.*

**W**E haue made prouision in the three last chapters of venison, of foule, and of fish; which is much. But in our old ancient France, bread and wine being our vsuall sustenance, it would bee hard vnto vs to make heere our aboade, vnlesse the land were fit for the same. Let vs then enter into consideration of it, and

Those

P<sup>in</sup>. l. 18. c. 5.  
Which is the  
good land.

The earth of  
New France  
hauing the  
same effects  
as terra sigil-  
lata.

The blessing  
of God vpon  
our labour. ↓

150. eares of  
corne from  
one graine.

and let vs put our hands into our bosome, to see if the dugges of this mother will yeeld any milke to nourish her children, and as for the rest, wee will take what may bee hoped for of her. *Attilius Regulus*, twise Consull in Rome, did commonly say, that one must not choose places ouer ranke, because they are vnhealthfull; neither places ouer barren, although one may liue healthily in them. And with such a moderate soile did *Cato* content himselfe. The ground of New France is such, for the most part of fatte land, vnder which we haue often found clay ground: and of that earth did *Monsieur de Poutrin-court* cause a quantitie of bricks to be made, wherewith he builded a furnace to melt the gum of the firre tree, and chimneies. I will say farther, that one may make with this earth such operations, as with the earth which we call *terra sigillata*, or *Bolus Armenicus*, as in many occasions our Apothecarie master *Lewes Hebert* most sufficient in his Arte, hath made triall of it; by the aduice of *Monsieur de Poutrin-court*: yea euen when that *Monsieur du Pont* his sonne had three fingers cut off with a musket-shot, which did burst being ouercharged, in the countrie of the *Arrouchiquois*.

This prouince hauing the two natures of Earth that God hath giuen vnto man for to possesse, who may doubt but that it is a land of promise, when it shalbe manured? Wee haue made triall of it, and haue taken pleasure therein, which neuer did all them that haue gone before vs, whether it be in *Brafill*, whether it be in *Florida*, or in *Canada*. God hath blessed our labours and hath giuen vnto vs faire wheate, Ric, Barly, Oates, peason, Beanes, Hempe, Turneps, and garden hearbs: and this so plentifully that the Ric was as high as the tallest man that may be seene, and we did feare that this height should hinder it from bringing forth seed: But it hath so well fructified that one french-graine sowed there hath yeelded one hundred and fifty Eares of corne, such as by the testimony of my Lord Chancellour, the Iland of *Cicilia* nor the countrie

of *Beauſſe* doe yeeld none fairer. I did ſow wheate, without ſuffring my land to reſt, and without dunging it at all: and neuertheleſſe it grew vp in as faire perfection as the faireſt wheate in France, although the corne and all that wee did ſow was to long kept. But the new corne which the ſaid *Monsieur de Poutrincourt* did ſow before his departure from thence grew vp ſo beautifull that it was wonderfull, according to the report of them that haue beene there a yeere after our departure. Whereupon I will ſay that which was of mine ownedoing, that in the month of Aprill in the yeere 1607 hauing ſowed too thicke & too neere one to the other, ſome few grains of the Rie that was gathered at Saint Croix (the firſt dwelling of *Monsieur de Monts*, ſometwenty ſiue leagues from Port Royall) theſe graines did multiplie ſo abundantly that they choaked one another, and came to no good perfection.

But as for the ground mended, dunged with our hogs dung, or with the ſweepings of the kitchenne, ſhels of fiſh, or ſuch like things, I would not belecue, vnleſſe I had ſeene it, the exceſſiue loſtineſſe of the plants that it hath produced euery one in his kinde. Yea the Sonne of *Monsieur de Poutrincourt*, a yong Gentleman of great forwardneſſe, hauing ſowed graines of Oringes and of Citrons in his garden, they ſprung plants of a foote high at three months end. We did not expect ſo much, and notwithstanding we tooke pleaſure therein, emulating one another. I referre to any mans Iudgement if the ſecond triall will be done with a good courage. And heere I muſt ſay by the way that the Secretary of the ſaid *Monsieur de Monts*, being come into thoſe parts before our departure, did ſay that he would not for any thing in the world, but to haue made the voyage, and that vnleſſe he had ſeene our corne, he would not haue beleueed it. Behold how continually the country of *Canada* hath beene diſcredited (vnder whoſe name all that land is comprized) not knowing what it is, vpon the report of ſome Mariners, who

1607.

S. Croix is 25. leagues from Port Royall.

The fertiity of the ground mended.

Orenges. Citrons.

The abuſe of them that haue diſcredited the country of *Canada*.

onely doe goeto fish for Coddes, and vpon the rumor of some sicknesses, which may bee avoided in maintaining of mirth. So that men be well furnished of necessaries.

But to continue our purpose of the mending of the ground, whereof wee spake euen now, one certaine ancient Authour saith that the Censors of Rome did let to farme the dunghils and other vncleanenesse, which were drawn out of sinckes for 1000 tallents a yeere (which is woorth 600000 French-crownes) to the Gardeners of Rome, because that it was the excellentest dung of all: And there wasto that end Commissioners ordained for to cleanse them: Likewise the bottome and Channell of the Riuer *Tybre*, as certaine ancient inscriptions, which I haue sometimes read, doe record.

The land of the *Arrouchiquois* doth beare yeerely such corne as that which wee call *Sarrazen* wheate, *Turkie* wheate, and *Indian* wheate, which is the *Irio* or *Erysimon fruges* of *Pliny* and *Columella*. But the *Virginians*, *Floridians*, and *Brasilians*, more southerly, make two haruells a yeere. All these people doe till their land with a wooden picke-axe, weed out the weeds and burne them, fatten their fieldes with shell-fish, hauing neither tame Cartell nor dung: then they heape their ground in small heapes two foote distant one from another. and the month of Maie being come, they set their Corne in those heapes of earth as wee doe plant beanes, fixing a stick, and putting foure graines of corne seuerally one after another (by certaine superstition) in the hole, and betweene the plants of the said corne (which groweth like a small tree, and is ripe at three months end) they also set beanes spotted with all colours, which are very delicate, which by reason they be not so high, doe grow very well among these plantes of corne: Wee haue sowed of the said corne this last yeere in Paris in good ground, but with small profit, hauing yeilded euery plant but one ear or two, and yet very

*Plin. l. 18. c. 7.*

*& 10.*

The *Virginians* haue two haruells in the yeare.

The maner of fating, tilling, and sowing the grounds.

very thinne : Where in that country one graine will yeld  
 foure, fiue and six eares, and euery care one with another  
 about 200 graines, which is a maruellous increase. Which  
 sheweth the prouerbe reported by *Theophrastus* to be ve-  
 ry true, that it is the yeere that produced the fruit, and not  
 the field: That is to say, that the temperature of the aire,  
 and condition of the weather, is that which maketh the  
 plants to budde and fructifie more then the nature of the  
 earth. Wherein is to be wondred that our Corne grow-  
 eth better there, then their corne heere. A certaintesti-  
 monie that God hath blessed that country, since that  
 his name hath bene called vpon there: Also that in these  
 parts, since some yeeres, God beareth vs (as I haue said  
 elsewhere) with rods of iron, and in that country he hath  
 spred his blessing abundantly vpon our labour, and that  
 in one *parallele* and eleuation of the Sunne.

This Corne growing high, as we haue said, the stalke  
 of it is as bigge as Canes, yea bigger. The stalke & Corne  
 taken greene, haue a sugar taste, which is the cause why  
 the Mowles and field Rattes doe so couet it, for they  
 spoiled me a plot of it in New France. The great beasts, as  
 Stagges and other beasts, as also birds doe spoile it. And  
 the Indians are constrained to keepe them as wee doe the  
 vines heere.

The Haruest being done, this people laieth vp their  
 Corne in the ground, in pits which they make in some  
 discent of a hill, for the running downe of waters, fur-  
 nishing those pits with mattes: and this they doe because  
 they haue no houses with loftes, nor chests to lay it vp o-  
 therwise: then the corne conserued after this maner, is out  
 of the way of Rats and Mice.

Sundry nations of those parts haue had the same inuen-  
 tion to keepe corne in pits. For *Suidas* maketh mention of  
 it vpon the word *Seiroi*. And *Procopius* in the second book  
 of the Gothicke warre, saith that the Gothes besieging  
 Rome fell within the pits, where the inhabitants were

*Theophrastus*  
 in the 8.  
 booke of  
 plants.

Our corne  
 profiteth bet-  
 ter in their  
 ground then  
 their corne in  
 ours.

Barnes vnder  
 ground.

14. chap.

woont to lay their Corne. *Tacitus* reporteth also that the Germans had such pits. And without particularising any farther, in many places of France that keepe at this day their corne after that maner. We haue declared heeretofore in what fashion they stampe their Corne, and make bread with it, and how by the testimonie of *Pliny*, the ancient Italians had no better industrie then they.

The cause why the *Canadians* haue giuen ouer their tillage.

They of *Canada* and *Hochelaga*, in the time of *James Quartier*, did also till after the same maner, and the land did afford them Corne, Beanes, Peason, Milions, Pom-pions, & Cucumbers, but since that their furies haue been in request, and that for the same they haue had bread and other victuals, without any other paines, they are become sluggish, as the *Souriquois* also, who did addict themselues to tillage in the same time.

Hemp.

But both the one and the other nation haue yet at this time excellent Hempte, which the ground produceth of it selfe. It is higher, finer, whiter, and stronger then ours in these our parts. But that of the *Arrouchiquois* beareth at the top of the stalke thereof a cod, filled with a kinde of cotten, like vnto silke, in which lieth the seed. Of this cotten, or whatsoever it be, good beddes may be made, more excellent a thousand times then of feathers, and softer than common cotten. We haue sowed of the said seed, or graine in diuers places of Paris, but it did not prooue.

Cotton.

Vines and grapes.

We haue seene by our Historie, how along the great riuer, beyond *Tadoussac*, Vines are found innumerable, and grapes at the season. I haue seene none in Port Royall, but the land and the hills are very proper for it. France had none in ancient time, vnlesse peradventure along the coast of the *Mediterranean* sea. And the *Gaullois* hauing done some notable seruice to the Emperour *Probus*, they demanded of him for recompence, permission to plant Vines: which he granted vnto them: But they were first denied by the Emperour *Nero*. But why doe I alledge the *Gaullois*, seeing that in *Brafill*, being a hot countrie, there

*Aurel. Victor* in *Prob.* when the Vine was first planted in France.

was



was none vntill that the Frenchmen and Portugeses had planted some there : So there is no doubt but that the Vine will grow plentifully in the said Port Royall, seeing likewise that at the riuer Saint Iohn (which is twentie leagues more Northward than the said Port) there be many of them : yet for all that not so faire as in the countrie of the *Armonchiquois*, where it seemeth that *Nature* did delight herselfe in planting of them there.

And for as much as we haue handled this subiect, speaking of the voiage that *Monsieur De Poutrincourt* made thither, we will passe further, to declare vnto you that the most part of the woods of this land be Oakes and Walnut-trees, bearing small-nuts with fower or fise sides, so sweet and delicate as any thing may be : And likewise Plumb-trees which bring foorth very good Plumbees : As also *Sassafras*, a tree hauing leaues like to Oake-leaues, but lesse jagged, whose wood is of very good sent, and most excellent for the curing of many diseases, as the pox, and the sicknesse of *Canada*, which I call *Phthisie*, whereof we haue discoursed at large heeretofore.

They also plant great store of *Tabacco*, a thing most precious with them, and vniuersally amongst all those nations. It is a plante of the bignesse of *Consolida maior*, the smoake whereof they sucke vp with a pipe in that manner that I will declare vnto you, for the contentment of them that know not the vse of it. After that they haue gathered this hearbe, they lay it to dry in the shade, and haue certaine small bagges of leather, hanging about their neckes or at their girdles, wherein they haue alwaies some and a *Tabacco*-pipe with all, which is a little pan hollowed at the one side, and within whose hole there is a long quill or pipe, out of which they sucke vp the smoake, which is within the said pan, after they put fire to it with a cole that they laie vpon it. They will sometimes suffer hunger eight daies, hauing no other sustenance then that smoake. And our Frenchmen who haue frequented them are so bewitched

Oakes.  
Nut-trees.  
Plumb-trees.

*Sassafras*.

*Phthisie*.  
I. book. c. 13.

*Tabacco* and  
the vse of it.

Foolish greediness of some men after *Tabacco*.

The Sauvages doe thinke that God hath taken *Tabacco*.

The vertues and properties of *Tabacco*.

*Belle Foreſt*.

witched with this drunkenesse of *Tabacco*, that they can no more be without it, then without meat or drinke, and vpon that doe they spend good store of mony. For the good *Tabacco* which commeth out of *Brasil* doth sometimes cost a French-crowne a pound. Which I deeme foolishnesse in them, because that notwithstanding they doe not spare more in their eating and drinking then other men, neither doe they take a bit of meat nor a cup of drinke the lesse by it. But it is the more excusable in the Sauvages, by reason they haue no greater delicioussnesse in their *Tabagies*, or bankets, and can make cheere to them that come to visit them with no greater thing, as in these our parts one presents his friend with some excellent wine: In such sort that if one refuseth to take the *Tabacco*-pipe, it is a signe that he is not a friend. And they, which among them haue some obscure knowledge of God, doe say that he taketh *Tabacco* as well as they, and that it is the true nectar, described by the Poets.

This smoake of *Tabacco* taken by the mouth, in sucking, as a child that sucketh his dugg, they make it to issue thorow the nose, & passing thorow the conduits of breathing, the braines are warmed by it, and the humiditie of the same dried vp. It doth also in some sort make one giddie, and as it were drunke, it maketh the belly soluble, mitigateth the passions of Venus, bringeth to sleepe, and the leafe of *Tabacco*, or the ashes that remaine in the pan healeth wounds. Yea I will say more that this nectar is vnto them so sweet, that the children doe sometimes sup vp the smoake that their fathers cast out of their nostrils, to the end that nothing be lost. And because that the same hath a tart biting taste, *Monsieur de Belleforest*, reciting that which *James Quartier* (who knew not what it was) saith of it, will make the people beleue that it is some kind of pepper. But whatsoever sweetnesse is found therein I could neuer vse my selfe to it, neither doe I care for the vse and custome to take it in smoake.

There

There is yet in the land of the *Armonchiquois*, certaine kinde of Rootes as bigge as a loafe of bread, most excellent for to be eaten, hauing a taste like the stalkes of Artichocks, but much more pleasant, which being planted do multiply in such sort, that it is woonderfull. I beleue that they be those which be called *Afrodilles*, according to the description that *Pliny* maketh of them: These Roots (saith he) are made after the fashion of smal turneps & there is no plant that hath so many roots as this hath: for sometimes one shall find fower score *Afrodilles* tied together. They are good roasted vnder the imbers, or eaten raw with pepper, or oile and salt.

Rootes *Afrodilles*.

“ *Plin. l. 21. c.*  
“ 17.

“ These seem  
“ to be  
“ ground,  
“ nuts.

“ Considerati-  
“ on of the mi-  
“ serie of many.

Considering all this, it seemeth vnto mee that these are men very miserable, who being able to liue a countrie life in quiet and rest, and take the benefit of the ground, which doth pay her creditor with so profitable an vsurie, doe passe their age in townes in following of sutes in law, in toiling heere and there, to seeke out the meanes how to beguile and deceaue some one or other, taking such pains as doe euen bring them to their graue, for to pay their house rent, for to be clothed in silke, for to haue some precious moueables: briefly for to set out and feed themselves with all vanitie, wherein contentment is neuer to be found. Poore fooles! (saith *Hesiod*) which know not how one halfe of these things with quiet is more woorth then all heaped together with feattfullnesse: nor how great benefit is in the *Malous* and the *Daffadilles*. The Gods certainly haue hidden from men the manner of liuing happily. For otherwise one daies labour would be sufficient for to nourish a man a whole yeere, and the day following he would set his Plough vpon his dunghill, and would rest his Oxen, his mules, and himselfe.

“ *Hesode* in  
“ the booke  
“ of workes  
“ and daies.

“  
“  
“  
“  
“

This is the contentment which is prepared for them that shall inhabite New-France, though fooles doe despise this kind of life, and the tilling of the ground, the most harmeles of all bodily exercises, and which I will tearme

The tilling of  
the ground  
full of inno-  
cency.

the

There

Pl. 18. booke  
ch. 3.

the most noble as that which sustaineth the life of all men. They disdain (I say) the tillage of the ground, and notwithstanding all the vexations wherewith one tormenteth himselfe, the sutes in law that one followes, the wars that are made, are but for to haue landes. Poore mother! what hast thou done that thou art so despised? The other Elements are very often contrarie vnto vs, the fire consumeth vs, the aire doth infect vs with plague, the water swalloweth vs vp, onely the earth is that which comming into the world, and dying, receaueth vs kindly, it is she aloneth that nourisheth vs, which warmeth vs, which lodgeth vs, which clotheth vs, which contrarieth vs in nothing, and shee is set at naught, and them that doe manure her are laughed at, they are placed next to the idle and bloud-suckers of the people. All this is done heere among vs: But in New-France the gouldenage must be brought in againe, the ancient Crownes of eares of corne must be renewed; and to make that to be the first glory which the ancient Romans did call *Gloria adorea*, a glory of wheate, to the end to inuite euery one to till well his field, seeing that the land presenteth it selfe liberally to them that haue none.

Being assured to haue corne and wine, there resteth but to furnish the Country with tame cattell: for they will breede there very well, as we haue said in the chapter of hunting.

Heeretofore  
ch. 11.

Orenge-trees  
Fruit-trees.

Of fruite-trees, there be but few, besides nut-trees, Plumb-trees, and small chery-trees, and some hazell-nut-trees. True it is that all that which is within the land is not yet discovered, for in the country of the *Iroquois* there are Orenge-trees, and they make oiles with the fruite of trees. But no French-men nor other Christians haue bene there yet. That want of fruit-trees is not to be found very strange. For the most part of our fruits are come out of other places: And very often the fruites beare the name of the country from whence they haue been brought. The lande

land of *Germanie* is good, and fruitfull : but *Tacitus* saith, that in his time there were no fruit-trees.

As for the trees of the forests the most common in *Port Royall* be Oakes, Elmes, ashes, Birch (very good for Joiners-worke) Mapels, Sicomores, Pine-trees, Firre-trees, White-thornes, Hazell-trees, Willowes, Bay-trees, and some others besides which I haue not yet marked. There is in certaine places store of Strawberries, and Raspises. Item in the wooddes small fruit, blew and redde. I haue seene there small Peares very delicate: and in the meddowes all the winter long, there be certaine smal fruits like to small apples coloured with redde, whereof wee made Marmelade, for to eate after meat. There be store of Gooseberries like vnto ours, but they grow redde. Item those other smal roūd gooseberries which we do cal *Guedres*. And Peason in great quantitie along the sea shoares, the leaues whereof we tooke in Spring time, and put among our old Peason, and so it did seeme vnto vs that we did eate greene Peason. Beyond the said Baie *Françoise*, that is to say, in the riuier S. Iohn, and Saint Croix, there is store of Cedar trees, besides those trees that I haue named. As for them of the great riuier of *Canada*, they haue beene specified in the second booke, in the relation of the voyages of captaine *Iames Quartier*, & of *Monsieur Champlain*.

Those of *Florida* be Pyne trees (which beare no kernels in the fruits that they produce) Oakes, Wall-nut trees, blacke Cherrie trees, Lentiskes, Chest-nut trees (which be not naturall as in France) Cedar trees, Cypres trees, Palme trees, Holy trees, and Wilde vines, which climbe vp to the trees, and bring forth good grapes. There is a kind of Medlers, the fruit whereof is better and bigger then that of France: there are also Plumbe trees which beare a very faire fruit, but not very good, Raspises: A small graine which we call with vs *bleuës* (blewes) which are very good to bee eaten. Item roots which they call *Hassez*, whereof in their neede they make bread.

The trees and fruits of the land in *Port Royall*.

Bay trees commonly grow in warme countries.

*Guedres* be a kinde of *Corinthes*.

Trees of *Florida*.

Trees of Bra.  
sil.

The province of Brasill hath taken her name, as wee thinke, of a certaine tree which we call *Bresill*, and the Sa- uages of the countrie *Arabouton*, it is high, and as bigge as our Oakes, and hath the leafe like to the Box leafe. Our French men and others doe goe into that countrie for to lade their shippes with it. The fire of it is almost without smoake. But hee that would thinke to whiten his linnen with the ashes of that wood, would farre deceiue himselfe. For he should finde it died in redde. They haue also Palme trees of sundry sorts: And trees the wood whereof, of some, is yellow, and others violet. They haue also some that haue the sent of Roses, and others stinking, whose fruits are dangerous to be eaten. Item a kinde of *Guayac* which they name *Hinouracé*, which they vse for to cure a disease called among them *Pians*, as dangerous as the Pox. The tree which beareth the fruit that wee call the Indian Nut, is called among them *Sabancaie*. They haue also Cot- ten trees, of the fruit whereof they make beds, which they hang betweene two forks or posts. This countrie is hap- pie in many other sorts of fruit trees, as Orange trees, Ci- tron trees, Leamon trees, and others, alwaies greene, whereby the losse of that countrie where the Frenchmen had begun to inhabite, is so much the more greuous vn- to them that loue the welfare of France. For it is more than eident, that the dwelling is there more pleasant and delightfull then the land of *Canada*, for the temperature of the aire. True it is that the voiaiges thither are long, as of fower and fise moneths, & that in performing of them somtimes wants must be endured, as may be seene by the voiaiges made thither in the time of *Ville-gagnon*: But to New France where we were, when one beginneth his voi- age in due season, the voiaiges are but of three weeks, or a moneth, which is but a small time.

The benefit  
of taking the  
season of the  
yeare.

If the sweetnesse and delicacies be not there, such as they are in Perou, one must not say therefore that the countrie is nothing woorth. It is much that one may liue there.

there inrest & ioyfully without taking care for superfluous things. The couetuousnesse of men hath caused that no countrie is thought good, vnlesse there be Mines of gold in it. And sots as they be, they doe not consider that the country of France is now vnfurnished of the same: And Germany also, whereof *Tacitus* said, that he knew not whether the gods in their anger or in their fauour had denied gold and siluer to that Prouince. They doe not see that all the Indians haue not any vse of siluer, and liue more contentedly then we. If we call them fooles they may say as much of vs, and peradventure with better reason. They know not that God promising to his people a happy land he saith that it shall be a land of Corne, of Barly, of Vines, of Fig-trees, of Oliue-trees, and of Hony, where they shall eat their bread without scarcity, &c. And for all mettels he giueth them but Iron and Copper, least that gold and siluer make them to lift vp their hearts, and forget their God: And he will not that when they shall haue kings they should hoord vp much gold or siluer. They doe not consider that Mines be the Church-yards of men: That the Spaniard hath consumed therein aboue ten millions of poore Indian Sauages, instead of instructing them in the Christian faith: That there be Mines in Italy, but that the

The despising  
of gold and  
siluer Mines.

Deut 8 v. 8, 9.

Deut. 17 v. 17.

Plin. l. 33. c. 4.

Mines in  
New France.

hath Corne in his Barne, Wine in his seller, Cattell in his Medowes, and afterwards Codde-fish and Beuers, is more assured to haue gold and siluer, then he which hath Mines to finde victuals. And neuerthelesse there be Mines in New France, as we haue mentioned elswhere. But that is not the first thing that one must seeke for, men doe not liue with opinion onely. And this consisteth but in opinion, nor the precious stones neither (which are fooles bables) wherein one is most often deceiued, so well art can counterfeit nature: witnesse him that did sell, some fiue or six yeeres since, vessels for fine Emerald, and had made himselfe rich by the folly of others, if he could haue plaied his part aright.

Fruites to be  
hoped for in  
New France.

The like may  
be to Eng-  
land from  
Virginia.

Good confi-  
derations.

Now without making shew of any Mines, profit may be made in New France of diuers furies that be there, which I finde are not to be dispised, seeing that we see so much enuy against a priuiledge that the King did grant to *Monsieur de Monts* for to helpe to establish and settle there some French Colony. But there may be drawn a generall commodity to France, that in the scarcety of victuals, one Prouince may succour the other: which might be done now if the Country were well inhabited: seeing that since we haue beene there the seasons haue alwaies beene good in it, and in these our parts rough to the poore, which doe die for hunger, and liueth but in want and penury: in stead that there many might liue at their ease, who it were better to preferue then to suffer to perish. Besides fishing being made in New France, the New-found-land-ships shall haue nothing to doe but to lade, arriuing thither, in stead that they are forced to tarry three moneths there: and shal be able to make three voiage for one.

Of exquisit woods I know none there, but the Cedar and the *Sassafras*: but good profit may be drawn from the Firre and Pruse-trees, because they will yeeld aboundance of gumme, and they die very often thorow ouer much liquor. This gumme is very faire like the *Turpentine* of Venice,



nice, and very soueraigne for medicines. I haue giuen some  
 to some Churches of Paris for Frankensence, which hath  
 beene found very good. One may moreouer furnish the  
 Citie of Paris and other places of France with Sope-ashes,  
 which at this present be all bare and without woods. They  
 who finde themselues afflicted may haue there a pleasant  
 place to retire themselues into, rather then to yeeld them-  
 selues subiect to the Spaniard, as many doe. So many fa-  
 milies as be in France ouercharged with Children, may  
 diuide themselues, and take there their portion with those  
 small goods and moueables as they haue. Then time will  
 discouer some thing a new: and one must helpe all the  
 world, if it be possible. But the chiefeest good one must  
 aime at, is the establishment of Christian religion, in a  
 Country where God is not knowen, and the conuersion  
 of these poore people, whose damnation crieth vengance  
 against them that may, and ought to employ themselues  
 thereto, and to contribute, at least with their names, to that  
 effect, seeing that they gather vp the fat of the earth, and  
 are constituted Stewards of the things of this world.

Sope ashes.

CHAP. XXV.

*Of their Warre.*

**O**F possessing of land commeth warre: And when  
 one hath established himselfe in New-France, some  
 greedy fellow peradventure will come to take away  
 the labour of honest painefull men. This is that which  
 many doe say. But the state of France is (God be praised)  
 too well settled, for to be affraid of such trickes. We are  
 not now in the time of leagues and partialties. There is  
 none that will beginne with our king, nor make aduentu-  
 rous enterprizes for a small purchase. And though any  
 one would doe it, I beleue that the remedies haue beene  
 thought vpon alreadie. And moreouer this action is  
 for religion, and not to take away anothers goods. This

And by consequent to the Englishmen of Virginia.

being so, Faith maketh one to march bouldly with assurance, and to passe through all difficulties. For behold what the Almighty saith by his Prophet *Isaiab* to them whom he taketh in his tuition, and to the Frenchmen of New-France: *Harken vnto me you that follow Iustice, and that seeke after the Lord. Behold the rocke out of which you were cut, and to the deepe of the Cisterne from whence you haue been drawn; That is to say, consider that you are French-men. Looke to Abraham your father and to Sara who hath brought you foorth, how I haue called him he being all alone, and haue blessed and multiplied him. Therefore assuredly the Lord will comfort Sion &c.*

To what end the Sauages doe make warre.

Our Sauages doe not ground their wars vpon the possession of the land. Wee doe not see that they encroatch one vpon another for that respect. They haue lande enough for to liue and for to walke. Their ambition is limited within their boundes. They make war as *Alexander the great* did make it, that they may say I haue beaten you: or else for reuenge in remembrance of some iniurie receaued, which is the greatest vice that I find in them, because they neuer forget iniuries: Wherein they are so much the more excusable, because they doe nothing but that which our selues doe also. They follow nature: And if wee refraine any thing of that instinct, it is the commandement of God which maketh vs to doe it; whereunto many doe stoppe their eies.

The Sauages Orations.

Therefore when they will make warres, the *Sagamos* who hath most credit among them, maketh them to know the cause why, the rendez-vous, and time of the assembly. Being arriued he maketh long orations vnto them vpon the occasion which is offered and for to encourage them. At euery proposition he demandeth their aduise, and if they giue consent they all make an exclamation, saying *Hau*: if not, some *Sagamos* will beginne to speake, and say what he thinketh good of it: being both the one and the other well heard. Their warres are made but by sur-

Surprizes of the Sauages.

prizes,

prizes, in the darke of the night, or by Moone-shine, by ambushments or subtiltie. Which is generall throughout all those Indies. For we haue seene in the first booke in what fashion the *Floridians* doe make warre: And the *Brazilians* doe no otherwise, And the surprizes being done they come to handie blowes, and doe fight very often by day.

But before they goe from home, ours (I meane the *Souriquois*) haue this custome to make a fort, within which all the yongue men of the armie doe put themselues: where being, the women come to compass them about and to keepe them as besieged. Seeing themselues so enuironned they make sallies, for to shunne and deliuer themselues out of prison. The women that keepe watch doe repulse them, doe arrest them, doe their best endeauour to take them. And if they be taken they lay loades at them, doe beate them, strippe them, and by such a successe they take a good presage of the warre they goe to make. If they escape it is an euill signe.

They haue also another custome concerning some one particular man, who bringing an enemies head, they make great feasts, dances and songs for many daies: and whilest these things be in doing they strippe the Conqueror, & giue him but some bad ragge to couer himselfe withall. But at the end of eight daies or there about, after the feast, euery one doth present himselfe with some thing, to honour him for his valour.

The Captaines amongst them take their degree by succession, as the regalitie in these our parts (which is to be vnderstood if the Sonne of a *Sagamos* imitateth the vertues of his father) for otherwise they doe as in the old time when that first the people did chuse kings: whereof *Iohn de Meung* Author of the *Roman de la Rose*, speaking hee saith: that, *They chused the tallest, that had the biggest body, and biggest bones amongst them, and made him their Prince and Lord.* But this *Sagamos* hath not an absolute authoritie

The maner to foretell or presage the euent of the warre.

Succession of Captains.

authoritie among them, but such as *Tacitus* reporteth of the ancient *Germane Kings*: the power of their Kings, saith he, is not free, nor infinite, but they conduct the people rather by example, then by commandement. In *Virginia* and in *Florida* they are more honoured then among the *Souriquois*. But in *Brasil* he that hath taken and killed more prisoners they will take him for Captaine, and yet his children may not inherite that dignitie.

The naturall Virginians doe honour their kings. The Sauages armes.

Their armes are the first which were in vse after the creation of the world, Clubbes, bowes, arrowes: for as for slings and Crosse-bowes they haue none, nor any weapons of iron or steele, much lesse those that humane wit hath inuented since two hundred yeeres, to counterfaite the thunder: nor Rammes or other ancient engins of batterie.

Heeretofore the first book, chap. 15.

They are very skilfull in shooting an arrow, and let that befor an example which is recited heeretofore of one that was killed by the *Armouchiquois*, hauing a little dogge pierced together with him with an arrow, shot a farre off. Yet I would not giue them the praises due to many nations of this hither world, which haue bene famous for that exercise, as the *Scythians*, *Getes*, *Sarmates*, *Goths*, *Scots*, *Parthians*, and all the people of the East, of whom a great number were so skilfull, that they had hit a haire: which the holy Scripture witnesseth of many of Gods people, namely of the *Beniamites*, who going to warre against *Israel*: *Of all this people* (saith the Scripture) *there was seuen hundred chosen men, being left-handed: all these could sling a stone at an haire breadth, and not faile.* In *Crete* there was an *Alcon* so skilfull an archer, that a dragon carrying away his Sonne, he pursued after him and killed him without hurting his child. One may read of the Emperour *Domitian* that he could direct his arrow farre of between his two fingers, being spred abroad. The writings of the ancient make mention of many who shotte birds through, flying in the aire, and of other wonders which

Judges ch. 10. vers. 15. Excellent Archers.

which our Sauages would admire at. But notwithstanding they are gallant men and good warriors, who will goe through euery place being backt by some number of French-men: and, which is the second thing next vnto courage, they can endure hardnesse in the warre, lie in the snow, and on the ice, suffer hunger, and by intermission feede themselues with smoake, as we haue said in the former chapter. For warre is called *Militia*, not out of the word *Mollicia*, as *Vlpian* the lawyer, and others would haue it, by an *antiphrasticall* manner of speaking: But of *Malitia* which is as much to say as *Duritia*, *Kakia*: or of *Afflictio*, which the Greekes doe call *Kakosis*. And so it is taken in Saint Mathew where it is said *that the day hath enough of his own grieffe Kakia* that is to say *his affliction, his paine, his labour, his hardnesse*, as Saint Hierome doth expound it very well. And the word in *S. Paul* *Kakopatheos* *Hos kalos stratiotis Ieson Christon*, had not beene ill translated *Dura*, that is, *Suffer affliction as a good souldier of Iesus Christ*, instead of *Labora*, *hardently selfe with patience*, as it is in *Virgill*,

*Durate, & rebus vosmet seruate secundis.*

And in another place he calleth the *Scipios Duros belli*, to signifie braue and excellent Captaines: which hardnes and malice of warre *Tertullian* doth expound *Imbonitas* in the booke that he hath writtent o the Martirs, for to exhort them to suffer afflictions manfully for the name of *Iesus Christ*: *A souldier* (saith he) *cannot come to the wars with pleasures, and he goeth not to the fight comming foorth from his chamber, but out of tents and pauillions stretched out, and tied to stalkes and forkes, Ubi omnis duritia & imbonitas & insuauitas, where no pleasure is.*

Now although the war which is made comming foorth out of tents and pauillions is hard, yet notwithstanding the life of our Sauages is yet harder, and may be called a true *milicia*, that is to say, *malice*, which I take for hardnesse. And after this maner doe they trauell ouer great countries

From whence cometh this word malice, or *Militia*. *Vlpian*. l. 1. S. vlt. D. de. iustum. mil. Mat. 6. v. 34.

*Hierom. epist. ad 147. A. mand.*

Subject of the  
Sauages feare.

Heretofore  
cha. 17.

Their maner  
of marching  
to the wars.  
A martiall-  
dance.

through the woods for to surprize their enemy and to as-  
saile him on the sudden. This is that which keepeth them  
in perpetuall feare. For at the least noise in the world, as  
of an *Ellan* which passeth among branches and leaues, they  
take an alarme. They that haue townes after the maner  
that I haue described heretofore, are somewhat more as-  
sured. For hauing well barred the comming in they may  
aske *qui va là* who goeth there? and prepare themselues  
to the combat. By such surprizes the *Iroquois* being in  
number eight thousand men, haue heretofore extermina-  
ted the *Algonquins*, them of *Hochelaga*, and others border-  
ring vpon the great riuer. Neuerthelesse when our Saua-  
ges vnder the conduct of *Memberton* went to the warre  
against the *Armonchiquois*, they imbarked themselues in  
shaloupes and Canowes: But indeed they did not enter  
within the Country, but killed them on their frontieres in  
the Port of *Chouakoet*. And for asmuch as this war, the  
cause thereof, the counsell, the execution, and the end of  
it hath beene described by me in French verses, which I  
haue annexed vnto my poem intituled the *Muses of New  
France* I refer the reader to haue recourse to it, because I  
will not writ one thing twise. I will onely say that being  
at the riuer Saint Iohn, the *Sagamos Chkoudun* a Christian  
and Frenchman, in will and courage, made a yong man of  
*Retel*, called *Lefevre*, and my selfe to see how they goe to  
the warres: And after their feast they came forth some  
foure-score out of his Towne, hauing laied downe their  
mantles of furre, that is to say starke naked, bearing euery  
one a shield which couered all their body ouer, after the  
fashion of the ancient Gaulois, who passed into Greece vnder  
the Captaine *Brennus*, of whom they that could not  
wade the riuers, did lay themselues on their Bucklers,  
which serued them for Boates, as *Pausanias* saith. Besides  
these shieldes they had euery one his wodden mace, their  
quiuers on their backes, and their bow in hand: march-  
ing as it were in dancing wise. I doe not thinke for all  
that,

that, that when they come neere to the enemy for to fight, that they be so orderly as the ancient *Lacedemonians*, who from the age of five yeares were accustomed to a certaine maner of dancing, which they vsed going to fight, that is to say with a milde and graue measure, to the sound of flutes, to the end to come to blowes with a coole and settled sense, and not to trouble their mindes: to be able also to discern them that were couragious from them that were fearefull, as *Plutarch* saith. But rather they goe furiously, with great clamors and fearefull howlings, to the end to astonish the enemy, and to giue to themseiuers mutuall assurance. Which is done amongst all the Westerly Indians.

*Plutar.* in the treaty of the refraining of *ebolov.* and in the *Aposhib.*

In this mustering our Sauages went to make a turne about a hill, and as their returne was somewhat slow, we tooke our way towards our barke, where our men were in feare, least some wrong had beene done vnto vs.

In the victory they kill all that may make resistance, but they pardon the women and children. The *Brasilians* contrariwise do take prisoners as many as they can, and reserue them for to be fatned, to kill and to eat them in the first assembly they shall make. Which is a kinde of sacrifice among those people that haue some forme of religion, from whom those men haue taken this inhumane custome. For anciently they that were ouercome, were sacrificed to the gods who were thought to be authours of the victory, whereof it came that they were called *Victimes*, because that they were ouercome: *Victima à Victis*: They were also called *Hosties*, *ab Hoste*, because they were enemies. They that did set foorth the name of *Supplice* did it almost vpon the same occasion, causing *supplications* to be made to the Gods of the goods of them whom they condemned to death. Such hath beene the custome among many Nations to sacrifice the enemies to the false gods, and it was also practised in *Perou* in the time that the Spaniards came thither first.

How the Sa- uages doe vse with the vi- ctory.

1. Samuel. 15.  
vers. 33.

We read in the holy Scripture, that the Prophet *Samuel* cut in peeces *Agag* king of the *Amalekites*, before the Lord in *Gilgal*. Which might bee found strange, seeing that there was nothing so milde as this holy Prophet was. But one must cōsider heere that it was by a special motion of the spirit of God which stirred *Samuel* to make himselfe executioner of the the Diuine Iustice against an enemy of the people of Israel, in steed of *Saul*, who had neglected the commandement of God, which was enioyned to smite *Hamaleke* and to put all to the edge of the sword, without sparing any liuing soule; which hee did not: and therefore was hee forsaken of God. *Samuel* then did that which *Saul* should haue done, he cut in peeces a man who was condemned of God, who had made many widdowes in *Israell*, and iustly did receaue the like payment: to the end also to fulfill the propheticie of *Balam*, who had foretold long before that the king of the *Israelites* should be raised vp about *Agag*, and his kingdom should be exalted. Now this action of *Samuel* is not without example. For when they were to appease the wrath of God, *Moyse* said: Put euery man his sword by his side: and slay euery man his brother, and euery man his companion, and euery man his neighbour. So *Elijah* made the Prophets of *Baal* to be killed. So at Saint Peters words *Ananias* and *Saphira* fell downe dead at his feete.

Num. 24. v. 7.

Exod. 32. v. 27.

1. King. 18.

vers. 40.

Act. 5. v. 5.

Now to returne to our purpose, our Sauages as they haue no religion, so make they no sacrifices: and besides are more humane than the *Brazilians*, forasmuch as they eate no mans flesh, contenting themselues to destroy them, that doe annoy them. But they haue such a generositie in them, that they had rather die then to fall into the hands of their enemies. And when *Monseigneur de Poutrincourt* tooke reuenge of the *Arrouchiquois*, which murdered some of our men, there were some who suffered themselves rather to bee hewed in peeces, then that they would bee carried away prisoners: or if by maine force they



they be carried away, they will starue or kill themselves: Yea also they will not suffer the dead bodies of their people to remaine in the possession of their enemies, and in the perill of their owne liues, they take them and carrie them away: which *Tacitus* doth also testifie of the ancient *Germanis*, and it hath beene an vsuall thing with all generous nations.

The victorie being gotten of one side or other, the victorious cutteth off the heads of the enemies slaine, how great soeuer the number of them is, which are diuided among the captaines, but they leaue there the carcase, contenting themselves with the skinne, which they cause to bee dried, or doe tanne it, and doe make trophies with it in their cabins, taking therein all their contentment. And some solempne feast hapning among them ( I call feast whensoever they make *Tabagie* ) they take them, and dance with them, hauing them hanging about their neckes at their armes, or at their girdles, and with very rage they sometimes bite at them: which is a great prooue of this disordinate appetite of reuenge, wherof we haue somtimes spoken.

Our ancient *Gaullois* did make no lesse trophies with the heads of their enemies than our Sauages. For (if *Diodorus* and *Titus Linius* may bee beleued ) hauing cut them, they bring them backe from the fielde hanging at the petrall of their horses, and did tie or naile them solemnely, with songes and praises of the vanquishers ( according to their customes ) at their gates, as one would doe a wilde boares. As for the heads of the nobles they did enbalme them and kept them carefully within cases, for to make shewe of them to those that come to see them, and for nothing in the world they would restore them, neither to kinsmen nor any other. The *Boians* ( which bee the *Bourbonnois* ) did more. For after they had taken out the braines, they did giue the skuls to Goldsmiths for to garnish them with

Q o 3 gold,

*Diodor. 6.*  
booke *Biblior.*  
*Tit. Line. 1. de-*  
*cad. 10. booke.*

*Strabolib. 4.*  
*Geogr.*

*Idem lib. 3.*  
*Decad. 3.*

gold, and to make vessels of them to drinke in, which they vsed in sacred things and holy solemnities. If any man thinketh this strange, he must yet finde more strange that which is reported of the *Hungarians* by *Viginere* vpon *Titus Linius*, of whom he saith, that in the yeere 1566. being neere *Iauarin*, they did licke the bloud of the Turkes heads which they brought to the Emperor *Maximilian*: which goeth beyond the barbarousnesse that might bee objected to our Sauages.

Yea I must tell you that they haue more humanity then many Christians, who within these hundred yeeres haue committed in diuers occurrences, vpon women and children cruelties more then brutish, whereof the histories be full: and our Sauages doe extend their mercie to these two sortes of creatures.

#### CHAP. XXVI.

##### *Of their funerals.*

**T**He warre being ended, humanity doth inuite vs to bewaile for the dead, and to bury them. It is a worke wholly of pietie, and more meritorious then any other. For he that giueth succour to a man whilst he is a life may hope for some seruice of him, or a reciprocal kindnesse: But from a dead creature wee can expect nothing more: This is that which made that holy man *Tobie* to be acceptable to God. And for that good office, they that employed themselues in the burying of our Sauiour are praised in the Gospell. As for teares and mourning behold what saith the wise Sonne of *Sirach*, *My Sonne power forth teares ouer the dead, and begin to mourne as if thou hadst suffered great harme thy selfe: and then cover his body according to his appointment, and neglect not his burriall. Make a grienous lamentation, and be earnest in mourning, and vse lamentation as he is worthy, and that a day or two, least thou be euill spoken off.*

Eccles. 38. ve.  
16. 17.

this

This lesson being come, whether it be by some tradition, or by the instinct of nature, as farre as to our Sauvages, they haue yet at this day that common with the nations of these parts to weepe for the dead, and to keepe the bodies of them after their decease, as it was done in the time of the holy Patriarches Abraham, Isaac, and Iacob, and since. But they make strange clamours many daies together, as we saw in Port Royall, some monthes after our arriuell into that country (to wit in Nouember) where they made the funerall ceremonies for one of theirs, named *Pannonic* who had taken some marchandises out of *Monsieur de Monts* his store house, and went to trucke with the *Armonchiquois*. This *Pannoniac* was killed, and the body brought backe into the cabins of the Riuer Saint Croix, where our Sauvages did both weepe for him and embalmed him. Of what kinde this balme is, I could not know, not being able to enquire of it vpon the places. I beleeue they iagge the dead corpses and make them to dry. Certaine it is that they preferue them from rottenesse: which thing they doe almost throughout all these Indies. He that hath written the history of *Virginia* saith that they draw out their entralles from the body, flea the dead, take away the skinne, cut all the flesh off from the bones, drie it at the Sunne, then lay it (enclosed in mattes) at the feete of the dead. That done they giue him his owne skinne againe, & couer therewith the bones tied together with leather, fashioning it euen so as if the flesh had remained at it.

It is a thing well knownen that the ancient *Egyptians* did enbalme the dead bodies, and kept them carefully. Which (besides the prophane Authours) is seene in the holy Scripture, where it is said that *Ioseph* did commande his Seruants and Phisitians to embalme the body of *Iacob* his father. Which he did according to the custome of the country. But the *Israclites* did the like, as it is seene in the holy Chronicles, where it is spoken of the death of the kings *Asa* and *Ioram*.

Virginia.

Genes. 50. v. 5

2. Paralip. 16  
v. 14. & 21.  
vers. 19.

From

h they  
y man  
ge that  
on Ti-  
6. be-  
urkes  
ilian:  
ht bee

y then  
s haue  
d chil-  
stories  
o these

te vs to

It is a  
us then  
hillst he-  
ecipro-  
expect  
ly man  
d office,  
our Sa-  
mour-  
b, My  
mourne  
en couer  
his bu-  
n mour-  
a day or

this

From the Riuer of Saint Croix the said deceased *Pannoniac* was brought into Port Royall, where againe he was wept for. But because they are accustomed to make their lamentations for a long continuance of daies, as during a month fearing to offend vs by their cries (for as much as their cabins were but some fivie hundred pusses off from our forte) *Memberton* came to intreat *Monsieur de Pontreincourt* not to dislike that they should mourne after their wonted manner, and that they would be but eight daies in performing of it. Which he easily granted them: And then afterwards they began the next day following, at the breake of day, their weepings and cryings, which we did heare from our said fort, taking some intermission on the middest of the day. And they mourne by intermission euery cabin his day, and euery person his turne.

It is a thing woorthy maruelling that nations so far distant doe agree in those ceremonies with many of the heather world. For in ancient times the *Persians* (as we read in many places of *Herodotus*, and *Q. Curtius* did make such lamentation, did rent their garments, did couer their heads, did cloath themselues with a mourning garment, which the holy Scripture doth call *Sackcloth*, and *Iosephus Schematapcinon*. Also they shaued themselues, and their horses and mules, as the learned *Drusius* hath noted in his obseruations, alleaging for this purpose both *Herodote* and *Plutarch*.

Ester. 4. v.  
Drus. obseru.  
12. cap. 6.

The *Aegyptians* did as much, and peradventure more, in that which concerneth lamentations. For after the death of the holy Patriarke *Iacob*, All the ancients, men of calling, and the Counsellors of the house of *Pharao*, and of the Countrie of *Aegypt* went vp in great multitude euen as far as to the corne floore of *Atad* in *Canaan*, and did weepe for him with great and grieuous complaints: In such sort that the *Cananites* seeing it did say: This mourning is grieuous to the *Aegyptians*: and for the greatnesse and nouelty of the same mourning they called the said floore

*Abel*

*Abel Misraim*, that is to say the mourning of the *Egyptians*.

The Romans had hired women to weepe for the dead, and to relate their praises by long mournfull complaints: and those women were called *Prefica*, as it were *Prefette*, because that they did beginne the motion when it was needfull to lament, and to relate the praises of the dead.

*Mercede que conductæ flent alieno in funere prefica multo & capillos scindunt, & clamant magis*, saith *Lucilius* by the report of *Nonius*: Sometimes the very trumpets were not neglected at it, as *Virgill* testifieth in these words:

*It cælo clamor, clangorque tubarum.*

I will not heere make a collection of all the customes of other nations: for it would neuer be at an end: But in France euery one knoweth that the women of Picardy do lament their dead with great clamors. *Monsieur des Accords* amongst other things by him collected reciteth of one, who making her funerall complaints, that she said to her deceassed husband: Good God! My poore husband thou hast giuen vs a pittifull farewell! O what farewell! It is for euer. O what long congie! The women of *Bearn* are yet more pleasant. For they recount during the time of a whole day the whole life of their husbands. *Lami amon, la mi amon: Cara rident, œil de splendon: Cama leugé bet dans adou: lo mé balen balem, lo m'esburbat: mati de pés: fort tard cougat*: and such like things: That is to say; *My loue, my loue: smiling countenance: bright eie: nimble legge: and good dancer: mine owne valiant, mine owne valiant: early vp, and late a bedde &c.* *John de Leri* reciteth that which followeth of the *Gascoin* women: *yere, yere, ô le bet renegadou, ô le bet iougadou qu'here*, that is to say: *ô the braue swaggerer, ô what a faire player he was!* And thereupon he reporteth that the women of *Brasill* doe howle and bawle with such clamors, that it seemeth that it be some assembly of dogges and woolues. He is dead (will some women

The *Tovoupi-*  
*nambaouls* are  
enemies to  
the *Portuges*.

The *Braffli-*  
*ans* beleue  
the resurre-  
ction.

say drawing their voices) he was so valiant, and who hath made vs to eat of so many prisoners: Others making a Quire apart will say: Oh what a good hunter and what an excellent fisher he was! Oh what a braue knocker down of *Portuges* and of *Margaias* he was! of whom he hath so well auenged vs. And at the pause of euery complaint they will say: he is dead, he is dead for whom we do now mourne! whereunto the men doe answer, saying: Alas it is true! we shall see him no more vntill we see him behinde the mountaines where we shall dance with him! and other such things. But the most part of these people doe end their mourning in one day, or somewhat more.

As for the Indians of *Florida*, when any of their *Paraoustis* dieth they weepe three daies and three nights continually and without eating: And all the *Paraoustis*, that be his allies and friendes, doethe like mourning, cutting halfe their haire as well men as women in token of loue. And that done there be some women ordained, who during the time of six Moones doe lamente the death of their *Paraousti* three times a day, crying with a loud voice, in the morning, at noone, and at night: which is the fashion of the Roman *Prasces*, of whom we haue, not long since, spoken.

Jerem. 41. v. 3.

Leuit. 19. v.  
27. 28.

Deut. 14. I.

For that which is of the mourning apparell, our *Souriquois* doe paint their faces all with blacke; which maketh them to seeme very hidious: But the *Hebrewes* were more reprobable, who did scotch their faces in the time of mourning, and did shaue their haire, as saith the *Prophet Ieremie*: which was vsuall among them of great antiquity: By reason whereof the same was forbidden them by the law of God in *Leuiticus*: You shall not cut round the corners of your haire; neither marre the tufts of your beards, and you shall not cut your flesh for the dead, nor make any print of a marke vpon you. I am the Lord. And in *Deuteronomie*: you are the children of the Lord your God, you shall not cut your selues, nor make any baldnesse betweene your eyes for the dead.

Which

Which was also forbidden by the Romans in the lawes of the twelve tables.

*Herodotus* and *Diodorus* doe say, that the *Egyptians* (chiefly in their Kings funerals) did rent their garments, and besmeered their faces, yea all their heads: and assembling themselues twice a day, did march in round, singing the vertues of their King: did abstaine from sodden meats, from liuing creatures, from wine, and from all daintie fare during the space of 70. daies, without any washing. nor lying on any bed, much lesse to haue the company of their wiues: alwaies lamenting.

The ancient mourning of our Queenes of France (for as for our Kings they weare no mourning apparell) was in white colour, and therefore after the death of their husbands they kept the names of *Roines blanches* (white Queenes.) But the common mourning of others is, at this day in blacke, *qui sub persona risus est*. For all these mournings are but deceits, and of a hundred there is not one but is glad of such a weed. This is the cause that the ancient *Thracians* were more wise, who did celebrate the birth of a man with teares, and their funerals with ioy, shewing that by death we are deliuered from all calamities, wherewith we are borne, and are in rest. *Heraclides* speaking of the *Locrois*, saith, that they make not any mourning for the dead, but rather banckets and great reioycing. And the wise *Solon* knowing the foresaid abuses doth abolish all those renting of cloathes, of those weeping fellowes, and would not that so many clamors should be made ouer the dead, as *Plutarch* saith in his life. The Christians yet more wise did in ancient time sing *Alleluia* at their burials, and this verse of the Psalme, *Reuertere anima mea in requiem tuam, quia Dominus benefecit tibi,*

*Solin; cap. 17.  
Valer. li. 2. c. 1.*

*Psal. 116. v. 7*

*And now my soule sith thou art safe,  
returne unto thy rest:  
For largely loe the Lord to thee,  
his bounty hath exprest.*

Notwithstanding because that we are men, subiect to ioy, to grieffe, and to other motions and perturbations of minde, which at the first motion are not in our power, as saith the Philosopher, weeping is not a thing to be blamed, whether it be in considering our fraile condition, and subiect to so many harmes, be it for the losse of that which we did loue and held dcerely. Holy personages haue bene touched with those passions, and our Sauour himselfe wept ouer the Sepulchre of *Lazarus*, brother to the holy *Magdalen*. But one must not suffer himselfe to be carried away with sorrow, nor make ostentations of clamors, wherewith very often the heart is neuer a whit touched. Whereupon the wise sonne of *Sirach* doth giue vs an aduertisement, saying: *Weepe for the dead, for he hath lost the light [of this life] but make small weeping, because he is in rest.*

Eccel. 22. v. 11

The Sauages  
doe burne the  
mouable  
goods of the  
deceased.

A faire lesson  
for the Coue-  
tous.

Luk. 16. 9.  
Hierom. epist. 2.  
ad Neposian.

After that our Sauages had wept for *Pannoniac*, they went to the place where his cabin was whilst hee did liue, and there they did burne all that hee had left, his bowes, arrowes, quiuers, his Beuers skines, his Tabacco (without which they cannot liue) his dogs and other his small moueables, to the end that no body should quarrell for his succession. The same sheweth how little they care for the goods of this world, giuing thereby a goodly lesson to them who by right or wrong doe runne after this siluer diuell, and very often doe breake their necks, or if they catch what they desire, it is in making bankerout with God, and spoiling the poore, whether it be with open warre, or vnder colour of iustice. A faire lesson I say to those couetous vnfatiable *Tantalusses*, who take so much paines, and murder so many creatures to seeke out hell in the depth of the earth, that is to say, the treasures which our Sauour doth call the *Riches of iniquitie*. A faire lesson also for them of whom Saint *Hierome* speaketh, treating of the life of *Clarks*: *There bee some (saith he) who doe giue a little thing for an alme, to the*  
end



end to have it againe with great usurie; and under colour of giving some thing, they seeke after riches, which is rather a hunting than an almes: So are beasts, birds, and fishes taken. A small bait is put to a hooke to the end to catch at it silly womens purses. And in the Epitaph of Nepotian to Heliodore: Some (saith he) doe heape money upon money, and making their purses to burst out by certaine kinde of services, they catch at a snare the richesse of good matrons, and become richer being Monkes, then they were being secular. And for this couetousnesse the regular and secular have beene by imperiall Edicts, excluded from legacies, whereof the same doth complaine, not for the thing, but for that the cause thereof hath beene giuen.

Let vs come againe to our burning of goods. The first people, that had not yet couetousnesse rooted in their hearts, did the same as our Sauages do. For the *Phrygians* (or *Trojians*) did bring to the *Latins* the vse of burning, not onely of moouables, but also of the dead bodies, making high piles of wood for that effect, as *Aeneas* did in the funerals of *Misenus*:

————— & robore secto  
*Ingentem struxere pyram* —————

*Virgil. 6.  
Æneid.*

Then the body being washed and annointed, they did cast all his garments vpon the pile of wood, frankincense, meats, and they powred on it oile, wine, honie, leaues, flowers, violets, roses, ointments of good smell, and other things, as may be seene by ancient histories and inscriptions. And for to continue that which I haue said of *Misenus*, *Virgil* doth adde:

*Purpureâsque super vestes, velamina nota  
Coniungunt: pars ingenti subiere feretro, &c.*

————— congesta cremantur

*Thura, dona, dapes, fuso crateres oliuo.*

And speaking of the funerals of *Pallas* a young Lord, *Æneid. 11.*  
friend to *Aeneas*:

*Tum geminas vestas, ostrôque, aurôque rigentes,*

*Extulit Aeneas——*

*Multaque praterca laurentis premia pugne  
Aggerat, & longo pradam iubet ordine duci:  
Addit equos & tela, quibus spoliaverat hostem.*

And vnderneath:

*Spargitur & tellus lachrimis, sparguntur & arma.  
Hinc alij spolia occisis direpta Latinis  
Coniiciunt igni, galeas, ensesque decoros,  
Frenaque feruente (que rotas: pars munera nota  
Ipsorum clypeos, & non felicitatela,  
Stigerosque fues, raptasque ex omnibus agris  
In flammam iugulant pecudes——*

1. Samuel,  
last chap.

In the holy Scripture I finde but the bodies of *Saul* and of his *Sonnes* to haue beene burnt after their ouerthrow, but it is not said that any of their moouecables were cast into the fire:

*Cesar* in the 6.  
booke of the  
warre of the  
*Gaullois*.

The old *Gaullois* and *Germainis* did burne with the dead bodie all that which he had loued, euen to the very beasts, papers of accounts and obligations, as if by that meanes they would either haue paied, or demanded their debts. In such sort, that a little before that *Cesar* came thither, there was some that did cast themselues vpon the pile where the body was burned, in hope to liue else where with their kinred, Lords, and friends. Concerning the *Germainis*, *Tacitus* saith the same of them in those termes: *Que viuis cordi fuisse arbitantur in ignem inferunt etiam animalia, seruos, & clientes.*

These fashions haue beene common anciently to many nations, but our Sauages are not so foolish as that: for they take good heede from putting themselues into the fire, knowing that it is to hot. They content themselues then in burning the dead man his goods: And as for the body they put him honourably in the graue. This *Pannoniac* of whom wee haue spoken was kept in the cabin of *Niguiroet*, his father, and of *Neguioadetch*, his mother, vntill the Spring time, when that the assembly of the Sauages

ges was made for to goe to reuenge his death : In which assembly he was yet wept for, and before they went to the warres they made an end of his funerals, and carried him (according to their custome) into a desolate Ilande, towards *Cap de Sable*, some fiue and twenty or thirtie leagues distant from Port Royall. Those Isles which doe serue them for Church-yardes are secret amongst them, for feare some enemy should seeke to torment the bones of their dead.

*Pliny*, and many others, haue esteemed that it was foolishnesse to keepe dead bodies vnder a vaine opinion that after this life one is something. But one may apply vnto him that which *Portius Festus* Governour of *Casarea* did foolishly say to the Apostle *Saint Paul*: *Thou art besides thy selfe: much learning hath made thee mad.* Our Sa- uages are esteemed very brutish (which they are not) but yet they haue more wisdome in that respect then such Philosophers.

We Christians doe commonly bury the dead bodies, that is to say, we yeeld them to the earth (called *Humus*, from whence commeth the word *Homo a Man*) from which they were taken, and so did the ancient Romans before the custome of burning them. Which amongst the West Indians the Brasilians doe, who put their dead into pits digged after the forme of a tunne, almost vp-right, sometimes in their owne houses, like to the first Romans, according as *Seruius* the Commentor of *Virgill* doth say. But our sauaiges as far as *Perou* do not so, but rather do keepe them whole in Sepulchers, which be in many places as scaffoldes of nine and ten foote height. the rooffe whereof is all couered with mattes, whereupon they stretch out their dead rancked according to the order of their decease. So almost our Saugaiges doe, sauing that their sepulchers are lesser and lower, made after the forme of Cages, which they couer very properly, and there they lay their dead.

Which

*Plin. l. 7. c. 56.*

*Act. 26. v. 24.*

ul and  
throw,  
re cast  
  
with the  
ne very  
py that  
ed their  
r came  
oon the  
ue else  
cerning  
n those  
inferunt  
  
o many  
or they  
the fire,  
ues then  
for the  
is Pano-  
cabin of  
her, vn-  
ne Sauga-  
ges

Which we call to bury, and not to interre seeing they are not within the earth.

Now although that many nations haue thought good to keepe the dead bodies: yet it is better to follow that which nature requireth, which is, to render to the earth that which belongeth vnto her, which (as *Lucrece* saith)

*Omniparens eadem rerum est commune sepulchrum*

*Tul.* in the 2 booke of the lawes which *Xenophon* a-leadgeth.

Also this is the ancientest fashon of burying, saith *Cicero*: And that great *Cirus* King of the *Persians* would not be otherwise serued after his death then to be restored to the earth: *ô my deare children!* (said he before he died) *When I haue ended my life, doe not put my bodie, neither in gould nor in siluer, nor in any other sepulcher, but render it forthwith to the earth. For what may be more happy and more to be desired then to ioine himselfe with her that produceth and nourisheth all good and faire things?* So did he esteeme for vanity all the pompes and excessiue expences of the *Pyramides* of *Egypt*, of the *Mausolees* and other monuments made after that imitation: As the same of *Augustus*, the Great, and magnificall masse of *Adrian*, the *Septizone* of *Seuerus*, and other yet lesser, not esteeming himselfe after death more then the meanest of his Subiects.

*Arnob.* lib. 8.

The Romans did leaue the entombing of the bodies, hauing perceiued that the long warres did bring disorder vnto it, and that the dead corps were vnburied, which by the lawes of the twelue Tables it was behoouefull to bury out of the towne, like as they did in *Athens*. Whereupon *Arnobius* speaking against the Gentils: *Wee doe not feare* (saith he) *as you thinke, the ransacking of our graues, but wee keepe the most ancient and best custome of burying.*

*Pausanias* (who blameth the *Gaullois* as much as he can) saith in his *Phociques*, that they had no care to bury their dead, but we haue shewed the contrary heeretofore: And though it were so, he speaketh of the ouerthrow of the army of *Brennus*. The same might haue beene said of the *Nabateens*, Who (according to *Strabo*) did that which

which *Pausonias* doth obiect to the *Gaullois*, and buried the bodies of their kinges in dunghils.

Our Sauages are more kinde then so, and haue all that which the office of humanitie may desire, yea euen more. For after they haue brought the dead to his rest, euery one maketh him a present of the best thing he hath. Some doe couer him with many skinnes of Beuers, of Otters and other beastes: others present him with bowes, arrowes, quiuers, kniues, *Matachiaz*, and other thinges. Which they haue in common, not onely with them of *Florida*, who for want of fures, doe set vpon the sepulchers the cuppe wherein the deceassed was accustomed to drinke, and all about them they plant great number of arrowes: Item they of *Brasill* who doe bury with their dead, thinges made of feathers and Carkenets: and they of *Peron*, who (before the comming of the the Spaniardes) did fill their tombes with treasures: But also with many nations of these our partes, which did the same euen from the first time after the floud, as may be coniectured by the writing (though deceitfull) of the Sepulcher of *Semiramis* Queene of *Babylon*, containing that he of her successors that had neede of mony should make it to be opened, and that he should finde there euen as much as he would haue. Whereof *Darius* willing to make triall, found in it nothing else but other letters speaking in this sorte: *Unlesse thou wert a wicked man and unsatiabie thou wouldst not haue, through conetousnesse, so troubled the quiet of the dead, and broken downe their Sepulchers.* I would thinke this custome to haue beene onely among the Heathen, were it not that I finde in *Iosephus* his history that *Salomon* did put in the Sepulcher of *Dauid* his father aboue threemillions of gould, which were rifled thirteene hundred yeeres after.

This custome to put gould into the Sepulchers being come euen to the Romans, was forbidden by the twelue tables, also the excessiue expences that many did make in

Qq.

watering

*Ioseph. 7<sup>o</sup>*  
booke 12. *ch.*  
of the anti-  
quity of the  
Iewes.

*L. Medico. D  
de auro, arg.  
& c. leg. L. fer-  
uo alieno. D. de  
leg. 1. L. & si-  
quis. D. de re-  
lig. & sump.  
fun.*

watering the bodies with precious liquors, and other my-  
steries that we haue recited heeretofore. And notwithstanding many simple and foolish men and women did or-  
daine by will and testament, that one should bury with  
their bodies their ornamentes, ringes, and iewels (which  
the Greekes did call *entaphia*) as there is a forme scene of  
it, reported by the lawyer *Scanola* in the bookes of the *Di-  
gestes*. Which was reprooued by *Papiniam* and *Vlpian*  
likewise ciuill lawyers: in such fort that for the abuse  
thereof the Romans were constrained to cause that the  
Censors of the womens ornamentes did condemne, as sim-  
ple and effeminated, them that did such thinges, as *Plu-  
tarch* saith in the liues of *Solon* and *Sylla*. Therefore the  
best course is to keepe the modesty of the ancient *Patri-  
arches*, and euen of king *Cyrus*, whom we haue mentioned  
before, on whose tombe was this inscription, reported by  
*Arrian*.

*Thou that passest by, whomsoeuer thou beest, and  
from what parte soeuer thou comest, for I am  
sure that thou wilt come: I am that Cyrus who  
got the dominion to the Persians: I pray thee  
enuie not this little parcell of grounde which co-  
nereth my poore body.*

So then our Sauages are not excusable in putting all  
the best ornamentes they haue into the Sepulchers of the  
dead, seeing they might reape commodity by them. But  
one may answer for them that they haue this custome e-  
uen from their fathers beginning (for we see that almost  
from the very time of the flood the like hath beene done  
in this hicher world) and giuing to their dead their fures,  
*Matachias*, Bowes, Arrowes, and Quiuers, they were  
thinges that they had no neede of.

And notwithstanding this doth not cleere the Spani-  
ardes from blame, who haue robbed the Sepulchers of the  
Indians of *Perou*, and cast the bones on the dunghill: nor  
our

our owne men that haue done the like, in taking away the Beuers skinne, in our New-France, as I haue said heere- tofore.

For as *Isidorus* saith of *Damiette* in an Epistle: *It is the parte of enemies void of all humanitie to robbe the bodies of the dead, which cannot defende themselves, Nature it selfe hath giuen this to many, that hatred doth ceasse after death, and doe reconcile themselves with the deceassed. But riches make the couetous to become enemies to the dead, against whom they haue nothing to say, who torment their bones with reproach and iniury.* And therefore not without cause haue the ancient Emperors made lawes, and ordained rigorous paines against the spoilers and destroyers of Sepulchers.

Heere tofore  
1. booke. ch.  
17.  
*Isidor. ad Casium scholasti- cum, Epist. 146.*

*All praises be giuen to God.*

The Errata.

Page 8. for *Ile of Sand* or *Sablon*, or *Sand*. read *Ile of Sablon* or *Sand*.  
p. 9. for *Poutrin-court* r. *Poutrin-court*, p. 14. for *Peron* r. *Perou*. p. 42. for *haue raised* r. *haue bene raised*, *ib.* for *soonest* r. *soonest*. p. 52. for *Point* r. *Pont*.

